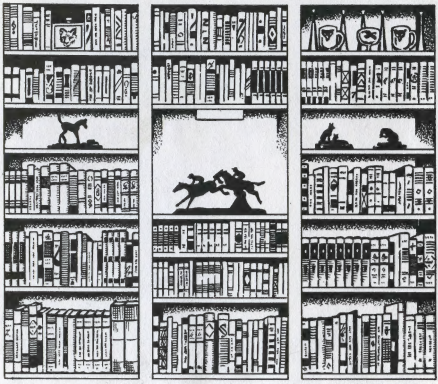


Ex Libris

JOHN AND MARTHA DANIELS

HORNE II

to front the Title

THE

Compleat ANGLER:

OR,

Contemplative Man's Recreation.

In TWO PARTS.

By the ingenious and celebrated

Mr. Isaac Walton, *and* Charles Cotton, *Esq*;

I. *Being a* DISCOURSE *of* Rivers, Fish-Ponds, Fish, and Fishing.

II. INSTRUCTIONS *how to angle for a* Trout or Grayling in a *clear Stream.*

Correctly and very accurately published.

With DRAUGHTS, of all the FISH; ornamented with a Number of COPPER PLATES, and a great Variety of useful and copious Notes.)

By MOSES BROWNE,

Author of PISCATORY ECLOGUES, *&c.*

The EIGHTH EDITION,

With the Addition of all the Songs set to Music.

Also the LAWS that concern *Angling.*

And an APPENDIX,

Which shews at one VIEW,

The proper *Rivers, Haunts, Baits, Seasons,* and *Hours of biting:* General Directions, *&c.* for every *Fish* that is to be angled for; *alphabetically* digested, in a Method singularly useful, and never yet attempted.

With SHORT RULES relating to the *Tackle, Baits,* several *Ways of Angling,* and Weather improper and proper for the Sport.

The whole comprizing all that is Valuable, Instructing, or Curious, that has appeared on the Subject.

Peter saith unto them, I GO A FISHING; *they* say unto him, WE ALSO GO WITH THEE, *John* xxi. 3.

Walton's *own Motto to 1st Edition.*

LONDON:

Printed and Sold by RICHARD and HENRY CAUSTON (Successors to the late Mr. HENRY KENT) at the Printing Office, No. 21, *Finch-Lane,* near the *Royal Exchange.* M DCC LXXII.

1772

To the Right Worſhipful

JOHN OFFLEY,

Of *Madely* Manor in the County of *Stafford*, *Eſq*;

My moſt honoured Friend,

SIR,

I Have made ſo ill Uſe of your former Favours, as by them to be encouraged to intreat that they may be enlarged to the *Patronage* and *Protection* of this Book, And I have put on a modeſt Confidence that I ſhall not be denied, becauſe it is a Diſcourſe of *Fiſh* and *Fiſhing*, which you know ſo well, and both love and practice ſo much.

You are aſſured, though there are ignorant Men of another Belief, that *Angling* is an *Art*: And you know that Art better than others. And that this is Truth, is demonſtrated by the Fruits of that *pleaſant Labour* which you enjoy, when you propoſe to *give Reſt to your Mind*, and diveſt yourſelf of your more ſerious Buſineſs, and (which is often) dedicate a Day or two to *this Recreation*.

At which Time, if common *Anglers* ſhould attend you, and be Eye-witneſſes of the Succeſs, not of your *Fortune*, but your *Skill*, it would doubtleſs beget in them an Emulation to be like you, and *that* might beget an induſtrious Diligence to be ſo. But I know it is not attainable by common Capacities. And there are now many Men of great *Wiſdom*, *Learning* and *Experience*, which love and practice *this Art*, that know I ſpeak the Truth.

Sir, This pleasant Curiosity of *Fish* and *Fishing*, of which you are so great a Master, has been thought worthy the *Pens* and *Practices* of divers in other Nations, that have been reputed Men of great *Learning* and *Wisdom*: And, amongst those of this, I remember Sir *Henry Wotton* (a dear Lover of this Art) has told me his Intentions were to write a Discourse *of the Art*, and *in Praise of Angling*; and doubtless he had done so, if Death had not prevented him. The Remembrance of which hath often made me sorry: for if he had lived to do it, then, the unlearned *Angler* had seen some better Treatise, that might have proved worthy his Perusal, which (though some have undertaken) I could never yet see in *English*.

But mine may be thought *as weak*; and as *unworthy* of common View. And I do here freely confess, that I should rather excuse myself than censure others. My own Discourse being liable to so many Exceptions. Against which you, Sir, might make *this one*, That it can contribute nothing to your *Knowledge*: And lest, a longer Epistle may diminish your *Pleasure*, I shall make *this* no *longer*, than to add the following Truth, *that I am really*,

SIR,

Your most affectionate Friend,

And most humble Servant,

I. W.

Mr. Isaac Walton's PREFACE.*

To *all Readers* of this *Discourse*, but especially to the honest ANGLER.

I THINK fit to tell thee these following Truths, That I did neither *undertake*, nor *write*, nor *publish*, and much less *own* this Discourse to please myself: And having been too easily drawn to *do all* to please others, as I proposed not the gaining of Credit by this Undertaking, so I would not willingly lose any Part of *that* to which I had a just Title before I begun it, and do therefore desire and hope, if I deserve not Commendation, yet I may obtain Pardon.

And though this Discourse may be liable to some Exceptions, yet I cannot doubt, but that most Readers may receive so much *Pleasure* or *Profit* by it, as may make it worthy the Time of their Perusal, if they be not too grave or too busy Men. And this is all the Confidence that I can put on, concerning the Merit of what is here offered to their Consideration and *Censure*; and if *the last* prove too severe, as I have a Liberty, so am I resolved to use it, and neglect all four Censures.

I wish the *Reader* also to take Notice, that in writing of it, I have made myself a *Recreation* of a *Recreation*; and that it might prove so to him, and not read *dull* and *tediously*, I have in several Places mixed (not any Scurrility, but) some innocent

*It is the General One, used *to all the* five Editions *published by* himself.

innocent, harmleſs Mirth; of which, if thou be a ſevere four-complexioned Man, then I here diſallow thee to be a competent Judge; for *Divines* ſay, *There are Offences* given, *and Offences not given, but* taken.

And I am the willinger to juſtify the pleaſant Part of it; becauſe, though it is known I can be ſerious at ſeaſonable Times, yet the whole Diſcourſe is, or rather was, a Picture of my own Diſpoſition, eſpecially in ſuch Days and Times as I have laid aſide Buſineſs, and gone a fiſhing with honeſt *Nat.* and *R. Roe*; – but they are gone, and with them moſt of my pleaſant Hours, — even as a Shadow, that paſſeth away and returns not.

Next let me tell the *Reader*, that in that which is the more uſeful Part of this Diſcourſe, that is to ſay, the Obſervations of the *Nature*, and *Breeding*, and *Seaſons*, and *Catching of Fiſh*, I am not ſo ſimple as not to know, that a captious Reader may find Exceptions againſt ſomething ſaid of ſome of theſe, and therefore I muſt intreat him to conſider that Experience teaches us to know, that ſeveral Countries alter their Time, and I think almoſt the Manner of Fiſhes breeding, but doubtleſs of their being in Seaſon; as may appear by three Rivers in *Monmouthſhire*, namely, *Severn*, *Wye* and *Uſk*, where *Camden* (*Brit. p.* 633) obſerves, that in the River *Wye*, *Salmon* are in Seaſon from *September* to *April*; and we are certain that in *Thames* and *Trent*, and in moſt other Rivers, they are in Seaſon the ſix hotter Months.

Now for the Art of *catching Fiſh*, that is to ſay, how to make a Man that was none, to be an *Angler by a Book*; he that undertakes it ſhall attempt a harder Taſk, than Mr. *Hales* (a moſt valiant and excellent Fencer) who, in a printed Book, called

A private School of Defence, undertook to teach that Art or Science, and was laugh'd at for his Labour. Not but that many useful Things might be learned by *that Book*, but he was laughed at, because that Art was not to be taught by Words, but Practice; and so must Angling. And in this Discourse I do not undertake to say all that is known, or may be said of it, but to acquaint the Reader with many Things that are not usually known to *every Angler*; and I shall leave Gleanings and Observations enough to be made out of the Experience of all that love and practise this Recreation, to which I shall encourage them. For *Angling* may be said to be so like the *Mathematicks*, that it can never be fully learned, at least not so fully, but that there will still be more new Experiments left for the Trial of other Men that succeed us.

But I think all that love this Sport, may here learn something that may be worth their Money, if they be not poor and needy Men; and in case they be, I then wish them to forbear to buy it; for I write not to get Money, but for Pleasure, and this Discourse boasts of no more; for I hate to promise much, and deceive the Reader.

And however it proves to him, yet I am sure I have found a high Content in the Search and Conference of what is here offered to his View and Censure: I wish him as much in the Perusal of it. And so I might here take my Leave; but will stay a little, and tell him, that whereas it is said by many, that in Fly-fishing for a *Trout*, the Angler must observe his twelve several Flies for the twelve Months of the Year; I say, he that follows that Rule shall be as sure to catch Fish, and be as wise as he that makes Hay by the fair Days in an *Almanack*,

nack, and no furer; for thoſe very Flies that uſe to appear *about*, and on the Water, in one Month of the Year, may the following Year come almoſt a Month ſooner or later, as the ſame Year proves colder or hotter; and yet, in the following Diſcourſe, I have ſet down the *twelve Flies* that are in Reputation with many Anglers, and they may ſerve to give him ſome Light concerning them. And he may note, that there is in *Wales*, and other Countries peculiar Flies, proper to the particular Place or Country; and doubtleſs, unleſs a Man makes a Fly to counterfeit that very Fly in that Place, he is like to loſe his Labour, or much of it: But for the Generality, three or four Flies neat and rightly made, and not too big, ſerve for a *Trout* in moſt Rivers all the Summer. And, for Winter *Fly-Fiſhing*, it is as uſeful as an *Almanack out of Date*. And of theſe (becauſe no Man is born an Artiſt, ſo no Man is born an Angler) I thought fit to give thee this Notice.

When I have told the Reader, that in this Impreſſion there are many Enlargements, gathered both by my own Obſervation, and the Communication of Friends, I ſhall ſtay him no longer than to wiſh him *a rainy Evening to read this following Diſcourſe*; and that (if he be an honeſt Angler) *the Eaſt Wind may never blow when he goes a Fiſhing*.

I. W

THE

Editor's PREFACE.

MR. ISAAC * WALTON's Compleat Angler, *which (with the* Second Part *by Mr.* Cotton, *of equal Scarcity and Value) I have the Satisfaction of reſtoring in a new (the 8th) Edition, to the Public, has been always had in greateſt Reputation, by ſuch as are acquainted with Books, and have any Diſcernment, in Works of* Merit *and* Nature. *And is ſo happy to have this which is very ſingular and uncommon to recommend it, that it has found the Way to make itſelf exceedingly agreeable to Readers of* all Taſtes, *who have peruſed it. Not only the* Lovers of this Art, *but* all others *that have leaſt Inclination to the Diverſion it treats of, have join'd in giving it their mutual Commendation. An Inſtance of which I have the Pleaſure to remember, and not improperly, to its Honour; that at a Time I took the Freedom to preſent it to the amiable, deſervedly-admired* COUNTESS OF HERTFORD, *late* DUTCHESS OF SOMERSET *(a Name that wrings a Throb of Anguiſh from my Heart) with my earneſt Requeſt to peruſe it; ſhe was afterwards pleas'd to ſay, with a Condeſcenſion always natural to her, and ſtrangely engaging)* "*That* I had deceived her into "a Diſappointment ſhe never ſhould have expected; "for contrary to all ſhe had conceived by the *Title*,

* He uſed himſelf, but for what Reaſons we know not, to write it IZAAK in all the Editions.

" she had never read a more entertaining *Book* " than the *Compleat Angler*, nor could I have made her a more acceptable Present."—*It was impossible to a Lady of her Genius and fine Discernment not to make the Discovery: and indeed is no more than a just and candid Criticism must allow, to the Merit of this little accomplished Piece.—Its suitable unaffected Negligence and Simplicity of Stile, the hardest to imitate; and almost peculiar to himself, enlivened* natural *Descriptions, the many curious Discoveries (for its Time) in Matters of philosophical and historical Science, the happiest Mixtures of religious and moral Instruction, enlivened with a Vein of innocent Humour, and chearful Entertainment, appear in every Page of it. Nothing can be drawn more in Character; the* honest Man, *the plain, good-natured, inoffensive* Angler, *is conversing with you in every Line: Withal there is a Modesty so winning through the Whole; in a rich Store of Learning, it expresses, under a designed and studied Concealment; that I question if its Equal is to be met with in any Book with so unpromising a* Title, *and that gives you no Expectation from* its Subject *of such an Entertainment, that has been written in our* own, *or* any *Language.*

The Parts which treat merely of Directions for the Sport, *I have contrived so to distinguish and enclose within particular Marks (as will be seen in the Volume) that they may be past over, and nothing but the entertaining Parts of the Book present themselves for those, to whom those* other *might appear dull and unpleasant; at the same Time that it will answer this double Use, that such who want more immediately to peruse the abovesaid* Directions, &c. *may find them more readily by these Marks, and follow them (as in a Chain) through the several Pages.*

These

These are allowed to be the best that have been hitherto communicated: and indeed seem to have exhausted the Subject; since nothing from that Time has appeared, among the many Treatises of this Kind, *but what are borrowed from our Author's Discoveries, and are copied, the* driest Parts *of the Work, without any of those pleasing Mixtures and easy Transitions, with which, by a singular Genius, he has relieved such Places, and rendered them entertaining. He seems an Original and Model to all that have come after,* as Virgil *appears among the Writers ever since, of Georgics and Pastoral: An* Author *who has written latest, and sensibly, of* Angling, *says* * "This Art seems to have arrived "at its highest Perfection almost at once, and to "have been the same in Mr. *Walton*, as *that of* "*Poetry was* in *Homer*. The Improvements that "are made by the Generality of *later* Writers, "are indeed so few, and for the most Part so tri-"vial, rather adding to, and perplexing his Words, "like the Commentators on the *Greek* Poet, than "either clearing up or enlarging his Sense; that I "could not, *says he*, but wonder at seeing so "much done to so little Purpose." *They, at best, do but represent the* Jay *in his furtive Plumes; the reading of this Volume will detect them, and sink their Value, by restoring all they have injuriously borrowed, to their right Owner.*

This Book has been deservedly commended, and very large Editions printed of it: but it having, by an unaccountable Neglect, become of late Years difficult to obtain, though frequently enquired after by several who desired it, it was thought the recovering it in such a Way, would be reckoned a very acceptable Service. Accordingly, at the Invitation of a very

* British Angler. By *J. Williamson*, Gent. 8vo, 1740.

very ingenious and learned Friend, * *who mentioned to me I remember, in that Converſation, his Deſign to write the Life of* Walton, *and wiſh he had performed; I undertook this Employment of introducing a* favourite Author of the laſt Age, *who ſeemed expoſed to the Unkindneſs of being forgotten (a Fate many excellent Writers have ſuffered) to an Acquaintance with the Readers of my* own Time. *There were other Reaſons made it proper I ſhould perform this Office to Mr.* Walton; *he being one whom it was known I had commenced an early Acquaintance with; had ſpoken of in a Work of my own (of ſomewhat the ſame Kind)* † *with peculiar Eſteem, to whom I owed my firſt Hints, and (in a Meaſure) the general kind Acceptance and Succeſs,* that Performance *has been favoured to obtain from the Public.*

Any one will readily diſcern that this Writer *(under whatever Diſguiſe his Humility choſe to put on) had the Appearance and Grace of a* Gentleman. *His Soul was truly ſuch; and what he claimed by Affinity and Blood: being a Deſcendant and Grand-Nephew of our ever memorable and good* Archbiſhop Cranmer. *Yet with all the Acquiſitions he was poſſeſſed of, he had the common Lot of Merit, an inferior Station. His real Appearance in Life, was in that of a lower Sphere and Character; being no*

more

* Mr. *Samuel Johnſon.* Author of the Folio Dictionary of the *Engliſh* Language.

† PISCATORY ECLOGUES. A new and third Edition of which after much Sollicitation, is now made; and will ſhortly appear from the Preſs, to accompany this of Mr. *Walton's*; of a Size to be had bound with it, or may be purchaſed apart, with this Title. *Nine* Piſcatory Eclogues. *A new Attempt,* to introduce a more pleaſing Variety and Mixture of *Subjects and Characters* into Paſtoral, *on the* Plan of its *primitive* Rules and Manners. *Suited to the Entertainment of* Solitude and Retirement, and the Lovers *of* Nature *in* Rural Scenes. *With an* Eſſay *in Defence of the* Undertaking, *&c.*

more than an ordinary reputable Tradesman, and worthy Citizen of London, *whose Name adds Lustre of Reputation and Respect on that antient honourable Body. He lived in a Degree of Credit as such, and with an easy Competency; but his remarkably moderate Desires, and Love of Leisure, Contemplation and Angling, made him decline acquiring a bulky Estate by Trade, or being fond of passing with the World by the Name of* a Man of Business, *contenting himself with only the* one half-part of a Shop, *very customary in those Days, of reputable plainer Appearance, in his House* * *in* Fleet-Street, *near* Temple-Bar, *where he dwelt as a responsible, well-respected* Miliner *or* Draper. *And yet, what has in it somewhat singular, for one in no higher nor better Condition, there was scarce a Man living that had an Intimacy and Friendship, like himself, with such Numbers of People of the first Rank, and highest Employments and Eminency for Birth and Learning, or that ever received more public Attestations of long familiar Love and Esteem, than was paid from all of them to Mr.* Walton. *Chiefly (in which indeed he was* a CHARACTER *worthy to be imitated) on account of* that pleasing Sweetness of Nature and Conversation, innate Simplicity of Manners, *and, above all,* his religious Integrity and undissembled Honesty of Heart, *for which he was so remarked and endeared to the Affections of all that ever knew him. They sat so naturally on him, you may trace them in every thing he writ; he drew* his own Picture *in almost every Line; I think there are hardly any Writings ever shewed more the Features and Limbs, the very Spirit and Heart of an*

* It is yet standing, the last but one of the old Timber Buildings, the South End of *Chancery-Lane*.

an Author *. *These Virtues seem'd inwrought with his Frame, and gain'd him the Name with Posterity of a* Nathaniel *(like* whom *it might be said of* him, *and of none, perhaps, more justly)* in whom was no Guile. *One very* remarkable *Instance appears in proof of this, and shews the high Opinion that was had of his* singular *Probity; which is, that in the public Troubles of his Times, when it was consulted what Person of Secresy and strictest Fidelity, should be sought, in whose Keeping to deposite, with greatest Security, the* GEORGE, *that is wore at the Sovereign's Breast; Mr.* Walton's *were the* HONEST HANDS *pitched upon and approved, to whose* private Custody *it was thought it would be* best and safest entrusted.

It is really something extraordinary, considering what I have related of Mr. Walton's *private Station and Condition, that a Person with no more outward Circumstances of Advantage than his, should gain this Respect, and be honoured with so many great and distinguished Friendships. Besides his known Familiarity with his dear Sir* Henry Wotton, *of celebrated Memory,* † *and his beloved Dean of St.* Paul's,

* This is a Remark that lay so in his Way, he could not help seeing and mentioning it himself, with the prettiest natural and moral Turn imaginable *(at the fourth Paragraph of his Preface)* — And is so obvious, every Reader will of necessity make it — Only I would point him to one *single Passage*, not written till almost thirty Years after composing his *Compleat Angler*, and added upon publishing his *fifth Edition*, where he appears with that same graceful Chearfulness and Habit of pious contented Honesty, that always adorned him; after he had past the *Age of Eighty-three*. The Passage is at the closing up of his first Part, from Page 225 to 231 of this Volume, and may be said to be Mr. WALTON'S *diffecting of his* OWN SELF.

† There was something peculiar harmonizing and similar in their Inclinations and Tempers, that engaged them thus to each other. — They *both* fondly loved *Angling*—both were noted for Contentedness and Chearfulness.—A single Speech (as I have said) will often show the Person. Mr. *Walton* has done this for his *Friend*, as well as *himself*, in a Saying he mentions of his dear Sir *Harry*'s (as common with him) That *he would rather live* five *May* Months *than* forty *Decembers*.

Paul's, *Dr.* Donne, *Sir* George Haſtings, *the judicious Mr.* Hales *of* Eaton, *and many others, he had the Happineſs to enjoy the freeſt Intimacy and Friendſhip with the great and good Archbiſhop* Uſher; *the learned* Moreton, *Biſhop of* Durham; *pious Biſhop* Hall, *of* Norwich; *the Lord Biſhop of* Wincheſter, *Prelate of the Garter, to whom he* dedicated *his Volume of* Lives; *and ſpeaks* therein *of two of them,* (viz. *thoſe of Mr.* Hooker *and Mr.* Herbert) *having been writ under his Lordſhip's Roof, and mentions,* " the Advantage he had *(by* " *hearing and diſcourſing with him)* of a *forty* " *Years Friendſhip.*" — *The like he had with Dr.* Henry King, *Biſhop of* Chicheſter, *after of* London; *who writes to* Walton, * " Though a Familiarity " *of more than forty Years* be ſufficient to endear " *our* Friendſhip, yet I muſt confeſs *my Affection* " *much improved,* &c." *And it was at the Inſtance of* Gilbert, † *Archbiſhop of* Canterbury *(as Mr.* Walton *tells his Reader)* " That, at a time, diſ- " courſing with him, *his Grace* twice laid upon " him his *Injunction* to ſet about his writing the " Life of Mr. *Hooker,*" *as ſince publiſhed by him.* — *Theſe are Inſtances ſufficient for the Purpoſes I have uſed them, and to ſhew the Eſteem the World had for this* worthy Man. *Several of his Lives were written, and his Reputation by them eſtabliſhed, long before his appearing here in the Character of his* humble Angler, *and they are conducted in the whole, in a manner ſo naturally eaſy, and ſingularly pleaſing, as few beſides himſelf had the Happineſs to have ſuc-*

* In a Letter of the Biſhop's, printed with the *Volume of Lives,* he begins it with " *Honeſt Iſaac,*" and ends, " *Your ever faithful* " *and affectionate old Friend,* Hen. Chicheſter.

† Sheldon, *that built the* Theatre *at* Oxford.

succeeded in *. *This is taken Notice of, and the Names of several, with whom he maintained an honourable Acquaintance, are recited in some Verses by* Edward Powel, *M. A. written (with four other Copies, by Persons all of the same Degree, and a* Latin *one by his Friend the Dean of* Peterborough) *on the Occasion of his publishing the present Treatise. I shall transcribe Part of the above-mentioned Verses, which are very aptly and prettily introduced, leading in, as it were, his Author by the Hand, and engaging him a Respect and Veneration from his Reader. The others not agreeing with the modern poetical Taste of the Times, have been judged proper to be omitted. Mr.* Powel's *Lines are,*

He who both knew and writ the Lives of Men,
Such as once were, but scarce shall be again;
Witness his matchless *Donne* and *Wotton*, by
Whose Aids he cou'd their Speculations try.
He that convers'd with Angels, such as were
Oldsworth and *Featly*, each a shining Star,
Shewing the Way to *Bethlem*; each a Saint,
Compar'd to whom our Zealots now but paint.
HE, that our pious and learn'd *Morley* knew,
And from him suck'd Wit and Devotion too.
HE that from these such Excellencies fetch'd,
That he could tell how far, how high they reach'd;
What Learning *this*, what Graces *t'other* had,
And in what several Dress each Soul was clad:
Reader, this He, this *Fisherman* comes forth,
And, in a *Fisher*'s Weeds, wou'd shroud his Worth
Dr

* Bishop *King* (in his Letter before-mentioned) says in Testimony of this, "*That besides others*, the best Critic of our Time *(as all* "*lowedly he was)* Mr. *John Hales*, of *Eaton College*, affirmed to "me, *He had not seen a Life written with more Advantage to the* "*Subject, or more Reputation to the Writer, than that of Dr* "Donne's."

Dr. Donne *here named, the Spirit and Strength of Thought in whose Writings are at this Day very justly admired, and who, a celebrated Critic of the last Age says,* " *had more Wit than is to be found* " *in all our other Poets put together,*" *was remarkable for being the Person who was the Instrument of Mr.* Walton's *Conversion, as himself confesses,* * *who was wont, upon that Account, to stile him his* Spiritual Father ; *and has given us some other incidental Passages concerning him, in* that *well-wrote excellent Life which he has also given in his Volume, of the pious and truly venerable Mr.* Herbert.

It was twenty-six Years after the Appearance of the first Part of the Compleat Angler, *and on his publishing the* fifth Edition, *that Mr.* Cotton, *who had engaged himself by Promise, and was the best qualified of any Man for that peculiar Province he undertook, wrote* the second Part, *which he dedicated to Mr.* Walton, *his* adopted Father, *and for whom (as will therein be seen) he had a singular Esteem and Friendship ; the printing of it he left to his Father* Walton's *Care and Directions, who published it ; together (as has been said) with the fifth Edition of his own Book, as the Reader will here find it ; with a Letter of Mr.* Walton's *: which will give a farther Evidence of the generous Sincerity, Plainness, and Honesty ; the Gentleness and Sweetness of Temper that prevailed, so distinguishedly, in this good Man's Heart.*

There is something exceeding pleasing, and of uncommon Merit, in its Way, in Mr. Cotton's *Performance, but the Difference of Stiles is considerable. Mr.* Walton *was a Writer of the true pastoral Character,*

* In his Elegy on him, annex'd to *his Life. He was* Vicar, *many Years, of St.* Dunstan's, *in the West, in* Fleet-Street, *Mr.* Walton's *Parish,* where their Intimacy commenced.

Character, * *in which perhaps he has not his Pa-*
rallel; yet, through a willing Inattention, and dif-
ferent Mode of Language then in use, some frequen-
Inaccuracies and Redundencies have insinuated them-
selves, which I should be injurious to him as hi
Editor, *not to retrench and prune away. I have bee*
modest and used great Deliberation in these Retouche
and have supplied some Deficiencies I found in him
by the Notes *and* Appendix, *which I have adde*
from later Experience. My Aim was, but to fil
off something of that Rust and Uncouthness, whic
Time fixes on the most curious finished Things, and t
imitate in this the Pains an elaborate Workman woul
bestow in repairing some Pile of exquisite antien
Architecture: *or the Art a careful Painter woul*
be supposed to use, in refitting up the decayed an
curious Portrait of some great Master: where he i
concerned and to use a tender Hand, and circumspe
Eye; and express his utmost Skill *to preserve* such
Parts *of his Picture in their* Likeness, Spirit, &c.
and all their original Proportions, Features and
Colouring.

These Variations are but small, and so conducte
as not to be discerned but by an inquisitive Eye, an
I have the Presumption to think will always be ad
judged in my Favour, as well as of his, *as they no*
appear. It may be believed with what a scrupulou
Partiality I have attempted them, from the hig
Opinion I have here, and in other Places, express
of him, whose Memory and Virtues I dearly love an
honour, and have formerly, upon Account of h
Abilities, commended * " as an Author of peculia
Characte

* If the Reader will turn particularly, in the Index, to the A
ticles, *Anglers Happiness, Anglers Evening Dialogues, Milkmai*
Dialogues with, Rural Descriptions, &c. he will find agreeable I
stances of this Sort.

* *Occasional Spectator,* Numb. 5, *on rural Pleasures.*

" Character, and happy above all others in alluring " his Reader by a kind of negligent Beauty; in a " purely natural Stile, and an artleſs, inimitable " Simplicity."

For near forty Years before Mr. Walton's *Death, he retired wholly from Buſineſs with a moderate eaſy Sufficiency, living ſometimes at* Staffordſhire *and at different Places. In which Space it is probable, as appears, he wrote his Lives. He was a Native of the Town of* Stafford, *where he was born, of reſpectable Parents in* November 1593, *married a Siſter of that truly good and eminently-pious Prelate, Biſhop* Ken, *and died in Chriſtian Faith and Comfort, at ſomething more than ninety Years of Age, the 15th of* December, 1683, *at the Houſe of his Son-in-Law at* Winchester, *a Reverend Prebend of that Cathedral, where his venerable Remains lie buried.*

MOSES BROWN.

POSTSCRIPT.

THE Reader will find this Eighth Edition greatly improved in a Number of Places above any of the *preceeding Ones*, by the Addition of twenty Pages, and of several very useful Notes of Direction for the *Sport*; and the Passages that were left out in the Enlargements of Mr. *Walton*'s *fifth Edition* (collected in a former *Postcript*) are inserted in *this*, as was promised, in their proper Places. Except a few, that were objected to for their absurdity, and were not Mr. *Walton*'s, but Quotations from *Pliny*, *Dubartas*, and other credulous Writers: or his easy good Nature, at that yielding Age of eighty-three, when he published *that* Edition, made him submit to the letting be injudiciously inserted, in Condescension to some of his Friends. These will be seen with the Remarks, in the Notes, p. 23, 24, 67 and 111, in the present Volume.

The Songs, that are simple and natural, wrote with Humour and Character, I have endeavoured to make still more agreeable, by indulging myself in an Inclination I found of setting each of them to Music, as they now for the first Time appear, and are my only public, and perhaps my last Attempt, in which I shall aim to please myself or others in this Way; and that was only meant as an Amusement: and shall be glad if they will be thought any Improvement made to this Impression.

My Affection to my dearly loved Author Mr. *Walton*, and Circumspection as his Editor, has made me careful and willing to let nothing escape inserting, that had the smallest Tincture of *his Gold* in it, or so little as a bare Sentiment, to recommend

commend it to the Eſteem of the Reader, and m
Care of preſerving. I ſhall be pleaſed to have th
cloſeſt Compariſon made between us, with th
accuteſt Eye of the Candid and the Judicious
eſpecially the *Poetical Parts*, that coſt me mo
Labour, and indeed, of Neceſſity, required m
indiſpenſible Help: conſcious throughout all, th
I have had, even a ſuperſtitious Regard, to
every Thing, that appeared to bear the leaſt De
gree of Merit, in the moſt advantageous, frien
lieſt Light; and to caſt into neceſſary Shade h
few and pardonable Blimiſhes, or what at th
Day, would be conceived ſo; that are to b
charged on the Faſhion of the Age when h
wrote, not the Author; are the Defects of *Tim*
not *the Man*.

M. E

THE

CONTENTS.

PART I.

Chap I. *A Conference between an* Angler, *an* Hunter, *and a* Falconer, *each commending his Recreation*, &c. - - - - - - - - - - Page 1

Chap. II. *Observations of the* Otter *and* Chub- - 37

Chap. III. *How to fish for and dress the* Chevender *or* Chub &c. - - - - - - - - 46

Chap. IV. *Observations of the Nature and Breeding of the* Trout, *and how to fish for him. With the* Milkmaid's *Song*, *&c.* - - - - - 52

Chap. V. *More Directions how to fish for, and make for the* Trout *an artificial* Minnow *and* Fly; *and some Merriment* - - - - - - - 68

Chap. VI. *Observations of the* Umber *or* Grayling, *and Directions how to fish for him* - - 116

Chap. VII. *Observations of the* Salmon, *with Directions how to fish for him* - - - - - 118

Chap. VIII. *Observations of the* Luce *or* Pike, *with Directions how to fish for him* - - - 127

Chap. IX. *Observations of the* Carp, *with Directions how to fish for him* - - - - - - - 141

Chap. X. *Observations on the* Bream, *and Directions how to catch him* - - - - - - - 151

Chap. XI. *Observations of the* Tench, *and how to angle for him* - - - - - - - - - 159

Chap. XII. *Observations of the* Pearch, *and Directions how to fish for him* - - - - - - 161

Chap. XIII. *Observations of the* Eel, *and other Fish that want Scales, and how to fish for them* - - 168

Chap. XIV. *Observations of the* Barbel, *with Directions how to fish for him* - - - - - - 177

Chap. XV. *Observations of the* Gudgeon, *the* Ruff, *and the* Bleak, *and how to fish for them* 182

Chap.

Page

Chap. XVI *Is of nothing, or that which is of nothing worth* - - - - - - - - - - 185
Chap. XVII. *Of* Roach *and* Dace, *and how to fish for them. And of* Cadis - - - - - - - 196
Chap. XVIII. *Of the* Minnow *or* Penk, *of the* Loach, *and of the* Bull-Head, *or* Miller's Thumb - - - - - - - - - - - 210
Chap. XIX. *Of several Rivers, and some Observations of Fish* - - - - - - - - - - 214
Chap. XX. *Of Fish Ponds, and how to order them* - - - - - - - - - - - - 218
Chap. XXI. *Directions for making a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line* - - - 222

PART II.

Chap. I. *The Interview and Conference on a Journey* - 243
Chap. II. *The Journey continued and concluded* - - 251
Chap. III. *A Morning's Recreation, and the Description of the Fishing-house* - - - - - - 260
Chap. IV. *Containing the various Methods of* Trout *and* Grayling *fishing* - - - - - - - 265
Chap. V. *Of Fly-fishing* - - - - - - - - - 266
Chap. VI. *Of* Fly-making, *with some Trials of Sport in angling* - - - - - - - - - - 270
Chap. VII. *The first Lecture on making* artificial Flies - 280
Chap. VIII. *The second Lecture on making* artificial Flies - - - - - - - - - - - - - 290
Chap. IX. *A Morning Conference* - - - - - - 300
Chap. X. *The Success at* Angling, *with the way of dressing a* Trout *and* Grayling - - - - - 300
Chap. XI. *Directions for angling at* Bottom *for a* Trout - - - - - - - - - - - - - 300
Chap XII. *Of angling at* Middle-water. *The Conclusion* - - - - - - - - - - - - 310
A Discourse touching the Laws that concern angling - 320
Appendix - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 330
Short Rules, &c. - - - - - - - - - - - 330

TH

THE Compleat ANGLER: OR, Contemplative Man's Recreation.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

A Conference between an ANGLER, HUNTER, and FALCONER, *each commending his Recreation; under the Names of* PISCATOR, VENATOR *and* AUCEPS.

Pisc. WELL overtaken, Gentlemen, a good Morning to you both. — I have ſtretched my Legs up *Tottenham-Hill*, after you; hoping your Buſineſs may occaſion you towards *Ware* (where I am going) this fine, freſh *May*-Morning.

Vena. Sir, I, for my Part, ſhall almoſt anſwer your Hopes; for my Purpoſe is to drink my Morning's Draught at the *Thatcht-Houſe* in *Hodſden*,* where I have appointed a Friend or two to meet me; but for this Gentleman you ſee with me, I know not how far he intends his Journey; he came ſo lately into my Company, I have ſcarce had Time to aſk him the Queſtion.

A *Auc.*

* Seventeen Miles from *London* on the *Ware* Road.

Auc. Sir I shall, by your Favour, bear you Company as far as *Theobald's*, * and then turn up to a Friend's House, who mews a *Hawk* for me, which I long to see.

Vena. Sir, we are all so happy to have a fine, fresh, cool Morning, and I hope we shall each be the happier in the others Company; and, Gentlemen, that I may not lose yours, I shall either abate, or mend my Pace, to enjoy it; knowing that, as the *Italians* say, "*Good Company in a Journey* "*makes the Way seem shorter.*"

Auc. It may do so, Sir, with the Help of good Discourse, which methinks we may promise from you, that look and speak so chearfully; and, for my Part, I promise you, as an Invitation to it, I will be as free and open-hearted, as Discretion will allow me to be with Strangers.

Vena. And, Sir, I promise the like.

Pisc. I am glad to hear your Answers, and in Confidence you speak the Truth, shall put on a Boldness to ask you, Sir, Whether Business or Pleasure caused you to be so early up, and walk so fast? for this other Gentleman has declared, he is going to see a *Hawk*, that a Friend mews for him.

Vena. Sir, mine is a Mixture of both; a little Business, and more Pleasure; for I intend this Day to do all my Business, and then bestow another or two in hunting the *Otter*, which a Friend that I go to meet, tells me, is much pleasanter than any other Chase — However, I mean to try it, for to-morrow Morning we shall meet a Pack of *Otter* Dogs on *Amwell-Hill*, who will be there so early they intend to prevent the Sun-rising.

* Commonly called *Tibald's*, twelve Miles from *London*, opposite *Waltham Abbey*; a favourite Palace of *James* I. where he died, since possessed by a private Family.

Pisc. Sir, my Fortune has answered my Desires: and my Purpose is to bestow a Day or two in helping to destroy some of those villainous Vermin, for I hate them perfectly, because they love Fish so well, or rather, because they destroy so much; indeed so much, that in my Judgment, all that keep *Otter-Dogs* ought to have a Pension from the King, to encourage them to destroy the very Breed of those base *Otters*, they do so much Mischief.

Vena. But what say you to the *Foxes* of the Nation, would not you as willingly have them destroyed? For doubtless they do as much Mischief as *Otters*.

Pisc. Oh! Sir, if they do, it is not so much to me and my Fraternity, as those base Vermin the *Otters*.

Auc. Why, Sir, I pray of what Fraternity are you, that you are so angry with the poor *Otters?*

Pisc. I am, Sir, a *Brother of the Angle*, and as such, an Enemy to the *Otter*; for you are to note, we Anglers all love one another, and therefore I hate the *Otter*, both for my own, and their Sakes, who are of my Brotherhood.

Vena. And I am a Lover of *Hounds*, I have followed many a Pack of Dogs many a Mile, and heard many merry Huntsmen make Sport and Scoff at *Anglers*.

Auc. And I profess myself a *Falconer*, and have heard many grave, serious Men pity them — it is such a heavy, contemptible, dull Recreation.

Pisc. You know, Gentlemen, 'tis an easy thing to scoff at any Art or Recreation; a little Wit, mixt with Ill-nature, Confidence, and Malice, will do it; but though they venture boldly, they are often caught in their own Trap, according to that of *Lucian*, the Father of the Family of Scoffers.

Lucian, *well skill'd in scoffing, this hath writ;*
Friend, that's your Folly, *which you think your Wit*
This *you vent freely, void of Wit and Fear,*
Meaning another, when yourself *you jeer.*

If to this, you add what *Solomon* says * of Scorners, "*That they are an Abomination to Men,*" let him that thinks fit, scoff on, and be a Scorner still; I count them Enemies to me, and to all that love *Virtue* and *Angling* — And for you, that have heard many grave serious Men pity *Anglers*; let me tell you, Sir, there are many who are taken by others to be serious grave Men, which *we* contemn and pity: Men that are *taken to be grave*, because Nature hath made them of a sour Complexion; Money-getting Men, that spend all their Time, first in getting, and next in anxious Care to keep it; Men, that are condemned to be rich, and then always busy, or discontented — For these *poor rich Men*, we *Anglers* pity them perfectly, and stand in no need to borrow their Thoughts to think ourselves happy. No, no, Sir, we enjoy Contentedness above the Reach of such Dispositions; and, as the learned and ingenious *Montaigne* says † (like himself freely) "When my Cat and "I entertain each other with mutual apish "Tricks, as playing with a Garter, *&c.* who "knows but that I make my Cat more Sport than "she makes me? Shall I conclude her to be sim"ple, that has her Time to begin, or refuse Play "as freely as myself? Nay, who knows but it is "a Defect of my not understanding her Language "(for doubtless Cats talk and reason with one ano"ther) that we agree no better? Or who can "tell, but that she pities me for being no wiser

"than

* Prov. xxiv. 9. † In his Essays.

" than to play *with her*, and laughs and cenſures " my Folly, for making Sport *for her* when *we* " *two* play together?" Thus freely ſpeaks *Montaigne*, concerning Cats; and I hope I may take as great Liberty to blame any Man, and laugh *at him* too, let him be never ſo grave, that hath not heard what *Anglers* can ſay in Juſtification of their Art and Recreation, which I may again tell you, is ſo full of Pleaſure, that we need not borrow *their* Thoughts to think ourſelves happy.

Vena. Sir, you have almoſt amazed me; for though I am no Scoffer, yet—(I pray let me ſpeak it without Offence) I have always looked upon *Anglers* as more patient and ſimple Men than, I fear, I ſhall find you to be.

Piſc. Sir, I hope you will not judge my Earneſtneſs to be Impatience; and for my Simplicity, if by that you mean an Harmleſneſs, or *that* Simplicity which was uſually found in the primitive Chriſtians, who were, like moſt *Anglers*, quiet Men, and Followers of Peace—Men that were ſo ſimply wiſe, as not to ſell their Conſciences to buy Riches, and with them Vexation, and a fear to die: If you mean ſuch ſimple Men as lived in thoſe Times, when there were fewer Lawyers; when Men might have had a Lordſhip ſafely conveyed to them *in a Parchment no bigger than your Hand*, though *ſeveral Sheets* will not do it, ſafely, in this wiſer Age — I ſay, Sir, if you take us *Anglers* to be ſuch ſimple Men as I have ſpoke of, then, myſelf, and thoſe of my Profeſſion, will be glad to be ſo underſtood. But if by Simplicity, you mean a general Defect, I hope in Time to diſabuſe you, and make the contrary appear ſo evidently, (if you will but have Patience to hear me) as ſhall remove all, that Prejudice may have poſſeſs'd you

with, againſt my laudable and ancient Art; for I know it is worthy the Knowledge and Practice of a wiſe Man. But, Gentlemen, though I am able to do this, I am not ſo unmannerly as to engroſs the Diſcourſe to myſelf; and therefore you two having declared yourſelves, the one to be a Lover of *Hawks*, the other of *Hounds*, I ſhall be glad to hear what each can ſay in Behalf of that Recreation you love and practiſe, and afterwards to exerciſe your Attention to *my own*, by which Means we ſhall make the Way ſeem ſhorter; and, if you like my Motion, I would have Mr. *Falconer* begin.

Auc. I conſent with all my Heart, and to teſtify it, will begin as you have deſired me. And, Firſt, for the Element I uſe to trade in, which is the Air; an Element of more Worth than Weight, an Element that doubtleſs exceeds both Earth and Water; for though I ſometimes deal in both, yet the Air is moſt properly mine; I and my *Hawks* uſe that, and it yields us moſt Recreation; it ſtops not the high ſoaring of my generous *Falcon*; in it ſhe aſcends to ſuch an Heighth, as the dull Eyes of Beaſts and Fiſh are not able to reach; their Bodies are too groſs for ſuch Elevations. In the Air my Troops of *Hawks* ſoar up on high, and are loſt in the Sight of Men; and therefore I think my *Eagl* ſo juſtly ſtiled, "*Jove*'s *Servant in ordinary.*" And that very *Falcon* I am now going to ſee, deſerves no meaner Title; for ſhe uſually in her Flight endangers herſelf, like the Son of *Dædalus* to have her Wings ſcorched by the Sun's Heat; but her Mettle makes her careleſs of Danger, for ſhe then heeds nothing, but makes her nimble Pinions cut the fluid Air, and wings her Highway over the ſteepeſt Mountains and deepeſt Rivers

a

and in her glorious Career, looks with contempt upon those lofty Steeples and magnificent Palaces, which we so gaze and wonder at; from which Height I can make her to descend by a Word from my Mouth (which she both knows and obeys) to accept of Meat from my Hand, to own me for her Master, to go home with me, and be willing the next Day to afford me the like Recreation.

And more, this *Element of Air*, which I profess to trade in, is of such Worth and Necessity, that no Creature whatsoever, not only those numerous ones that feed on the Face of the Earth, but the various Kinds that have their Dwellings in the Waters, every Creature that hath Life in its Nostrils, stands in need of it. The Waters cannot preserve the Fish without *Air*; witness the not breaking the Ice in extreme Frosts; the Reason is, that if the inspiring and expiring Organ of any Animal be stopt, it suddenly yields to Nature, and dies. Thus necessary is *Air*, to the Existence both of Fish and Beasts; nay, even to Man himself. That *Air*, or *Breath of Life*, with which GOD at first inspired him, he, if he wants it, dies presently, becomes a sad Object to all that loved and beheld him, and in an instant turns to Putrefaction.

But more, the very Birds of the Air, those that be not *Hawks*, are so many, so useful, and pleasant to Mankind, that I must not let them pass without some Observations. They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice Bodies, and refresh him with their heavenly Voices. I will not undertake to mention the several Kinds of Fowl, by which this is done, and his curious Palate pleased by Day and which, with their very Excrements, afford him a feathery Lodging at Night; these I will pass by; but not those little nimble

Musicians of the Air, that warble forth their curious Ditties with which Nature hath furnished them, to the Shame of Art.

As First, the Lark, when she means to rejoice, to chear herself and those that hear her, she then quits the Earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the Air; and having ended her heavenly Employment, grows then mute and sad, to think she must descend to the dull Earth, which she would not touch but for Necessity.

How do the *Black-bird* and *Thrassel*, with their melodious Voices, bid welcome to the chearful Spring, and in their fixed Months, warble forth such Ditties, as no Art or Instrument can reach?

Nay, the smaller Birds also do the like in their particular Seasons; as namely, the *Leverock*, the *Tit-lark*, the little *Linnet*, and the honest *Robin*, that loves Mankind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale*, another of my airy Creatures, breathes such sweet loud Music out of her little instrumental Throat, that it might make Mankind to think Miracles are not ceased. He that at Midnight, when the very Labourer sleeps securely, should hear, as I have very often, the clear Airs, the sweet Descants, the natural rising and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her Voice, might well be lifted above Earth, and say, "LORD, what Music hast thou provided for the "*Saints* in Heaven, when thou affordest bad *Men* "such Music on Earth!" And this makes me less wonder at the many Aviaries in *Italy*, or at the great Charge of *Varro*'s Aviary, the Ruins of which are yet to be seen in *Rome*, and is still so famous, that it is reckoned for one of those notable things which Men of foreign Nations record, or lay

lay up in their Memories, when they return from Travel. This for Birds of Pleasure, of which much more might be said. — My next shall be of Birds of political Use. It is unquestionable, that *Swallows* have been taught to carry Letters between two Armies. When the *Turks* besieged *Malta*, or *Rhodes* (I remember not which) *Pigeons* are reported to carry and recarry Letters; and Mr. *Sandys* * relates it to be done betwixt *Aleppo* and *Babylon*. But if that be disbelieved, 'tis not to be doubted, that the *Dove* was sent out of the Ark, by *Noah*, to give Notice of Land, when to him all appeared Sea, and proved a faithful and comfortable Messenger. Among the Sacrifices of the Law, a Pair of *Turtle-Doves*, or young *Pigeons*, were as well accepted as costly *Bulls* and *Rams*; and when GOD would feed the Prophet *Elijah* † after a miraculous Manner, he did it by *Ravens*, who brought him Meat Morning and Evening. *Lastly*, the Holy Ghost, when he descended visibly upon our Saviour, did it by assuming the Shape of a *Dove* ‡. You will remember these Wonders were done by Birds of the Air, the Element in which they and I take so much Pleasure.

There is also a little contemptible winged Creature, an Inhabitant of my aerial Element, the laborious *Bee*, of whose Prudence, Policy, and regular Government of their Commonwealth, I might say much, as also of their several Kinds; and how useful their Honey and Wax are for Meat and

* In his Travels, *p.* 496. † 1 Kings xvii. 4—6.

‡ The *Author* seems to have fallen into a common Mistake; most learned Men think the Original Passage *Matt.* iv. 16. implies the *Manner* of the Holy Spirit's descending, *Like* a Dove, i. e. *as a Dove descends*, with a fluttering gentle Motion, and not *that* of any Corporal Likeness, the *Visibility* being only an Effulgency of visible Light or Glory.

Medicine — but I will leave them to their swee Labour, without the leaſt Diſturbance, believing them to be all very buſy, at this Time, amongſt the Herbs and Flowers that we ſee Nature put forth this *May* Morning. — And now, to return to my *Hawks*, from whom I have made ſo long a Digreſſion; you are to obſerve, they are uſually diſtinguiſhed into two Kinds, the long and ſhort-winged *Hawk**—Gentlemen, if I ſhould enlarge my Diſcourſe to the Obſervation of their ſeveral Aye-ries, their Mewings, their curious Order of caſting

* Mr. *Walton* has given here their Catalogue. The ancient and pleaſant Diverſion of *Hawking* having grown out of Faſhion, if not wholly neglected, it might have been omitted. But as I am told the Inclination to revive that Paſtime ſeems to prevail again, many may be curious to ſee his Liſt, as it follows in the *Note*, which was thought the beſt Place for inſerting it.

Of the *Long-winged Hawks* that were chiefly in Uſe in this Nation are,

1 The *Ger-Falcon* and *Jerkin*,
2 The *Falcon* and *Taſſel-Gentel*,
3 The *Lanet* and *Laneret*,
4 The *Bockerel* and *Bockeret*,
5 The *Saker* and *Sakaret*,
6 The *Marlin* and *Jack Marlin*,
7 The *Hobby* and *Jack*,
8 The *Stelleto* of Spain,
9 The *Blood red Rook* from *Turky*,
10 The *Waſ-Kite* from *Virginia*.

Of *Short-winged Hawks*.

11 The *Eagle* and *Iron*,
12 The *Gos-Hawk* and *Tarcel*,
13 The *Spar-Hawk* and *Muſket*,
14 The *French Pye*, two Sorts.

Theſe are reckoned Hawks of Note and Worth. Of inferior Rank are,

15 The *Stanyel*,
16 The *Ringtail*,
17 The *Raven*,
18 The *Buzzard*,
19 The *Forked Kite*,
20 The *Bald Buzzard*,
21 The *Hen Driver*,
22 The *Eyries*,
23 The *Brancher*,
24 The *Ramiſh Hawk*,
25 The *Haggard*,
26 The *Lentners*, two Sorts.

The Reader may ſatisfy himſelf more of this from *Markham's*, *Turberville's* and *Latham's Treatiſes of Falconry*.

ing and renovating their Feathers, their reclaiming, dieting, and then come to their rare Stories of Practice: These, I say, and many other Observations I could make, would be much, very much Pleasure to me. But left I strain the Rules of Civility, by taking up more than the Proportion of Time allotted, I will here break off: and intreat you, Mr. *Venator*, to say what you are able in Commendation of *Hunting*, to which you are so much affected.

Vena. Sir, I will now take my Turn, and begin with a Commendation of the *Earth*, as you have done most excellently of the *Air*; the *Earth* being that Element upon which I drive my pleasant, wholsom, hungry Trade: A solid settled Element, universally beneficial to Man and Beast; to Men, who have their several Diversions upon it; as Horse-Races, Hunting, sweet Smells, pleasant Walks. The *Earth* feeds Man, and all those several Beasts that both feed him, and afford him Recreation. What Pleasure does he take in hunting the stately *Stag*, the generous *Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the cunning *Otter*, the crafty *Fox*, and the fearful *Hare!* And, if I may descend to a lower Game, what Pastime is it sometimes with Gins to betray the very Vermin of the *Earth*, as the *Fichat*, the *Fulimart*, the *Ferret*, the *Polecat*, the *Mould-warp*, and the like, that live upon the Face, and within the Bowels of it. How doth the *Earth* bring forth Herbs, Flowers and Fruits, both for Physick, and the Pleasure of Mankind; and above all, to me at least, the fruitful Vine, of which when I drink moderately, it clears my Brain, chears my Heart, and sharpens my Wit! How could *Cleopatra* have feasted *Mark Anthony* with eight *Wild Boars* roasted whole at

one

one Supper, and other Meat suitable, if the *Earth* had not been a bountiful Mother! But to pass by the mighty *Elephant*, which the *Earth* breeds and nourisheth, and descend to the least of Creatures: How doth the *Earth* afford us a doctrinal Example in the little *Pismire*, * who in the Summer provides and lays up her Winter Provision, and teacheth Man to do the like! The *Earth* feeds and carries those Horses that carry us! If I would be prodigal of my Time and your Patience, what might not I say in Commendation of the *Earth*, that puts Limits to the proud and raging Sea, that it destroys us not,-as we daily see it does those that venture upon it, who are there shipwrecked, drowned, and left to feed *Haddocks*; when we that are so wise to keep ourselves on *Land*, walk and talk, and live and eat, and drink, and go a Hunting; of which Recreation I will say a little, and then leave Mr *Piscator* to the Commendation of *Angling*.

Hunting is a Game for Princes and noble Persons, and hath been highly prized in all Ages; it was one of the Qualifications that *Xenophon* bestowed on his *Cyrus*, that he was a *Hunter* of *wild Beasts*. *Hunting* trains up the younger Nobility to the Use of manly Exercises in their ripe Age, preserves Health, and increases Strength and Activity; and for the Dogs we use, who can sufficiently commend their Excellency! How perfect is the *Hound* at Smelling, who never leaves his first *Scent*, but follows it through so many Changes and Varieties of *others*, even over and into the Water and Earth! What Music do a Pack of Dogs make, to any whose Heart and Ears are so happy to be set to the Tune of such Instruments! How will a right *Grey-Hound* fix his Eye on the best Buck in a Herd, single him out, and follow him

* *The* Guardian, No. 156, *has an admired Paper on this.*

and only him, through a whole Herd of rascal Game, and still know and kill *him!* I know the Language of my *Hounds*, and they the Language and Meaning of one another, as perfectly as we do the Voices of those with whom we discourse daily. I might enlarge myself in the Commendation of *Hunting*, and of the noble *Hound*, as also of the Docibleness of Dogs in general, and make many Observations of other Land Creatures, that for Composition, Order, Figure, and Constitution, approach nearest to the Compleatness and Understanding of Man; especially of those which *Moses* in the Law permitted to the *Jews*, which have cloven Hoofs, and chew the Cud. But I will not be so uncivil to Mr. *Piscator*, as not to allow him a Time for the Commendation of *Angling*, which he calls an Art, but doubtless 'tis an easy one, and Mr. *Auceps*, — I doubt we shall hear a watry Discourse of it, but hope — not a long one —

Auc. I hope so too, though I fear ———

Pisc. Gentlemen, let not Prejudice prepossess you. I confess my Discourse is like to prove suitable to my Recreation, calm and quiet: We seldom take the Name of GOD in our Mouths, but it is either to praise or pray to him. If others use it vainly in the midst of their Recreations, so vainly as if they meant to conjure, I must tell you, it is neither our Fault nor Custom, we protest against it; but pray remember, I accuse nobody, for as I would not make a watry Discourse, so I would not put too much Vinegar into it, nor raise the Reputation of my own Art by the Diminution of anothers. — So much for the Prologue to what I mean to say.

The Element that I trade in, the *Water*, is the eldest Daughter of the Creation; the Element upon which the Spirit of GOD first moved; the Element

Element which He commanded to bring forth living Creatures abundantly; and without which those that inhabit the Land, even *all* that have Breath in their Noſtrils, muſt ſuddenly return to Putrefaction. *Moſes*, the great Law-giver and Philoſopher, ſkilled in all the Learning of the *Egyptians*, who was called *the Friend of* GOD, and knew the Mind of the Almighty, names this Element the firſt (and is the chief Ingredient) in the Creation. Many Philoſophers make it to comprehend all the Elements; but moſt allow it the chiefeſt in the Mixion of Bodies. It is believed by ſome, that all Bodies are made of Water, and may be reduced back again to Water only; they endeavour to demonſtrate it thus: Take a *Willow* (or any like ſpeedy-growing Plant) newly rooted in a Box of Earth, weigh them altogether exactly, and alſo after the Tree is increaſed to an Hundred Pounds Weight more than when it was firſt weighed, and you ſhall find this Augment of the Tree to be without the Diminution of one Dram of Earth; whence they infer, the Increaſe of Wood to be from Water, Rain, or Dew, and not from any other Element: And they affirm, they can reduce this Wood back again to Water; and that the ſame may be done alſo in any Animal or Vegetable. And this I take to be a fair Teſtimony of the Excellency of my Element of *Water*.

The *Water* is more productive than the Earth; nay, the Earth hath no Fruitfulneſs, without Showers or Dews: all the Herbs and Flowers, and Fruits, are produced and thrive by *Water*; and the very Minerals are fed by Streams that run under Ground, as we ſee by ſeveral Springs breaking forth on the Tops of the higheſt Hills, and is witneſſed by the daily Trial and Teſtimony of Miners. Nay, the Increaſe of thoſe Creatures that

are bred and fed in the *Water*, are not only more miraculous, but advantageous to Man for lengthening his Life, and preventing Sickneſs; for 'tis obſerved by the moſt learned Phyſicians, that the caſting off *Lent*, and other Fiſh-Days, is doubtleſs the chief Cauſe of thoſe many putrid intermitting Agues, to which this Nation is now more ſubject than thoſe wiſer Countries that feed on Herbs, Sallads, and Plenty of Fiſh, which the greateſt Part of the World now do. It may be fit to remember, that *Moſes* * appointed Fiſh to be the chief Diet for the beſt Commonwealth that ever yet was.

And it is obſervable, not only that there are Fiſh, as namely, the *Whale*, three times as big as the mighty *Elephant*, ſo fierce in Battle, but that the moſt ſplendid Feaſts have been of Fiſh. The *Romans*, in the Height of their Glory, made Fiſh the Miſtreſs of all their Entertainments; they have had Muſick to uſher in their *Sturgeons*, *Lampreys*, and *Mullets*, which they would purchaſe at Rates rather to be wondered at, than believed. He that ſhall view the Writings of *Macrobius* or *Varro*, may have a Confirmation of this, and of the incredible Value of their Fiſh and Fiſh-Ponds.

But, Gentlemen, I have almoſt loſt myſelf, which I confeſs I may eaſily do in this *Philoſophical Diſcourſe:* I met with moſt of it very lately, and, I hope, happily, in a Conference with a moſt learned Phyſician (Dr. *Warton*†) a dear Friend, that loves both me, and my *Art of Angling*. — However, I will wade no deeper in theſe myſterious Arguments, but paſs to ſuch Obſervations as I can

* Lev. xi. 9. Deut. xiv. 9.

† An Account of him is publiſhed in *Wood's Athen. Oxon.* p. 522.

I can manage with more Pleasure, and less fear of running into Error; but I must not yet forsake the *Waters*, by whose Help we have so many known Advantages.

And First, To pass by the miraculous Cures of our known *Baths*, how advantageous is the *Sea* for our daily Traffick, without which we could not now subsist! How does it not only furnish us with Food and Physick for our Bodies, but with such Observations for the Mind, as ingenious Persons would not want!

How ignorant had we been of the Beauty of *Florence*, of the Monuments, Urns, and Rarities that yet remain in and near *Old* and *New Rome*, so many, as it is said, will take up a Year's Time to view, and afford to each of them but a convenient Consideration! And therefore it is not to be wondered, that so learned and devout a Father as St. *Jerome*, after his Wish *to have seen* CHRIST *in the Flesh*, and to have heard St. *Paul* preach, makes it his third, *to have seen* Rome *in her Glory*, and that Glory is not yet all lost: For what Pleasure is it to any, who love Learning, to view the Monuments of *Livy*, the choicest of Historians, of *Tully*, the best of Orators; and to see the Bay Trees that now grow out of the very Tomb of *Virgil!*—What Pleasure is it to a devout *Christian* to see there the *humble House* in which St. *Peter* was content to dwell; to view the many rich *Statues* made in Honour of his Memory; nay, to see the very *Place* in which St. *Peter* and he are buried together! * These are in and near to *Rome*. And how much more doth it please the pious Curiosity of a *Christian*, to see that *Place* on which

* *These may be reasonably thought to favour, too much, in the Author of ill-placed Credulity and Superstition. It is a proved Case that* Peter *never was at* Rome.

the blessed Saviour of the World was pleased to humble himself, to take our *Nature*, and converse with Men; to see Mount *Sion*, *Jerusalem*, and the very Sepulchre of our LORD JESUS! How may it beget and heighten his Zeal, to see the Devotions that are daily paid to him at that *Place!* Gentlemen, lest I forget myself, I will stop here, and remind you, that but for my Element of *Water*, the Inhabitants of this poor Island must remain ignorant that such things ever were, or that any of them have yet a Being.

Gentlemen, I might both enlarge and lose myself in such Arguments; I might tell you that Almighty GOD is said to have spoken to a *Fish*, but never to a *Beast*, and hath made a *Whale* a Ship, to carry and set his Prophet *Jonah* safe on the appointed Shore—But I must in manners break off, for I see *Theobald*'s *House*; I hope you'll excuse me for being so long, and thank you for your Patience.

Auc. Sir, my Pardon is easily granted; I except against nothing that you have said, nevertheless I must part with you at this Park-Wall, for which I am very sorry; but I assure you Mr. *Piscator*, I now leave you full of good Thoughts, not only of yourself, but your Recreation; and so, Gentlemen, *God keep you both.*

Pisc. Well now, Mr. *Venator*, you shall neither want Time, nor my Attention, to hear you enlarge your Discourse concerning *Hunting*.

Vena. Not I, Sir; I remember you said that *Angling* itself was of great Antiquity, and a perfect Art, and an Art not easily attained; and you have so won upon me in your Discourse, that I am very desirous to hear what you can say further concerning those Particulars.

Pisc.

Pisc. Sir, I did say so, and doubt not, but if and I did converse together a few Hours, to le you filled with the same high and happy Thou that now possess me of it; not only of the A quity of *Angling*, but that it deserves Comme tions; is an Art, and an Art worthy the Kn ledge and Practice of a wise Man.

Vena. Pray, Sir, speak of them what you th fit, for we have yet five Miles to the *That House*; during which Walk, I dare promise my Patience and diligent Attention; and if shall make appear, as you have undertaken, it is an Art, and worth the learning, I shall be may attend you a Day or two a *Fishing*, and come your Scholar in the Art itself, which you much magnify.

Pisc. O Sir! doubt not but *Angling* is an A is it not an Art to deceive a Trout with an art cial Fly? a Trout! that is more sharp-sighted t any Hawk you have named; and more watch and timorous than your high-mettled *Merlin* bold: And yet I fear not to catch a Brace or t To-morrow for a Friend's Breakfast. Doubt n therefore, Sir, but that *Angling* is an Art, and Art worth your learning; the Question is rath whether you are capable of learning it? For *A ling* is somewhat like Poetry, Men are to be b so, I mean with Inclinations to it; though b may be heightened by Discourse and Practi But he that hopes to be a good *Angler*, must only bring an inquiring, searching, observing Mi but a large Measure of Hope and Patience, an Love and Propensity to the thing itself: But h ing once got and practised it, then, doubt not, *Angling* will prove so pleasant, that it will beco like Virtue, a Reward to itself.

Ve

Vena. Sir, I am so full of Expectation, that I long to have you proceed, and in the Order you propose.

Pisc. Then, First, for the Antiquity of *Angling*, of which I shall say but only this, some think it is as ancient as *Deucalion*'s Flood; others that *Belus*, who was the first Inventor of virtuous Recreations, was the Inventor of *Angling*; and others suppose *Seth*, one of the Sons of *Adam*, taught it to his Sons, and that by them is was derived to Posterity; and some imagine that he left it engraven on those Pillars which he erected, to preserve the Knowledge of Mathematics, Musick, and the rest of those useful Arts, which by GOD's Appointment or Allowance, and *his* noble Industry, were thereby preserved from perishing in *Noah*'s Flood. These, Sir, have been the Opinions of several Men, that have possibly endeavoured to make *Angling* more ancient than is needful, or may well be warranted. For my Part, I shall content myself in telling you, that *Angling* is much more ancient than the Incarnation of our Saviour; for in the Prophet *Amos* *, mention is made of Fish Hooks; and in the Book of *Job* † (which is long before the Days of *Amos*, for that Book is said to be wrote by *Moses*) there is again the same mention made, which must imply *Anglers* in those Times‡. But, my worthy Friend, as I would rather prove myself a Gentleman, by being learned and humble, valiant and inoffensive, virtuous and communicable, than by any fond Ostentation of Riches; or wanting these Virtues myself, boast that they were in my Ancestors; (and yet I grant that where a noble,

* Chap. iv. 2. † Chap. lxi. 1, 2.

‡ The same we find likewise in *Isaiah*, Chap. xix. 8. *The Fishers also shall mourn: And all they that* cast Angle *into the Brooks shall lament*, &c.

ble, an ancient Descent, and such Merits, m
in any Man, it is a double Dignification of t
Person) so if this Antiquity of *Angling*, which
my Part, I have not forced, shall, like an ancie
Family, be either an Honour or an Ornament
this virtuous Art, which I profess to love a
practise, I shall be the gladder that I made an a
cidental mention of it, on which I shall dwell
more, but proceed to the Commendation whi
I think it deserves: And in order to it, shall t
you, that in ancient Times, a Debate has
sen, and it remains yet unresolved, Whether t
Happiness of Man in this World consists mo
in Contemplation or Action? Some maintain th
Opinion of the first by saying, "That the nea
"we Mortals come to GOD, by Way of Imi
"tion, the more happy we are." They say, th
GOD enjoys himself only by a Contemplation
his own Infiniteness, Eternity, Power, Goodne
and the like; and upon this Ground many cloi
eral Men of great Learning and Devotion, pre
Contemplation before Action; and many of
Fathers seem to approve this Opinion, as may a
pear in their Commentaries upon the Words
our Saviour to *Martha**. On the Contrary, th
are Men of equal Authority and Credit, w
prefer Action to be more excellent; as name
Experiments in Physick, and the Application o
for the ease and prolongation of Life; by wh
each Man is enabled either to serve his Count
or do Good to particular Persons. They say, t
Action is doctrinal, teaches both Art and Virt
and is a Maintainer of Human Society; and
these, and other like Reasons, to be preferred
fore Contemplation. Concerning which two O
nio

* Luke x. 41, 42.

pions, I shall forbear to add a third, by declaring my own, and rest contented in telling you (my very worthy Friend) that both these meet together, and, properly above all, belong to the most honest, ingenious, quiet, and harmless Art of *Angling*.

And now I shall tell you what some have observed, and I have found a real Truth, that the very sitting by the River Side, is not only the quietest, fittest Place for Contemplation, but will invite an *Angler* to it. This seems to be maintained by the learned *P. Du Moline*, who in his Discourse of the fulfilling of Prophecies, observes, that when God intended to reveal any future Events, or high Notions to his Prophets, he then carried them either to the Deserts or Sea-Shore, that having so separated them from the Press of People and Business, and Cares of the World, he might settle their Minds in a quiet Repose, and *there* make them fit for Revelation. This seems also to be intimated by the Children of *Israel**, who having in their hapless Captivity, banished all Mirth and Musick from their pensive Hearts, and hung up their mute Harps upon the Willows growing by the Rivers of *Babylon*, sat down upon those Banks, bemoaning the Ruins of *Sion*, and contemplating their own sad Condition. And an ingenious *Spaniard* † says, "That Rivers, and the In-"habitants of the watry Element, were made for "wise Men to meditate on, and Fools to pass by "without Consideration." And though I would not rank myself with the first, yet give me Leave to free myself from the last, by offering you a short Contemplation, first, of Rivers, and then of Fish; on which I doubt not but to give you many Observations that will appear very considerable; I am sure

* Psalm cxxxvii. † *Valdesso*'s Considerations.

ſure they have ſo to me, and made many an H
paſs away more pleaſantly, as I have ſat quietly
a flowery Bank, by a calm River, and medita
over what I ſhall now relate to you.

And Firſt, concerning Rivers, there are ſo ma
Wonders reported of them, and of the ſeve
Creatures that are bred, and live in them, and
Authors of ſo good Credit, that we need not d
them an Hiſtorical Faith. As namely, of a Ri
in *Epirus*, that puts out any lighted Torch, a
kindles any one that was not lighted: Some W
ters being drank, cauſe Madneſs; ſome Drunk
neſs; and ſome Laughter to Death. The Ri
Selarus, in a few Hours, turns a Rod or W
to Stone; and our *Camden* mentions the like
England, and in *Lochmere* in *Ireland*. There
alſo a River in *Arabia*, of which all the Sheep t
drink thereof have their Wool turned into a V
milion Colour: And one of no leſs Credit th
Ariſtotle, tells us of a merry River, the Ri
Eluſina, that dances at the Noiſe of Muſick;
with Muſick it bubbles, dances, and grows fam
and ſo continues till the Sound ceaſes, but t
preſently returns to its wonted Calmneſs and Cle
neſs. *Camden* alſo tells us of a Well near *K*
in *Weſtmoreland*, that ebbs and flows ſeveral tim
every Day; and of a River in *Surry* called *M*
that after it has run ſeveral Miles, being oppo
by Hills, makes itſelf a Way under Ground, *
breaks out again ſo far off, that the Inhabit
thereabout boaſt, as the *Spaniards* do of their Ri
Anus, that they feed divers Flocks of Sheep upo
Bridge. Laſtly, for I would not tire you, *Joſep*

* The *Tour* through *England* (2 vols. 8vo.) ingeniouſly
largely proves this entirely founded on Miſtake, and gives a cle
ſatisfactory Solution of the Matter.

hat learned *Jew*, mentions a River in *Judea*, that uns swiftly all the six Days of the Week, and ands still and rests all the Sabbath.*——I will lay side what I might enlarge, of *those*, and some of he Monsters, or Fish (call them what you will) hat they breed and feed in *them*, † for you may ote, that *the Waters are Nature's Storehouse, in which she locks up her Wonders.*

But, Sir, lest this Discourse may seem tedious, shall give it a sweet Conclusion, out of that holy Poet Mr. *George Herbert*, in his divine Contemplation on GOD's Providence.

Lord, who hath Praise enough, nay who hath any?
None can express thy Works but he that knows 'em;
And none can know thy Works, they are so many,
But only Man, *who to thy Bounty owes 'em.*

We all acknowledge both thy Pow'r and Love
To be exact, transcendent, and divine;
Who dost so strangely, and so sweetly move,
Whilst all things have their End, *yet none but* thine.

Wherefore, most Sacred SPIRIT, I here present,
For me and all my Fellows, Praise to thee;
And just it is that I should pay the Rent,
Because the Benefit accrues to me.

And suitable to this, in that 104th *Psalm*, wherein for Height of Poetry and Wonders, the Prophet *David* seems to exceed himself, how does he there express his Thoughts in choice Metaphors, even to the

* The same is also related by *Philo*: It must be remembered they are both *Jewish Writers*; and thought not (always) the most impartial.

† Between this and the rest of the Paragraph, are about 50 Lines, that I must be ingenuous to own are omitted of the Author's, chiefly Citations from *Pliny*, of Things so grosly incredible, and even ridiculous, and of *Tradiscant*'s and *Ashmole*'s Collections of Rarieties, mostly long since lost or forgotten, as would be an Affront upon common Sense to transcribe. For further Satisfaction see *the Postscript*.

the Amazement of a contemplative Reader, c
cerning the *Sea*, the *Rivers*, and the *Fiſh* the
contained! And the great Naturaliſt *Pliny*
" That Nature's wonderful Power is more
" monſtrated in the Sea than on the Land;"
the numerous, various Creatures, inhabiting in
about that Element, as to the Readers of *Ge*
Rondeletius, *Pliny*, *Auſonius*, *Ariſtotle*, may be
monſtrated; the many ſtrange Teſtimonies of
bartus * and others.—Theſe ſeem to be Wond
but have had ſo many Confirmations from Me
Learning and Credit, that you need not doubt th
Nor are the Number, nor the various Shape
Fiſhes more ſtrange, or fit for Contemplation, t
their different Natures, Inclinations, and Actio
concerning which, I ſhall beg your patient E
little longer.

The *Cuttle-Fiſh* † will caſt a long Gut out
her Throat, which (as an *Angler* does his Li
ſhe lets out and in at Pleaſure, according as
ſees ſome little Fiſh come near her; and (be
hid in the Gravel) lets him nibble and bite
End of it, till by little and little ſhe has drawn
within her Leap, and then catches and devo
him. And for this Reaſon ſome have called
Fiſh the *Sea-Angler*.

And there is a Fiſh called a *Hermit*, that
certain Age gets into a dead Fiſhes Shell, and
mit-like, dwells there alone, ſtudying the W
and Weather, and ſo turns her Shell that ſhe m
it defend her from the Injuries that they w
bring upon her.

* Mr. *Walton* has given them in ſeventeen Verſes of that Au
in *Silveſter*'s Tranſlation, the moſt hobbling and execrable that
made their Appearance, of the Doggrel Kind — So bad, and the
timents ſo fabulous and very childiſh, as to leave no Poſſibili
altering, and are omitted for the ſame Reaſons as in the prec
Note, for theſe the Reader is referred in like manner to the *Poſſ*

† See *Montaigne* and the *Spec. de la Nat.*

There is also a Fish, called by *Elian* * (in his *Book of Living Creatures*) the *Adonis*, or *Darling of the Sea*; so called, because it is a loving and innocent Fish, that hurts nothing that has Life, and is at Peace with all the numerous Inhabitants of the vast watry Element: And truly I think most *Anglers* are so disposed to Mankind.

There are also lustful and chaste Fishes, of which I shall give you Examples.

And first, what *Dubartus* says of a Fish called the *Sargus*; supposing it shall not have the less Credit for being Verse; for he has gathered this, and other Observations, out of Authors that have been great and industrious Searchers into the Secrets of Nature.

The adult'rous Sargus *does not change alone*
Wives every Day, but still to wand'ring prone,
As if the Honey of Sea-Love Delight
Cou'd not suffice his ranging Appetite,
Sports with the She-Goats on the Grassy Shore,
Horning their Husbands, that were horn'd before.

And the same Author writes concerning the *Cantharus.*

But contrary, for nuptial Faith renown'd,
True to one Mate the Cantharus *is found;*
The single she, *the dear selected* Wife,
Claims him entire, his whole of Love and Life.

Sir, but a little longer, and I have done.

Vena. Sir, take what Liberty you think fit, for your Discourse seems to be Musick, and charms me to an Attention.

* De Animalia, Lib. ix. C. 16.

Pisc. Why then, Sir, I will take a little Lib to tell, or rather remind you, what is said of *Tur Doves*; that they silently plight their Troth marry; and then the Surviver scorns (as the *Th cian* Women are said to do) to outlive his or Mate; or which ever shall, do this, and co with another (be it he or she) is denied the N and Honour of a true *Turtle-Dove.*

To parallel this Land-Rarity, and teach M kind a Lesson of Fidelity, and condemn those talk of Religion, and yet come short of the m Faith of Fish and Fowl; Men that violate the l affirmed by St. *Paul* * to be *written in their Hea* which, he says, at the last Day shall condemn leave them without Excuse, I pray hearken what *Dubartas* sings (for the hearing of such co gal Faithfulness will be Musick to all chaste E and therefore I pray hearken to what *Duba* sings of the *Mullet.*†

But in chaste Love the Mullet *all outvies,*
For when her Mate *the Fisher makes his Pri*
Mad to the Shore she follows in Despair,
In Life and Death, resolv'd, his Fate to shar

On the contrary, what shall I say of the *H Cock*, which treads any *Hen*, and then, differe the *Swan*, the *Partridge*, and *Pigeon*, take Care to hatch, to feed, or cherish his own Broo but is senseless though they perish.

And, 'tis considerable, that the *Hen* (w because she takes any *Mate*, expects not this gard) who is sure the Chickens are her's, ha

* Rom. ii. 14, 15. † 5th Day, *in his Poem of* Weeks and

‡ This will not strictly hold: For the *Cock* will sometimes when he finds any thing he thinks is good; and the *Hen* and *C* knowing the Note, always run to partake of it.

kind of moral Impreſſion, her Care and Affec-ion to her own Brood more than doubled; even o ſuch an Height, that our SAVIOUR in expreſſing is Love to *Jeruſalem*, * quotes her for an Example f tender Affection; as HIS FATHER had *Job* for Pattern of Patience.

And to parallel the *Cock*, there are divers Fiſh hat caſt their Spawn on Flags or Stones, and eave it uncovered, and expoſed to become a Prey, nd devoured by Vermin, or other Fiſhes. While thers (as namely the *Barbel*) take ſuch Care for he Preſervation of their Brood, that (unlike the *Cock* or the *Cuckow*) they mutually labour, both the *Spawner* and *Melter*, to cover their Spawn with and, or watch it; or hide it in ſome ſecret Place, nfrequented by Vermin, or by any Fiſh but hemſelves.

Sir, theſe Examples may, to you and others, eem ſtrange; but they are teſtified, ſome by *Ariſtotle*, ſome by *Pliny*, ſome by *Geſner*, and nany others of Credit: And are believed and nown by many of Wiſdom and Experience to be Truth. And indeed are, as I ſaid at the Begin-ning, fit for the Contemplation of a moſt ſerious nd a moſt pious Man. And doubtleſs this made he Prophet *David* ſay, *They that occupy themſelves n deep Waters ſee the wonderful Works of God.* † ndeed ſuch Wonders and Pleaſures too, as the Land affords not.

And that they are fit for the Conſideration of the noſt prudent, pious and peaceable Men, ſeems to be eſtified by the Practice of ſo many devout and con-emplative Perſons; as the Patriarchs and Prophets f old, and the Apoſtles of our Saviour; of which *twelve*, we are ſure he choſe *four* that were ſimple

* Matthew xxiii. 37. † Pſalm cvii. 23, 24.

Fishermen, whom he inspired, and sent to pu
his blessed Will to the *Gentiles*, *viz. Freedom*
the Incumbrances of the Law, and a new W
everlasting Life. Inspiring them also with th
bility to speak *all Languages*, and (by his Sp
accompanying their powerful Eloquence) to
Faith in the unbelieving *Jews*; and themselv
suffer for *that* SAVIOUR whom their Fa
and they had crucified. — This was the Em
ment of these happy Fishermen; concerning w
some have made these Observations. First,
he never reproved these for their *Employmen*
Calling, as he did the *Scribes* and *Money-chan*
And secondly, he found the Hearts of such Me
Nature were fitted for Contemplation and Q
ness; Men of mild, and sweet, and peaceable
rits, as indeed most *Anglers* are. These Men
blessed Saviour (who is observed to love to
Grace in good Natures, tho' indeed, nothi
too hard for him) yet these he chose to call
their irreproveable Employment of Fishing,
gave them Grace to be his Disciples, and fo
him, and do Wonders. — I say *Four* of *Twel*

And it is observable, that it was our Savi
Will, that these four Fishermen should ha
Priority of Nomination in his Catalogue of A
tles; * as namely, first St. *Peter*, St. *Andrew*,
James, St. *John*, and then the rest, in their O

And it is yet more observable, that when
blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, whe
left the rest of his Disciples, and chose only t
to bear him Company at his Transfiguration,
those three were *all Fishermen*. And it is t
believed, that all the other Apostles, after
betook to follow *Christ*, betook themselves t
Fish

* Matthew x. 2.

ſhermen too ;* for it is certain the greater Num-
er of them were found together fiſhing, by *Jeſus*
ter his Reſurrection.†

And ſince I have your Promiſe to hear me with
atience, I will take the Liberty to look back on
Remark made by an ingenious and learned Man,
ho obſerves that GOD has been pleaſed to allow
noſe, whom he himſelf has appointed to deliver his
ered Will in *holy Writ*, yet to expreſs it in ſuch
Metaphors as their former Affections or Practice
ad inclined them to. He brings *Solomon* for an
Example, who before his Converſion was remark-
bly carnaly-amorous ; and after, by God's Ap-
ointment, wrote that Spiritual Dialogue or holy
ove-Song betwixt GOD and his Church (the *Can-*
cles) in which he ſays, his Beloved had *Eyes like*
e Fiſh-pools in Heſhbon.‡

And if this hold in Reaſon, as I ſee none to the
ontrary, then it may be probably concluded, that
Moſes, who I told you before wrote the Book of
Job and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd,
ere both *Anglers* ; § for you ſhall, in all the *Old*
eſtament, find *Fiſh-hooks*, I think, but twice men-
oned, namely, by meek *Moſes*, the Friend of
GOD, and by the humble Prophet *Amos*.

Concerning which laſt, the Prophet *Amos*, I ſhall
ake but this Obſervation, that he that ſhall read
e *humble*, *lowly*, *plain Stile* of that Prophet, and
ompare it with the *high*, *glorious*, *eloquent Stile*
f the Prophet *Iſaiah* (though they be both equal-
true) may eaſily believe *Amos* to be not only a
hepherd, but a good-natur'd, plain *Fiſherman*.

* He muſt mean between his Death and Aſcenſion.

† John xxi. 3, 4. ‡ Chap. vii. 4.

§ *Iſaiah* will come in for a *third*, by this Concluſion ; who (at hap. xix. 8.) ſee Note, Page 19, ſpeaks of them *that caſt Angle into e Brooks*, &c.

Which I the rather believe, by comparing affectionate, loving, lowly, humble Epistles *Peter*, St. *James*, and St. *John*, who we were all *Fishers*, with the glorious Language high Metaphors of St. *Paul*, who we may be was not.

And for the Lawfulness of fishing, it may well be maintained by our Saviour's bidding *Peter* cast his Hook into the Water, and cat Fish, for Money to pay tribute to *Cæsar*. let me tell you, *Angling* is of high Esteem, much Use in other Nations. He that reads *Voyages* of *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto*, shall find there he declares to have found a King and se Priests a fishing.

And he that reads *Plutarch*, shall see that *ling* was not contemptible in the Days of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, and that they in the mid their wonderful Glory, used it as a principal Re ation. And let me tell you, that in the script *Angling* is always taken in the best Sense; and though *Hunting* may be sometimes, yet it is seldom, to be so understood. And let me add, more, he that views the ancient Ecclesiastical nons, shall find *Hunting* to be forbidden to Chu men, as a turbulent, toilsome, perplexing Recr on; while *Angling* is allowed to *Clergymen*, as a harmless Recreation, that invites them to *Con plation* and *Quietness*. I might here enlarge my by telling you what Commendations our lea *Perkins* * bestows on *Angling*, and how dear a ver, and great a Practiser of it, our learned *Whitaker* was, as indeed many others of Eminence have been; but I will content m

* *Perkins* was a Divine of great Soundness and Eminence; young. Q. *Elizabeth* used to call him *her Preacher*. — *Whitak* Queen's Professor in *Cambridge* in her Reign; of the same relig Sentiments and Character.

with two memorable Men, that lived near our own Time, whom I also take to have been Ornaments to this Art.

The first is Dr. *Nowel*, sometime Dean of the Cathedral of St. *Paul's* in *London*, * where his Monument stands undefaced, † a Man that in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth*, not that of *Henry* VIII ‡ was so noted for his meek Spirit, deep Learning, Prudence and Piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation both, chose, enjoined, and trusted him to make a Catechism for publick *Use*; such an one as should stand as a Rule of Faith and Manners to their Posterity. And the good old Man, though he was very learned, yet knowing that GOD leads us not to Heaven by many nor by hard Questions, like an honest *Angler*, made that *good*, *plain*, *unperplexed* Catechism, which is printed with our good old Service-Book. § I say, this good Man was a dear Lover, and constant Practiser of *Angling*, as any Age can produce. And his Custom was to spend, besides his fixed Hours of Prayer, those Hours which by Command of the Church were enjoined the Clergy, and voluntarily dedicated to Devotion by many *Primitive Christians*: Besides those Hours, this good Man was observed to spend a tenth Part of his Time in *Angling*; and also (for I have conversed with those which have with him) to bestow a tenth Part of his Revenue, and, usually, *all his Fish*, amongst

* Anno 1550.

† This was written some Years before the Fire 1666, which consumed *this* with *that Church*.

‡ Which he would mean by this *last Distinction* as less pure and complete than that *other*, that had been established by K. *Edward* VI.

§ This proves to be an Error in our Author, by a Conference held before King *James* I. where Dr. *Reynolds* objects, "The Catechism in the *Common Prayer-Book is too brief*, and that by Dean *Nowel too long*, &c." Which shews he was not the Author of the former. *Fuller's Church History*, lib. x. p. 14.

the Poor that inhabited near those *Rivers* in wh
they were caught; saying often "That Cha
"gave Life to Religion:" And at his Return
his House, would praise GOD he had spent t
Day free from worldly Trouble; both harmles
and in a Recreation that became a Churchm
And this good Man was well content, if not d
rous, that Posterity should know he was an *Angl*
as may appear by his Picture, now to be seen, a
carefully kept in *Brasen-Nose-College*, to which
was a liberal Benefactor; in which Picture he
drawn leaning on a Desk, with his Bible bef
him, and on one Hand of him his Lines, Hoo
and other Tackling lying in a Round; and on
other Hand, are his Angle-Rods of several Sor
and by them this is written: "That he died
"13th *Feb.* 1601, being aged 95 Years, 44
"which he had been Dean of St. *Paul*'s; a
"that his Age had neither impaired his Hearin
"nor dimmed his Eyes, nor weakened his M
"mory, nor made any of the Faculties of
"Mind weak or useless." 'Tis said, that *Angl*
and *Temperance* were great Causes of these Bl
ings; and I wish the like to all that imitate hi
and love the Memory of so good a Man.

My next and last Example shall be, that Und
valuer * of Money, the late Provost of *Eton C*
lege, Sir *Henry Wotton*, a Man † with whom
have often fished and conversed; a Man wh
foreign Employments in the Service of this *Nati*
and whose *Experience*, *Learning*, *Wit* and *Che*
fulness, made his Company to be esteemed one
the Delights of Mankind. This Man, whose va
Approbation of *Angling* were sufficient to convin
a

* Meaning his indifferent Regard to it.

† Mr. *Walton* has published an ingenious well-wrote Life of him
his Vol. of Lives, *&c.*

any modeſt Cenſurer of it, was alſo a moſt dear Lover and a frequent Practiſer of *my Art*; of which he would ſay, "'Twas an Employment for "his idle Time, which was then not idly ſpent; "for *Angling* was, after tedious Study, a Reſt to "his Mind, a Cheerer of his Spirits, a Diverter "of Sadneſs, a Calmer of unquiet Thoughts, a "Moderator of Paſſions, a Procurer of Content-"edneſs; and that it begat Habits of Peace and "Patience in thoſe that profeſſed and practiſed it." Indeed, my Friend, you will find *Angling* to be like the Virtue of Humility, which has a Calmneſs of Spirit, and a World of other Bleſſings attending it.

Sir, this was the Saying of that learned Man, and I do eaſily believe that Peace and Patience, and a calm Content, did cohabit in the chearful Heart of Sir *Henry Wotton*, becauſe I know that when he was beyond ſeventy Years of Age, he made this Deſcription of a Part of the preſent Pleaſure that poſſeſſed him, as he ſat quietly in a Summer's Evening, on a Bank a *fiſhing*. It is a Deſcription of the *Spring*; which, becauſe it glided as ſoft and ſweetly from his Pen, as that *River* does at this Time by which it was then made, I ſhall repeat it to you.

This Day Dame Nature ſeem'd in Love:
The luſty Sap began to move,
Enlivening freſh th' embracing Vines;
And Birds had drawn their Valentines.
The jealous Trout *(that low did lie)*
'Roſe at a well-deſſembled Fly; ——
There ſtood my Friend, with patient Skill,
Attentive o'er his trembling Quill.
Already were the Eaves poſſeſt
With the fleet Swallow's loomy Neſt;

The Groves in Philomel's *ſweet Voice,*
From all their Echoes did rejoice;
The Show'rs were ſhort, the Weather mild,
The Morning freſh, the Evening ſmil'd.
Joan *takes her neat-rub'd Pail, and now*
She trips to milk the ſand-red Cow;
Where, for ſome ſturdy, Foot-ball Swain,
She ſtrokes a Sillabub or twain.
The Fields and Gardens thick were ſet
With Tulips, Crocus, Violet;
And now, tho' rare, the modeſt Roſe,
Did more than Half a Bluſh diſcloſe.
Thus all looks gay and full of Cheer,
To welcome the new-wardrob'd Year.

Theſe were the Thoughts that then poſſeſt undiſturbed Mind of Sir *Henry Wotton*. Will hear the Wiſh of another Angler, and the Co mendation of his happy Life, which he alſo in Verſe? *viz. Jo. Davors*, Eſq;

All harmleſs let me live, and near the Brink
Of Trent *or* Avon *have a Dwelling-place;*
Where I may ſee my Quill or Cork down-ſink,
With eager Bite of Pearch, or Bleak, or Dace;
And on the World and my CREATOR *think,*
Whilſt ſome Men ſtrive ill-gotten Goods t'embrac
And others ſpend their Time in baſe Exceſs
Of Wine; or worſe, in Brawls and Wantonn

Let them that liſt, theſe Paſtimes ſtill purſue,
And on ſuch pleaſing Fancies feed their Fill,
So I the Fields and Meadows green may view,
And daily by freſh Rivers walk at Will,
Among white Daiſies, *and the* Violets *blue,*
Red Hyacinth, *and yellow* Daffadil.
Narciſſus, *purpled like the Morning Rays,*
Pale Gander-graſs, *and azure* Culver-keys.

I co

I count it higher Pleasure, to behold
The stately Compass of the lofty Sky;
The Midst thereof, like burning Gold,
And, in the Air up-roll'd,
The flaming Chariot of the World's great Eye;
The watry Clouds, that in the Air up-roll'd,
With sundry Kinds of painted Colours fly;
And fair Aurora *lifting up her Head,*
With Blushes, rising from old Tithon's *Bed.*

The Mountains swelling stately, from the Plains;
The Plain's vast-stretch'd Extent of level Ground;
The Ground diversify'd in sundry Veins;
The Veins inclos'd with Rivers running round;
These Rivers making way through Nature's Chains,
With headlong Course to join the Sea profound;
The raging Sea beneath the Vallies low,
Where Lakes, and Streams, and Rills, united flow.

The lofty Woods, the Forests wide and long,
Adorn'd with Leaves and Branches fresh and green,
In whose cool Bow'rs the Birds, with many a Song,
Welcome, in solemn Quires, the Summer's Queen;
The Meadows fair, where Flora's *Gifts among*
Are intermixt, with verdent Grass between;
The Fish with silver'd Scales, that softly swim
The sweet Brook's Deeps, or rove his crystal Brim.

All these, and many more, of his Creation,
That made the Heav'ns, doth oft the Angler see,
Taking therein no little Delectation,
To think how fair, how wonderful they be;
Framing thereof an inward Contemplation,
To set his Heart from other Fancies free;
And whilst he looks on these with joyful Eyes,
His Mind is rapt above the starry Skies.

Sir,

Sir, I am glad my Memory has not loſt th
laſt Verſes, becauſe they are ſomewhat more p
ſant and more ſuitable to *May-Day*, than my h
Diſcourſe; and I am glad your Patience hath h
out ſo long as to hear them and me; for, b
together have brought us within Sight of
Thatcht-Houſe, and I muſt be your Debtor
you think it worth your Attention) for the reſt
my promiſed Diſcourſe, till ſome other Oppor
nity, and a like Time of Leiſure.

Vena. Sir, you have angled me on with m
Pleaſure to the *Thatcht-Houſe*; and I now f
your Words true, "That good Company mak
"the Way ſeem ſhort;" for truſt me, Sir,
thought we had wanted three Miles of this Hou
till you ſhewed it me: But now we are at it, w
turn in, and refreſh ourſelves with a Cup of Dri
and a little Reſt.

Piſc. Moſt gladly, Sir, and we'll drink a c
Cup to all the *Otter-hunters* that are to meet
to-morrow.

Vena. That we will, Sir, and to all the Lovers
Angling too, of which Number I am now willi
to be one myſelf; for, by the Help of your go
Diſcourſe and Company, I have put on n
Thoughts, both of the Art of *Angling*, and of
that profeſs it. And if you will but meet me t
morrow, at the Time and Place appointed, a
beſtow one Day with me and my Friends in hu
ing the *Otter*, I will dedicate the next two D
to wait on you; and we two will, for that Ti
do nothing but angle, and talk of Fiſh and fiſhin

Piſc. 'Tis a Match, Sir, I will not fail y
God willing, to be at *Amwell-hill* to-morr
Morning, before Sun-riſing.

CH

CHAP. II.

Observations of the Otter, *and* Chub.

Vena. MY Friend *Piſcator* you have kept Time with my Thoughts, for the Sun is juſt riſing, and I myſelf juſt come to this Place, and the Dogs have juſt put down an *Otter!* — Look down at the Bottom of the Hill there in that Meadow chequered with *Water-lillies* and *Lady-ſmocks* — There you may ſee what Work they make. Look! look! you may ſee all buſy, Men and Dogs, Dogs and Men, all buſy!

Piſca. Sir, I am glad to meet you, and to have ſo fair an Entrance into this Day's Sport; and glad to ſee ſo many Dogs, and more Men, all in Purſuit of the *Otter*; let's complement no longer, but join them. — Come, honeſt *Venator*, let's be gone, let us make Haſte, I long to be doing; no reaſonable Hedge or Ditch ſhall hold me.

Vena. Gentleman-Huntſman, where found you this *Otter?*

Hunt. Marry, Sir, we found her a Mile from this Place, a fiſhing: She has this Morning eaten the greateſt Part of this *Trout:* She has only left thus much of it as you ſee, and was fiſhing for more. When we came we found her juſt at it; but we were here very early, an Hour before Sun-riſe, and have given her no Reſt ſince we came; ſure ſhe will hardly eſcape all theſe Dogs and Men. I am to have the Skin if we kill her.

Vena. Why, Sir, what is the Skin worth?

Hunt. It is worth ten Shillings to make Gloves.

☞ *The Gloves of an* Otter *are the beſt Fortification for your Hands that can be thought on, againſt wet Weather.** *Piſc.*

* This offers for a uſeful Experiment in *Boots, Hat-Linings, &c.*

Pisc. I pray, honeſt Huntſman, let me aſk
pleaſant Queſtion. Do you hunt a Beaſt, or a

Hunt. ir, it is not in my Power to reſolve
I leave it to the College of *Carthuſians*, who
made Vows never to eat Fleſh. But I have
the Queſtion has been debated among many
Clerks, and they ſeem to differ about it; yet
agree, that his Tail is Fiſh; and if his Bod
Fiſh too, then I may ſay, that a Fiſh will
upon Land (for an *Otter* does ſo) ſometimes
ſix, or ten Miles in a Night, to catch for
young ones, or to glut herſelf with Fiſh: An
can tell you that *Pigeons* will fly forty Miles fo
Breakfaſt. But, Sir, I am ſure the *Otter* dev
much Fiſh, and kills and ſpoils much more
he eats; and that this *Dog-fiſher* (for ſo the *La*
call him) can ſmell a Fiſh in the Water an
dred Yards from him (*Geſner* ſays much farth
and that his Genitals are good againſt the Fal
Sickneſs; and that there is an Herb (*Beu*
which being hung in a Linnen Cloth near a F
Pond, or any Haunt that he uſes, makes
avoid the Place; which proves he ſmells both
Water and Land: And I can tell you, ther
brave hunting this *Water-dog* in *Cornwall*, wh
there have been ſo many, that our learned *Cam*
ſays, "There is a River called * *Otterſey*, wh
"was ſo named, by Reaſon of the Abundanc
"*Otters* that bred and fed in it."

And thus much for my Knowledge of the O
which you may now ſee above Water at vent,
the Dogs cloſe with him. I now ſee he will
laſt long; follow, therefore, my Maſters, follo
for *Sweetlips* was like to have him at this laſt V

* Camden, *Britan. p.* 32, *B. Gibſon's Edition*, names it O
and places it in *Devonſhire*, not *Cornwall*.

Vena. Oh me! all the Horſe are got over the River; what ſhall we do now, ſhall we follow them over the Water?

Hunt. No, Sir, No, be not ſo eager, ſtay a little, and follow me, for both they and the Dogs will be ſuddedly on this Side again, I warrant you; and the *Otter* too, it may be. Now have at him with *Killbuck*, for he vents again.

Vena. Marry, ſo he does; for look, he vents in that Corner. Now, now *Ringwood* has her — now he is gone again, and has bit the poor Dog. — Now *Sweetlips* has her; hold her *Sweetlips!* — Now all the Dogs have her, ſome above, and ſome under Water; but now, now ſhe is tired, and paſt ſwimming. Come, bring her to me, *Sweetlips!* — 'tis a good Dog. — Look, 'tis a *Bitch-Otter*, and ſhe has lately whelped. Let us go to the Place where ſhe was put down, and, not far from it, you will find all her young ones, I dare warrant you.——

Hunt. Come, Gentlemen, come all, let us go to the Place where we put down the *Otter*. Look you, here about it was that ſhe kennelled: Look you, here it was indeed, for here are her young ones, no leſs than five. Come, let us kill them all.

Piſc. No, I pray, Sir, ſave me one, and I will try if I can make her tame, as I know an ingenious Gentleman in *Leiceſterſhire* (Mr. *Nich. Seagrave*) has done; who has not only made her tame, but to catch Fiſh, and do many other Things of much Pleaſure.

Hunt. Take one, with all my Heart, but let us kill the reſt. And now let us go to an honeſt Ale-houſe, where we may have a Cup of good Barley Wine, and ſing *Old Roſe*, and all of us rejoice together.

Vena.

Vena. Come, my Friend *Piſcator*, let me
vite you along with us; I will bear your Cha
this Night, and you ſhall bear mine to-morro
for my Intention is to accompany you a Da
two in fiſhing.

Piſc. Sir, your Requeſt is granted; and I
be glad both to exchange ſuch a Courteſy,
to enjoy your Company.

Vena. Well, now let us go to your Sport
Angling.

Piſc. Let us be going, with all my Heart: G
keep you all, Gentlemen, may you meet this
with another Bitch *Otter*, and kill her mer
and all her young ones too.

Vena. Now, *Piſcator*, where will you begin
fiſh?

Piſc. We are not yet come to a likely Place
muſt walk a Mile further yet before I begin.

Vena. Well then, I pray, as we walk, tell
freely, How do you like your Lodging, and m
Hoſt, and the Company? Is not mine Ho
witty Man?

Piſc. Sir, I will let you know preſently wh
think of your Hoſt; but firſt, will tell you, I
glad theſe *Otters* were killed, and am ſorry th
are no more *Otter-killers*; for I know the W
of them, and not keeping the Fence-Months
the Preſervation of Fiſh, will, in Time, prove
Deſtruction of all Rivers. And thoſe very
that are left, that make Conſcience of the L
of the Nation, and of keeping Days of Abſtine
will be forced to eat Fleſh, or ſuffer more In
veniencies than are yet foreſeen.

Vena. Why, Sir, what are thoſe you call the *ence-Months?*

Piſc. Sir, they be principally three, namely, *March*, *April*, and *May*, theſe being the uſual Months that *Salmon* come out of the Sea to ſpawn n moſt freſh Rivers; and, their Fry would, be- g ſo taught by Nature, about a certain Time, eturn back, in Exchange of the *freſh*, to the *Salt Water*. if they were not hindered by Weirs and nlawful Gins, which the greedy Fiſhermen ſet, nd ſo deſtroy them by Thouſands. He that ſhall iew the wiſe Statutes made in the 13th of *Edward* he Firſt, and the like by *Richard* the Third, may e ſeveral Proviſions made againſt the Deſtruction f Fiſh; and though I profeſs no Knowledge of he Law, yet, I am ſure, theſe Defects might e eaſily amended; but I remember a wiſe Friend f mine did uſually ſay, "*That which is every Body's Buſineſs, is no Body's Buſineſs.*" If it were otherwiſe, there could not be ſo many Nets nd Fiſh that are under the Statute Size ſold daily mongſt us; of which the Conſervators of the Waters ſhould be aſhamed.

But, above all, the taking Fiſh in Spawning-ime, may be ſaid to be againſt Nature; it is like aking the Dam on the Neſt, when ſhe hatches er Young; a Sin ſo againſt Nature, that Almighty God hath in Holy Writ made a Law againſt it.*

But the poor Fiſh have Enemies enough beſides uch unnatural Fiſhermen, as namely, the *Otters* hat I ſpake of, the *Cormorant*, the *Bittern*, the *Oſprey*, the *Sea-gull*, the *Hern*, the *King-fiſher*, he *Gorrara*, the *Puet*, the *Swan*, *Gooſe*, *Ducks*, nd the *Craber*, or *Water-Rat*; againſt all which ny honeſt Man may make a juſt Quarrel; but I will

* Deut. xxii. 6, 7.

will not: I will leave them to be quarrelled and killed by others; for I am not of a cruel ture; I love to kill nothing but Fish.

And now to your Question concerning Host: To speak truly, he is not to me a Companion; for most of his Conceits were Scripture Jests, or lascivious Jests; for wh count no Man witty: For the Devil will h Man that Way inclined to the first; and his corrupt Nature, which he always carries with to the latter. But a Companion that feasts Company with Wit and Mirth, and leaves ou Sin, which is usually mixed with them, he is Man; and, indeed, such a Companion should his Charges borne; and to such Company I to bring you this Night. For at *Trout-Hall*, far from this Place, where I purpose to lodge, is usually an *Angler*, that proves good Comp and, let me tell you, good Company, and Discourse, are the very Sinews of Virtue. for such as we heard last Night, it infects oth the very Boys will learn to talk and swear as heard my Host, and another of the Company, shall be nameless; I am sorry he is a Gentlem for less Religion will not serve for their Souls a Beggar's; I think more will be require the last great Day. Well, you know what ample is able to do; and I know what the Po says in the like Case, which is worthy to be n by all Parents, and People of Civility;

——— *Many a one*
Owes to his Country his Religion:
And in another *would as strongly grow,*
Had but his Nurse or Mother taught him so.

* *Herbert.*

This is Reason put into Verse, and worthy the Consideration of a wise Man. But of this no more; for though I love Civility, yet I hate severe Censures: I will to my own Art; and, I doubt not, but at yonder Tree I shall catch a *Chub*; and then we will turn to an honest cleanly Hostess that I know right well, rest ourselves there, and dress it for our Dinner.

Vena. Oh, Sir, a *Chub* is the worst Fish that swims; I hoped for a *Trout* to my Dinner.

Pisc. Trust me, Sir, there is not a likely Place for a *Trout* hereabout; and we staid so long to take our Leave of your Huntsmen this Morning, that the Sun is got so high, and shines so clear, that I will not undertake the catching of a *Trout* till Evening; and though a *Chub* be by you, and many others, reckoned the worst of Fish, yet you shall see I will make it a good one, by dressing it.

Vena. Why, how will you dress him?

Pisc. I will tell you by and by, when I have caught him. Look you here, Sir, do you see? — But you must stand very close — there lie upon the Top of the Water, in this very Hole, twenty *Chubs*. I will catch only one, and that shall be the biggest of them all. And that I will do so, I will hold you twenty to one; and you shall see it done.

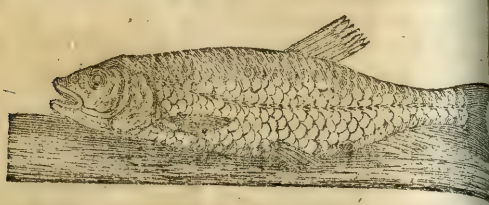
Vena. Ay, marry, Sir! now you talk like an Artist; and I will say you are one, when I shall see you perform what you say you can do; but I yet doubt it.

Pisc. You shall not doubt it long, for you shall see me do it presently — Look, the biggest of these *Chubs* has had some Bruise upon his Tail by a *Pike*, or some other Accident, and that looks like a white Spot; that very *Chub* I mean to put into your Hands

Hands inſtantly — Sit you but down in the Sh and ſtay but a little while, and I'll warran I'll bring him to you.

Vena. I will ſit down, and hope well, bec you ſeem ſo confident.

Piſc. Look you, Sir, there is a Trial of Skill; there he is!



that very *Chub* that I ſhewed you with the wh Spot on his Tail: And I will be as certain make him a good Diſh of Meat, as I was to ca him. I will now lead you to an honeſt Aleho where we ſhall find a cleanly Room, Lavender the Windows, and twenty Ballads ſtuck about Wall; there my Hoſteſs, which, I may tell y is both cleanly and handſome, and civil, dreſſed many a one for me, and ſhall now dreſ after my Faſhion, and I'll warrant it good Mea

Vena. Come, Sir, with all my Heart; for I gin to be hungry, and long to be at it, and, inde to reſt myſelf too; for though I have walked four Miles this Morning, yet I begin to be wea Yeſterday's Hunting hangs ſtill upon me.

Piſc. Well, Sir, and you ſhall quickly be at r for yonder is the Houſe I mean to bring you to — Come — Hoſteſs — How do you? Will you give us a Cup of your beſt Drink, and then di this *Chub*, as you dreſſed my laſt, when I and Friend were here about ten Days ago? But

nuſt do me one Courteſy, it muſt be done in-

tantly.

Hoſ. I will do it Mr. *Piſcator*, and with all the ſpeed I can.

Piſc. ——— Now, Sir, has not my Hoſteſs made Haſte, and does not the Fiſh look lovely?

Vena. Both, upon my Word, Sir, and therefore et's ſay Grace, and fall to eating of it.

Piſc. Well, Sir, how do you like it?

Vena. Truſt me! it is as good Meat as I ever taſted. Now let me thank you for it, drink to you, and beg a Courteſy of you; but it muſt not be denied me.

Piſc. What is it, I pray, Sir? You are ſo modeſt, that, methinks, I may promiſe to grant it, before it is aſked.

Vena. Why, Sir, it is, that from henceforth you will allow me to call you *Maſter*, and that really I may be your *Scholar*; for you are ſuch a Companion, and have ſo quickly caught, and ſo excellently cooked this Fiſh, as makes me ambitious to be your Scholar.

Piſc. Give me your Hand; from this Time forward I will be your Maſter, and teach you as much of this Art as I am able; and will, as you deſire me, tell you ſomewhat of the Nature of moſt of the Fiſh that we are to angle for; and, I am ſure, I both can and will tell you, more than any common *Angler* yet knows.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How to fish for and to dress the Chavender *or C*

Pisc. THE *Chub*, though he eat well thus dr yet as he is, usually, he does not. B objected against, not only for being full of forked Bones, dispersed through all his Body that he eats watrish, and the Flesh of him firm, but limp, and tasteless: The *French* e him so mean, as to call him *Un villain*; never less he may be so dressed as to make him very Meat; as namely, if he be a large *Chub*, thus:

*First scale, then wash him clean, and tak his Guts; make the Hole as little, and as to his Gills, as you may conveniently; and esp make clean his Throat from the Grass and t that are usually in it (for if that be not very c it will make him taste very sower;) then put sweet Herbs * into his Belly, tie him up with or three Splinters to a Spit, and roast him, b often with Vinegar, or rather Verjuice and Bu with good Store of Salt mixed with it.*

Being thus dressed, you will find him a m better Dish of Meat than you or most Folk, than *Anglers* themselves, imagine; for this up the fluid watry Humour with which all C abound.

But, take this Rule with you, that a C newly taken and dressed, is so much better th *Chub* of a Day's keeping, that I can compare to nothing so fitly, as to Cherries newly gath from a Tree, and others that have been bru and laid a Day or two in Water. Being thus

* The best Herbs are Rosemary, Thyme, Sweet Mar Parsly, and Winter Savory. *Barbel, Tench,* and *Bream,* may dressed, basting them with fresh Butter only.

nd dreſſed preſently, and not waſhed after he is utted (for note, ☞ *That lying long in Water, nd waſhing the Blood out of any Fiſh, after they be utted, abates much of their Sweetneſs)* you will nd the *Chub* to be ſuch Meat as will recompenſe our Labour, and diſabuſe your Opinion. Or you nay dreſs the *Chavender* or *Chub* thus:

When you have ſcaled him, and cut off his Tail nd Fins, and waſhed him very clean, then chine or lit him through the Middle, as Salt-fiſh is uſually ut; then give him three or four Scotches on the Back, with your Knife, and broil him on Wood or Charcoal, that are free from Smoke, and all the Time baſte him with the beſt ſweet Butter, and good ſtore of Salt mixed with it; and to this add a little Thyme, cut exceeding ſmall, or bruiſed into the Butter. The *Cheven* thus dreſſed, hath the watry Taſte taken away, for which ſo many except gainſt him. Thus was that dreſſed which you iked ſo well, and commended ſo much. But ote again, that if this *Chub* that you eat of had een kept till to-morrow, he had not been worth Ruſh; and remember *that his Throat be waſhed very clean, I ſay very clean, and his Body not waſhed after he is gutted, as, indeed, no Fiſh ſhould be.*

Well, Scholar, you ſee what Pains I have taken o recover the loſt Credit of the poor deſpiſed *Chub.* And now I will give you ſome Rules how to catch him; and I am glad to enter you into the Art of Fiſhing by catching a *Chub*, for there is no Fiſh bet-ter to enter a young Angler, he is ſo eaſily caught; but then it muſt be this particular Way*.

Go

* In Rivers that are narrow, and much incumbered with Wood, with a ſhort Line, *viz.* one ſingle Link of Hair, or Silk-worm-gut, you may fiſh for him in the like Manner, under the Boughs, and at the Roots of Trees, growing in the oppoſite Side of the Water.

Go to the same Hole in which I caugh
Chub, where, in most hot Days, you will fi
Dozen or Twenty floating near the Top of
Water; take two or three *Grashoppers*, as yo
over the Meadow, and get secretly behind a T
and stand as free from Motion as possible;
put a *Grashopper* on your Hook, and let it ha
Quarter of a Yard short of the Water, to w
End, you must rest your Rod on some Bough;
it is likely the *Chubs* will sink down towards
Bottom, at the first Shadow of your Rod; f
Chub is the fearfullest of Fishes, and will do fo
but a Bird flies over him, and makes the leaft Sh
on the Water; but they will presently rise up to
Top again, and there lie soaring, till some Sha
affrights them again. When they thus lie,
out the best *Chub*, which (setting yourself
right Place) you may very easily see, and m
your Rod as softly as a Snail moves, to that C
you intend to catch. Let your Bait fall ge
upon the Water, three or four Inches before h
and he will infallibly take the Bait, and you
be as sure to catch him; for he is one of the
ther-mouth'd Fishes, of which a Hook does fe
ever lose his Hold; and therefore give him h
enough, before you offer to take him out of
Water — Go your Way presently, take my R
and do as I bid you, and I will sit down and m
my Tackling, till you return back.

Vena. Truly, my loving Master, you have
fered me as fair as I could wish; I will go, and
serve your Directions.

Look you, Master, what I have done!
which joys my Heart; caught just such an
Chub at your's.

Pisc. Marry, and I am glad of it. I am like to have a towardly Scholar of you. I now see, that, with Advice and Practice, you will make an *Angler* in a short Time. Have but a Love to it, and I'll warrant you.

§ * §

Vena. But, Master, what if I could not have found a *Grashopper?*

Pisc. Then I may tell you, a black Snail * with his Belly slit, to shew his White, or a Piece of Soft Cheese will usually do as well; nay, sometimes a *Worm*, or any Kind of Fly, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Flesh-fly*, or *Wall-fly*, or the *Dor* or *Beetle*, which you may find under Cow-dung; or a *Bob*, which you will find in the same Place, and, in Time, will be a *Beetle*; it is a short white Worm, like to, and bigger, than a *Gentle*. Or a *Cad* or *Case-worm*. Any of these will do very well to fish in such a Way; and, after this Manner, you may catch a *Trout* in a hot Evening; when, as you walk by a Brook, and shall see or hear him leap at Flies, then, if you get a *Grashopper*, put it on your Hook, with your Line about two Yards long, standing behind a Bush or Tree where his Hole is, and make your Bait stir up and down on the Top of the Water. You may, if you stand close, be sure of a Bite, but not sure to catch him, for he is not a Leather-mouthed Fish; and, after this Manner, you may fish for him with almost any Kind of live Fly, but especially with a *Grashopper*.

C *Vena.*

* Early in the Morning he takes *this*, but seldom in the Heat of the Day. A general Indication to the Angler, not to use any Baits when Nature puts them not forth. He always loves a large Bait, and will bite at several Sorts of Flies, or other Mixtures; as a Fly, an Oak-Worm, and Paste, put at once on the Hook together.

Vena. But, before you go further, pray, good M ster, what mean you by a Leather-mouthed F

Pisc. By this I mean, such as have their T in their Throat; as the *Chub*, the *Barbel*, the C geon, *Carp*, and divers others have; and the H being stuck into the Leather or Skin of the M of such Fish, does very seldom or never los Hold: But, on the contrary, a *Pike*, a *Pe* or *Trout*, and some other Fish, which have their Teeth in their Throats, but in their Mo (which you shall observe to be very full of Bo and the Skin very thin, and little of it) I say these Fish, the Hook never takes so sure H but you often lose your Fish, unless he have ged it.

Vena. I thank you, good Master, for this servation.

* *

But now, what shall be done with my C which I have caught?

Pisc. Marry, Sir, it shall be given away to poor Body; for I will warrant you, I will you a *Trout* for your Supper; and it is a good ginning of your Art, to offer your First-fruit the Poor, who will both thank God and you it; which I see by your Silence you seem to sent to. And, for your Willingness to part w so charitably, I will also teach you more cond ing *Chub* fishing.

§ * §

In *March* and *April*, he is usually taken *Worms*; * in *May*, *June*, and *July*, he will b

* The *Chub* spawns in *March*, and is then worst. But the Middle or End of *April* the above Bait may be successfull and will kill in Abundance. But then your Worm must be *Lob Worm*, and in a hasty Stream, and used early: For your Sp Way will abate as the Day advances. They are used (sometim *Top*, as the Fly, or with the *Running-Line*, as Occasion shews

any *Fly*, or *Cherries*, or young *Beetles*, or any Kind of *Snail*, or at the *black Bee*, that breeds in Clay Walls; and he never refuses a *Grashopper* on the Top of a swift Stream; * nor, at the Bottom, the young *Humble Bee*, that breeds in long Grass, and is ordinarily found by the Mower of it. In *August*, and the cooler Months, use a yellow Paste, made of the strongest Cheese, and pounded in a Mortar with a little Butter and Saffron (so much of it, as being beaten small, will turn it to a Lemon colour). And some make a Paste for the Winter Months, of old Cheese and Turpentine, † at which Time the *Chub* is accounted best; for then it is observed, that the forked Bones are lost, or turned into a Kind of Gristle, especially if he be baked. He will also bite at a *Minnow* or *Penk*, ‡ as a *Trout* will; of which I shall tell you more hereafter, and of divers other Baits. But take this for a Rule, that in hot Weather, he is to be fished for towards the Mid-water, or near the Top, and, in colder, nearer the Bottom. And if you fish for him on the Top, with a *Beetle*, or any *Fly*, then be sure to let your Line be very long, and to keep out of Sight.

And having told you that his Spawn is excellent Meat, and that the Head of a large *Cheven*, the Throat being well washed, is the best Part of him, I will say no more of this Fish at present, but wish

* This is the best Way of Angling for him; in the same Way as with a Fly. The best and largest are thus caught about *September*, or when the Weeds first rot.

† Many mix a Bit of fat or rusty Bacon with the former, and account it an excellent Bait.

‡ Of all Baits this succeeds best, and yields admirable Sport, in a deep and strong Current. It must be used early, or in the less hot Hours of the Day. Or *all Day*, if cool, and a Breeze blows.

you may catch the next you fish for. But, you should judge me too nice in urging to the *Chub* dressed so presently after he is taken will commend to your Consideration, how curi former Times have been in the like Kind.

You shall read in *Seneca's Natural Questions* that the Antients were so curious in the new of their Fish, that they seemed not fresh enou that were not put alive into the Guests Ha To that End, they usually kept them living Glass-Vessels in their Dining-Rooms; and gloried much, to have at their Entertainme *that* Fish taken from under their Table alive, was instantly to be fed on. And, he says, took great Pleasure to see their *Mullets* change several Colours when they were dying. But nough of this, for I doubt I have staid too from giving you some Observations of the *Tr* and how to fish for him; which shall take up next spare Time.

Chap. IV.

Observations of the Nature and Breeding of Trout, and how to fish for him. And the Maid's *Song.*

Pisc. THE *Trout* is a Fish highly valued both this and foreign Nations; he may justly allowed (as the old Poet said of Wine, we *English* of Venison) to be a generous Fish like the *Buck*, that he also has *his* Seasons; fo is observed, he comes in and goes out of Sea with the *Stag* and *Buck*. *Gesner* says, his N is of a *German* Offspring †, and is a Fish

* Lib. iii. Chap. 17. † Rather from the *Latin, Tru*

feeds clean and purely, in the ſwifteſt Streams, and on the hardeſt Gravel; and that he may juſtly contend with all Freſh-water Fiſh, as the *Mullet* may with all Sea Fiſh, for Precedency, and Daintineſs of Taſte; and, when in right Seaſon, the moſt dainty Palates have given Preference to him.

And, let me tell you, as there are ſome barren *Does* that are good in Summer, ſo are there ſome barren *Trouts* that are good in Winter: But there are not many ſo; for uſually they are in their Perfection in the Month of *May*, and decline with the *Buck*. In ſeveral Countries, as in *Germany*, and other Parts, compared to ours, Fiſh differ much in their Bigneſs, Shape, and otherwiſe, and ſo do *Trouts*. It is well known, that in the Lake *Leman* (of *Geneva*) there are *Trouts* taken three Cubits long, as is affirmed by *Geſner*, a Writer of good Credit; and *Mercator* ſays, the *Trouts* that are taken there, are a great Part of the Merchandize of that famous City. Certain Waters breed *Trouts*, remarkable both for their Number and Smallneſs. I know a little Brook in *Kent*, that breeds them to a Number incredible, and you may take them twenty or forty in an Hour, but none greater than a *Gudgeon*. There are alſo in divers Rivers, eſpecially ſuch as have Communication with the Sea, as at *Wincheſter*, or the *Thames* about *Windſor*, a little *Trout*, called a *Samlet* or *Skegger-Trout*; in both which Places, I have caught twenty or forty at a Standing, that will bite as faſt and freely as *Minnows*. Theſe are by ſome taken to be young *Salmons*, but in thoſe Waters they never grow to be bigger than a *Herring*.

. There is also in *Kent*, near *Canterbury*, a *didge-Trout*, * which bears the Name of the T where it is usually caught, that is accounted rareſt of Fiſh, many of them near the Bigneſs *Salmon*, but known by their different Colour, in their beſt Seaſon cut very white: None of have been known to be taken with an Angle, leſs it were one that was caught by Sir G *Hoſtings*, an excellent Angler, now with G and he hath told me, he thought *that* Trou not for Hunger, but Wantonneſs; and it i rather to be believed, becauſe both he then, many others before him, have been curiou ſearch into their Bellies, what the Food wh which they lived, and have found nothing might ſatisfy their Curioſity.

It is reported by good Authors, that Graſho and ſome Fiſh have no Mouths, but are nou and take Breath by the Porouſneſs of their G Man knows not how. And this may be beli if we conſider that when the Raven hath ha her Eggs, ſhe takes no farther Care, but k her young ones to the Care of the God *of Na* who is ſaid in the Pſalms, † *To feed the Ravens that call upon him*; and they are alive, and fed by Dew, or Worms that in their Neſts, or ſome other ways that we tals know not. And this may be believed *Fordidge-Trout*, which, as it is ſaid of the that he knows his Seaſon, ſo *he* knows his I think almoſt his Day, of coming into that out of the Sea, where he lives (and, is like, nine Months of the Year, and faſts three

* In the River *Stour*. *Camd. (Brit. p.* 200) writes it The Domeſday Book, *the little Borough of* Forewich.

† CXLVII. 9, *Prayer Book Tranſlation.*

River of *Fordidge*. The Townsmen are very punctual in observing the Time of beginning to fish for them; and boast much, that their River affords a *Trout* that exceeds all others. Just so *Suffex* boasts of several Fish; as a *Shelsey Cockle*, a *Chichester Lobster*, an *Arundel Mullet*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

This *Fordidge-Trout* is thought to eat nothing in Fresh Water; and it may be the better believed, because it is well known that *Swallows*, and *Bats*, and *Wagtails*, which are called *Half year Birds*, and not seen to fly in *England* for six Months in the Year, but about *Michaelmas* leave us for a hotter Climate, yet some of them, that have been left behind their Fellows, have been found, many Thousands at a Time, in hollow Trees, or Clay Caves, where they have been observed to live and sleep out the whole * Winter without Meat. So *Albertus* observes, that there is one Kind of *Frog* that hath her Mouth naturally shut up about the End of *August*, † and that she lives so all the Winter; though it be strange to some, yet it is known to too many among us to be doubted.

And so much for these *Fordidge-Trouts*, which never afford an Angler Sport, but either live their Time of being in the Fresh Water by their Meat formerly gotten in the Sea, not unlike the *Swallow* or *Frog*, or by the Virtue of the Fresh Water only; or as the Bird of *Paradise*, and the *Camelion*, are said to live by the Sun and Air ‡. There

* Most think they do this *under Water*. See *Physic. Theol.* Chap. I. Notes m, d, and Sir *F. Bacon's Exper.* p. 899.

† See *Topsel* of *Frogs*.

‡ That the *Camelion*, &c. lives so, is a Fable. He is a little Animal of the Lizard Kind, found in *Egypt* and *Arabia*, from a Foot to Half a Foot long. Its Tongue is Half the Length of its Body, tipped with a glutinous Matter; this he darts out and draws in extremely nimble, to catch *Flies*, that are its Food. On Dissection, by the *Royal Academy of Paris*, its Stomach and Intestines were found full of Flies.

There is also in *Northumberland* a *Trout* call
Bull-Trout *, of a much greater Length and
ness than any in these Southern Parts: And
are, in many Rivers that relate to the Sea, *Sal*
Trouts, as much different from others, both
their Shape and Spots, as we see Sheep in
Countries differ in their Bigness, and Fineness
Wool; and, certainly, as some Pastures b
larger Sheep, so do some Rivers, by reason of
Ground over which they run, breed larger *Tr*

Now the next thing I will recommend to
Consideration is, that the *Trout* is of a more
den Growth than other Fish, though he lives
so long as the *Pearch*, and divers other Fishes
as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his *Hi*
of Life and Death.

Nor is he like the *Crocodile*, which, if he
never so long, yet always thrives to his Death;
contrary, the *Trout*, after he is come to his
Growth, declines in his Body, but keeps his
ness, or thrives only in his Head, till his De
And he † will, about (especially before) the T
of his Spawning, get almost miraculously thro
Weirs and Flood-gates against the Stream, e
such high and swift Places as is almost incredibl

The *Trout* usually spawns about *October* or
vember, but in some Rivers a little sooner or la
which is the more observable, because most o
Fish spawn in Spring or Summer, when the
hath warmed the Earth and Water, and

* They are also in the *Yorkshire*, *Dorsetshire*, and *Devonshi*
vers, where they come from the Sea the Beginning of *May*,
deep Holes under the Root of a Tree, on the Side next the S
and will rise at an *artificial Fly*: But the best Bait is a well-fe
Brandling, bred in Tanners Bark. They bite all the Summ
whole *Morning*, and in the *Afternoon* from *Five* till *Night*.

† The Author uses (indifferently) this Word to express both

them fit for Generation. And you are to note, that he continues many Months out of Season; for he is like the *Buck* or *Ox*, that will not be fat in many Months, thought he go in the very same Pastures that Horses do, which will be fat in one; and so you may observe, that most other Fishes recover Strength, and grow sooner fat and in Season, than the *Trout* doth; for till the Sun gets to such an Heighth as to warm the Earth and Water, the *Trout* is sick and lean, and lousy; and unwholsome. You shall in Winter find him have a big Head, and to be lank and thin, and lean; at which Time many of them have sticking on them *Sugs* or *Trout-lice*, which is a Kind of Worm, in Shape like a *Clove* or *Pin*, with a big Head, that cleaves close to him, and sucks his Moisture; those, I think, the *Trout* breeds himself, and never thrives till he free himself from them, which is when warm Weather comes; and then as he grows stronger, he gets from the dead, still Water, into the sharp Streams and Gravel, and there rubs off these Worms or Lice; and, as he grows still stronger, he gets him into swifter and swifter Streams, and there lies at the Watch for any *Fly* or *Minnow* that comes near him; and he especially loves the *May-fly*, which is bred of the *Cod-worm*, or *Cadis*; these make the *Trout* bold and lusty; and he is usually fatter and better Meat at the End of that Month, than at any Time of the Year.

It is observed, that usually the best *Trouts* are either red or yellow, though some, as the *Fordidge-Trout*, are white, and yet good; but that is not usual; and it is remarkable, that the female *Trout* hath usually a less Head, and a deeper Body than the Male, and is, for the most Part, better Meat.

Meat. And note, ☞ *That a Hogback, and little Head, to this or any Fish, is a Sign that Fish is in Season.*

But yet, as you see some Willows or Palm-bud and blossom sooner than others, so some Trees are in some Rivers sooner in Season: And as some Hollies or Oaks are longer before they cast their Leaves, so are some *Trouts*, in such Rivers, longer before they go out of Season.

And you are to know, there are several Kinds of *Trouts*, though they all go under that general Name; just as *Pigeons* do, though there are tame and wild, and of the tame, *Runts*, *Carriers*, *Cropers*, and indeed too many to name. Nay, the Royal Society have found and published lately that there are thirty-three Kinds of *Spiders*, and yet, for ought I know, go under that one general Name. And 'tis so of many Kinds of Fish, and of *Trouts* especially, which differ in their Bigness, Shape and Colour. The great *Kentish Hens* may be an Instance, compared with other *Hens*; and doubtless, there is a Kind of small *Trout* which will never thrive to be big, that breeds very many more than others do of a larger Size; which you may rather believe, if you consider, that the little *Wren* and *Titmouse* will have twenty Young at a Time; when, usually, the noble *Hawk*, or musical *Throssel* or *Blackbird*, exceed not four or five.

And now you shall see me try my Skill to catch a *Trout*; and, at my next walking, either this Evening, or to-morrow Morning, I will give you Direction how you yourself shall fish for him.

Vena. Trust me, Master, I see now it is a harder Matter to catch a *Trout* than a *Chub*; and have put on Patience, and followed you these

How

Hours, and not seen a Fish stir, neither at your *Minnow*, nor your *Worm*.

Pisc. Well, Scholar, you must endure worse luck sometimes, or you will never make a good Angler. But, what say you now? — There is a *Trout*, now; and a good one too, if I can but hold him; and two or three Turns more will tire him. Now, you see, he lies still, and the slight is to land him. — Reach me that Landing-Net. So, Sir, now he is my own — What say you now? Is not this worth all my Labour, and your Patience?

Vena. O' my Word, Master, this is a gallant *Trout*. What shall we do with him?

Pisc. Marry, e'en eat him to Supper. We will go to my Hostess, from whence we came; she told me, as I was going out of Door, that my Brother *Peter*, a good Angler, and a chearful Companion, had sent Word he would lodge there to Night, and bring a Friend with him. My Hostess has two Beds, and, I know you and I may have the best. We will rejoice with my Brother *Peter*, and his Friend; tell Tales, or sing Ballads, or make a Catch, or find some harmless Sport to content us, and pass away a little Time without Offence to God or Man.

Vena. A Match, good Master. Let us go to that House; for the Linnen looks white, and smells of Lavender, and I long to lie in a Pair of Sheets that smell so. Let us be going, good Master, for I am hungry again with fishing.

Pisc. Nay, stay a little, good Scholar. I caught my last *Trout* with a *Worm*; now I will put on a *Minnow* *, and try a Quarter of an Hour about yonder

* This Kind of fishing is at the Middle, meaning no more than Half a Foot, or a Foot (more or less) under the Surface of the Water. A *Bullhead*, with his Gill-fins cut off, is preferred infinitely to the *Minnow*, and a *Leach* beyond both. See Part II. Chap. XII.

yonder Trees for another, and so walk toward Lodging. Look you, Scholar! thereabout we have a Bite presently, or not at all. — Have you, Sir! On my Word I have hold of him! it is a great Loggerheaded *Chub*. — Come, get *Willow* Twig and hang him upon, and let going. But turn out of the Way a little, Scholar, towards yonder high Honey-suckle He there we'll sit and sing, whilst this Shower fa gently on the teeming Earth, and gives sweeter Smell to the lovely Flowers that these verdant Meadows.

Look! under that broad Beech-tree, I sat when I was last this Way a fishing, and the in the adjoining Grove appeared to have a frie Contention, with an Eccho, whose dead seemed to live in a hollow Tree, near the Bro that *Primrose* Hill. There I sat viewing the Streams glide silently towards their Center, tempestuous Sea: yet sometimes opposed by ed Roots, and Pebble-stones, which broke Waves, and turned them into Foam: And so times I beguiled Time, by viewing the harm Lambs; some leaping securely in the cool sh whilst others sported themselves in the' che Sun, and saw others craving Comfort from swoln Udders of their bleating Dams. As I sat, these, and other Sights, had so fully pos my Soul with Content, that I thought, as Poet has happily expressed it,

High was I rapt, above the Scenes of Earth
And Joys possess'd, not promis'd in my Birth

As I left this Place, and entered into the Field, a second Pleasure entertained me: It w hand

handsome Milkmaid, that had not yet attained so much Age and Wisdom as to load her Mind with any Fears of many things that will never be, but had cast away all Care, and sung like a Nightingale; her Voice was good, and the Ditty fitted for it; it was that smooth Song made by *Kit. Marlow*, at least fifty Years ago *: And the Milkmaid's Mother sung an Answer to it, composed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his younger Days. They were old-fashioned Poetry, but choicely good; I think much better than the strong Lines now in fashion in this critical Age. — Look! yonder, on my Word,—yonder they be both a milking again! I will give her the *Chub*, and persuade them to sing those two Songs to us.

God speed you, good Woman! I have been a fishing, and am going to *Bleak-Hall* to my Bed; and, having caught more than will sup myself and Friend, I will bestow this upon you and your Daughter, for I *sell* none.

Milkw. Marry, God requite you, Sir, and we will eat it chearfully; and, if you come this Way a fishing two Months hence, a Grace of God, I will give you a Sillabub of new Verjuice, in a new-made Haycock, for it; and my *Maudlin* shall sing you one of her best Ballads, for she and I both love all Anglers, they be such honest, civil, quiet Men. In the mean Time, will you drink a Draught of red Cow's Milk? You shall have it freely.

Pisc. No, I thank you; but I pray do us a Courtesy, that shall stand you and your Daughter in

* Mr. *Walton* wrote his *Compleat Angler* about the Year 1650. *Kit. Marlow* was a cotemporary Comedian and Poet with *Shakespear*, who brings in two Lines of *this Song* in his *Merry Wives of Windsor*, viz. *By shallow Rivers*, &c.

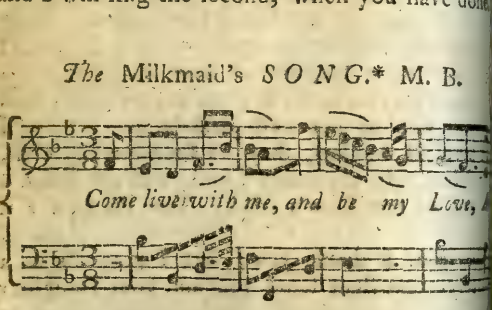
in nothing, and yet we will think ourselves
something in your Debt; it is but to sing
Song that was sung by ye when I last passed
this Meadow, about eight or nine Days since.

Milkw. What Song was it, I pray? Was
Come Shepherds, deck your Herds? Or *As at*
Dulcina *rested?* Or Philida *flouts me?* Or
Chace? Or *Johny Armstrong?* Or *Troy Town?*

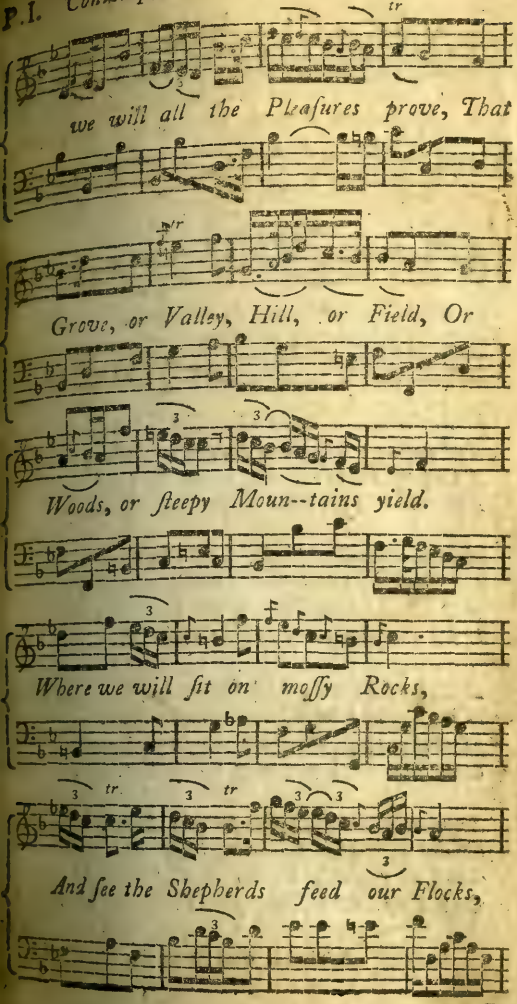
Pisc. No, it is none of those: It is a Song
your Daughter sung the first Part, and you
Answer to it.

Milkw. O, I know it now. I learned the
Part in my Golden Days, when I was about
Age of my poor Daughter; and the latter P
which indeed fits me best now, but two or th
Years ago, when the Cares of the World began
take hold of me: But you shall, God willi
hear them both, and sung as well as we can,
we both love Anglers. Come *Maudlin*, sing
first Part to the Gentlemen, with a merry He
and I will sing the second, when you have done.

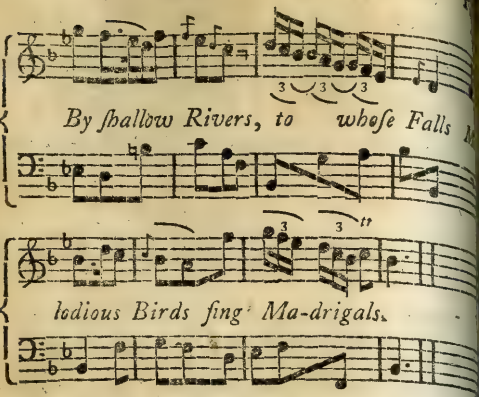
The Milkmaid's *SONG.** M. B.



* When this is sung leave out the Verse between these Marks


we will all the Pleasures prove, That
Grove, or Valley, Hill, or Field, Or
Woods, or steepy Moun--tains yield.
Where we will sit on mossy Rocks,
And see the Shepherds feed our Flocks,

By



[*Pleas'd will I make thee Beds of Roses,*
And twine a thousand fragrant Posies;
*A Cap of Flow'rs, and rural Kirtle,**
Embroider'd all with Leaves of Myrtle.]

A Gown, cull'd of the finest Wool,
Which from our pretty Lambs we pull;
And Shoes, lin'd choicely for the Cold,
With Buckles gaily bright as Gold.

A Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
With Coral Clasps, and Amber Studs —
If these, these Pleasures may thee move,
Come live with me, and be my Love.

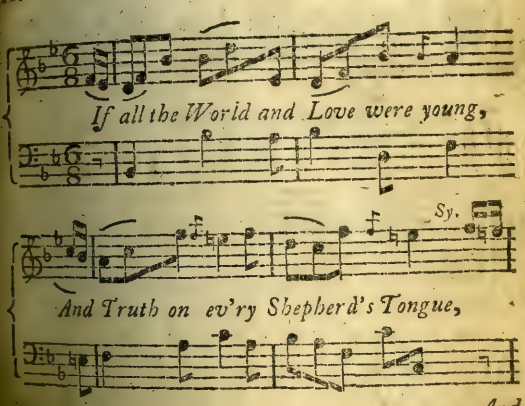
Impearl'd Shell-Dishes for thy Meat,
Choice as is that th' Immortals *eat,*
Shall on Earth's Flower-deck'd Table be
Serv'd up, each Day, for Thee *and* Me.

* The old Word for Girdle.

The Swains with Sports (Song, Dance, or Play)
Each Morn ſhall pleaſe Thee, ALL THE MAY.
If theſe Delights thy Mind may move,
Then —— live with me, and be MY LOVE.

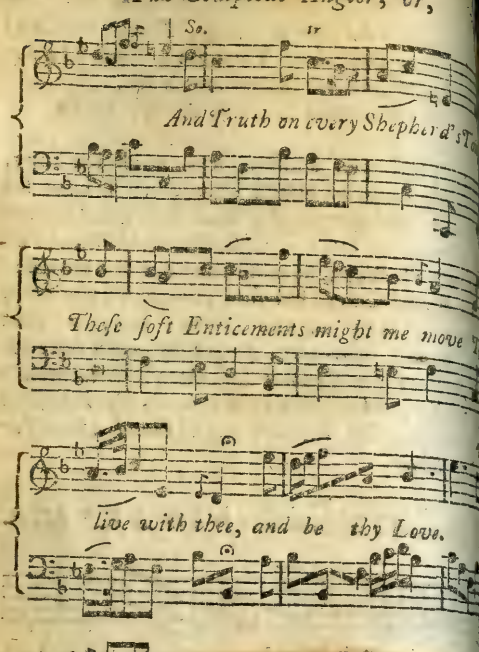
Vena. Truſt me, Maſter, it is a choice Song, and ſweetly ſung by honeſt *Maudlin*. I now ſee it was not without Cauſe, that our good Queen *Elizabeth* did ſo often wiſh herſelf a Milkmaid all the Month of *May*; becauſe they are not troubled with Fears and Cares, but ſing ſweetly all the Day, and ſleep ſecurely all the Night; and, without Doubt, honeſt, innocent, pretty *Maudlin* does ſo. I will beſtow Sir *Thomas Overbury*'s Milkmaid's Wiſh on her, *That ſhe may die in the Spring, and have good Store of Flowers ſtuck round about her Winding Sheet.*

The Milkmaid's Mother's *ANSWER.** M. B.



And

* When this is ſung leave out the Verſe between theſe Marks [ ].



But Time drives Flocks *from Field to Fold,*
When Rivers freeze, and Rocks grow cold;
And saddening Philomel *grows dumb,*
And Age complains of Care to come.

The wanton Fields, the fading Flowers,
Quick Reck'nings yield to Winter's Powers;
A Honey-Tongue, a Heart of Gall,
Is Fancy's Spring, but Sorrow's Fall.

[Thy Gowns, thy Shoes, thy Beds of Roses,
Thy Cap, thy Kirtle, and thy Posies,
Are all soon wither'd, broke, forgotten ——
In Folly ripe, in Reason rotten.]

Thy Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
Thy Coral Clasps, and Amber Studs,
Can me with no Incitements move,
To come to thee, and be thy Love.

Why should we talk of Dainties then,
Of better Meat than fit for Men?
These are but vain! — that's only good
Which GOD *has blest, and sent for Food.*

But could Youth last, could Love still breed,
Had Joys no Date, had Age no Need;
Then those Delights my Mind might move,
To live with thee, and be thy Love.†

Pisc. Well sung, good Woman, I thank you: I will give you another Dish of Fish one of these Days, and then beg another Song of you. Come, Scholar, let *Maudlin* alone; do not you offer to spoil her Voice — Look, yonder comes my Hostess to call us to Supper. How now, is my Brother *Peter* come?

Host. Yes, and a Friend with him: They are both glad to hear you are in these Parts, and long to see you, and long to be at Supper, for they be very hungry.

CHAP.

† Some Lines of Prose and a Song, very impertinently added to the 5th Edition, are here omitted; which, with the Reasons, will be seen in the Postscript to the Preface.

as yellow as a *Marigold*, and Part as white as *Lilly*; and yet, methinks, it looks better than good Sauce.

Cor. Indeed, honeſt Friend, it looks well, and taſtes well; I thank you for it, and ſo does honeſt Friend *Peter*, or elſe he is to blame.

Pet. Yes, and ſo I do — We all thank you; and, when we have ſupped, I will get my Friend *Coridon* to ſing you a Song for Requital.

Cor. I will ſing a Song, if any body will ſing another; elſe, to be plain with you, I ſing only when I am none of thoſe that ſing for Meat, but for Company. I ſay, *'Tis merry in Hall, when Men ſing all.*

Piſc. I'll promiſe you I will ſing a Song that was lately made, at my Requeſt, by Mr. *W. Boſſe*, one that hath made the choice Songs, *The Hunter in his Career*, and *Tom of Bedlam*, and many others of note; and this which I will ſing is in Praiſe of Angling.

Cor. Mine ſhall be in Praiſe of a Country Life: What will the reſt ſing of?

Pet. I will promiſe you I will ſing another in Praiſe of Angling to-morrow Night; but we will not part till then, but fiſh to-morrow, ſup together, and next Day every Man leave off ing, and fall to his Buſineſs.

Vena. It's a Match, and I will provide a Song, or a Catch, againſt then too, which ſhall give ſome Addition of Mirth to the Company; we will be civil, and as merry as Beggars.

Piſc. A Match, my Maſters, let us end Grace, and turn to the Fire, drink the other to wet our Whiſtles, and ſo ſing away Care and Thoughts. Come on, my Maſters, who begins? I think it beſt to draw Cuts, and avoid Contention.

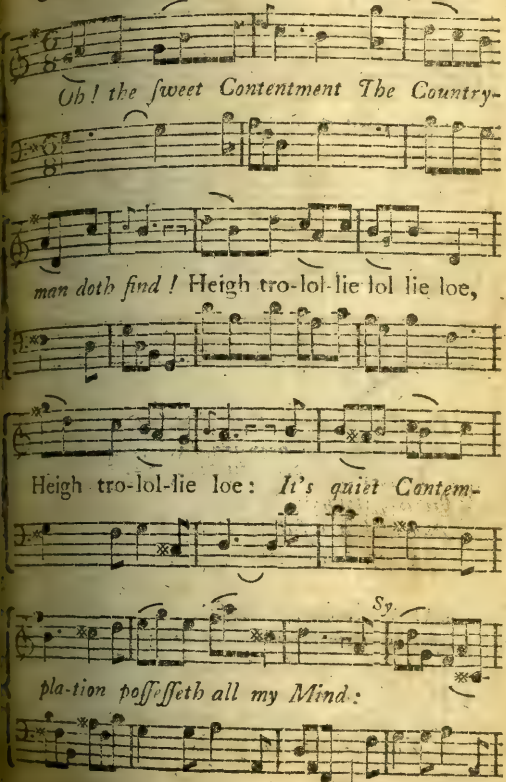
Pet. A Match. Look, the ſhorteſt Cut falls to

Coridon.

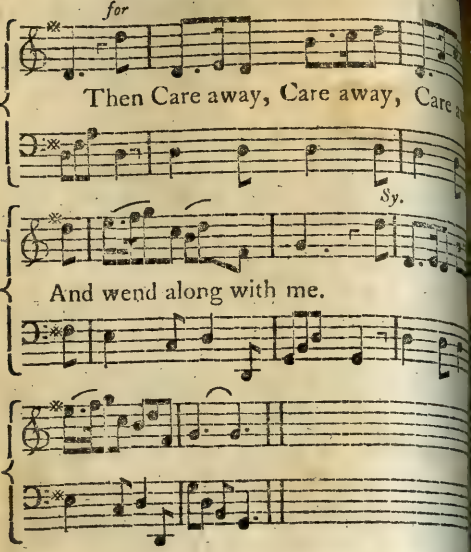
Cor. Well then, I will begin, for I hate Con-

ention.

CORIDON's *SONG.* M. B.


Oh! the ſweet Contentment The Country-
man doth find! Heigh tro-lol-lie lol lie loe,
Heigh tro-lol-lie loe: It's quiet Contem-
Sy
pla-tion poſſeſſeth all my Mind:

Then



For Courts are full of Flatt'ry,
As hath too oft been try'd;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, &c.
Of Wantonneſs the City,
And both are full of Pride:
Then Care away, &c.

But oh the honeſt Peaſant
Speaks truly from his Heart;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, &c.
His Pride is in his Tillage,
His Horſes, Plough, and Cart:
Then Care away, &c.

Our Dreſs is good plain Sheep-ſkins,
Gray Ruſſet for our Wives;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, *&c.*
'Tis Warmth, and not gay Cloathing,
Prolongs our Strength and Lives:
Then Care away, *&c.*

The Clown, tho' hard he labour,
Yet on the Holiday;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, *&c.*
No Emperor ſo merrily
Can paſs his Time away:
Then Care away, *&c.*

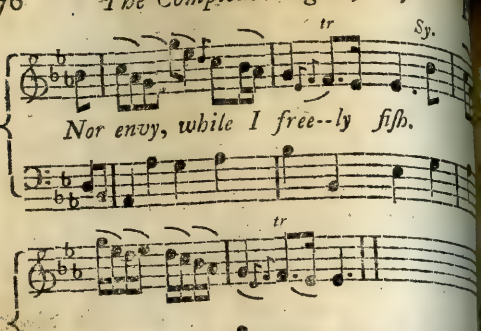
To recompence our Tillage
The Heav'ns afford us Show'rs;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, *&c.*
And for our ſweet Refreſhments,
The Earth gives verdent Bow'rs:
Then Care away, *&c.*

The Cuckow, Lark, and Nightingale,
In merry Concerts ſing;
Heigh trololie lollie, loe, *&c.*
And with their pleaſant Roundelays,
Bid welcome to the Spring:
Then Care away, *&c.*

This is not Half the Happineſs
We jovial Ruſtics ſee;
Heigh trololie lollie loe, *&c.*
If others think they have as much,
He lies —— whoe'er he be:
Then come away,
Turn Countryman with me.

Jo. Chalkhill.*

* Another Comedian, *Shakeſpear*'s Cotemporary.



Who hunt, *in Dangers often ride;*
Who hawk, *oft lure both far and wide;*
Who game, *shall frequent Losers prove;*
While the fond Wretch, allur'd to Love,
Is fetter'd in blind Cupid's *Snare* ——
My Angle *breeds me no such Care.*

No other Pastimes (thus employ'd)
Yield us such Freedom while enjoy'd;
All Recreation else, no less
Than Mind and Body both possess.
My *Hand*, alone, *my Work can do:*
So I can fish and study too.

I love not angling (rude) on Seas,
Fresh Streams my Inclination please;
Whose sweet calm Course to Thought I co
And seek in Life to copy all:
In Bounds (like theirs) I fain would
Like them wou'd (when I break them)

And when the timorous Trout I wait
To take, and he devours my Bait;
How small, how poor a Thing, I find,
Will captivate a greedy Mind:
And when none bite, I praise the Wise,
Whom false Allurements ne'er surprize.

If (too intent on Sport) I fast,
Good Fortune *gives me rich* Repast;
My Friend *it serves me to invite,*
In whom, I more than that *delight:*
Who comes, more welcome, to my Dish,
Than to my Angle *was my* Fish.

[*Content, as well, if nought I take,*
As use, of that obtain'd to make ——
CHRIST *thus was pleas'd,* HIS Fishers *when*
HE *happier* Fishers *made,* of Men.
Where — (which no other Sport *can claim)*
A Man may fish, and praise his Name.

HIS first *Attendants chose on Earth,*
Blest Fishers *were, of meanest Birth:*
And Fish *(as sacred Records show)*
Was HIS last-*tasted* Food *below* ——
I therefore strive to follow those,
Whom, HIM *to follow,* He hath chose.*]

Cor. Well sung, Brother, you have paid your Debt in good Coin; we Anglers are all beholden to the good Man that made this Song. Come, Hostess, give us more Ale, and let us drink to him. — And now let us every one go to Bed, that we may rise early. But first let us pay our Reckoning, for I will have nothing to hinder me in the Morning; for my Purpose is to prevent the Sun-rising.

* These two last Verses may be omitted in singing.

Pet. A Match. Come, *Coridon*, you are to my Bedfellow; I know, Brother, you and Scholar will lie together: But where shall we to-morrow Night? For my Friend *Coridon* will go up the Water towards *Ware*.

Pisc. And my Scholar and I down to *Waltham*.

Cor. Then let's meet here; for here are Sheets that smell of Lavender; and, I am sure, cannot expect better Meat, or better Usage, in Place.

Pet. It is a Match. Good Night to every bo

Pisc. And so say I.

Vena. And I.

Pisc. Good-morrow, good Hostess; I see Brother *Peter* is still in Bed. Come, give Scholar and me a Morning-drink, and a Bi Meat for Breakfast, and be sure to get a good of Meat or two against Supper, for we shall c Home as hungry as Hawks. Come, Scholar, be going.

Vena. Well now, good Master, as we walk wards the River, give me Direction, accordin your Promise, how I shall fish for a *Trout*.

Pisc. My honest Scholar, I will take this convenient Opportunity to do it.

§ * §

The *Trout* is usually caught with a *Worm Minnow* (which some call a *Penk*) or with a either natural or artificial; concerning which th I will give you some Observations and Direction

And First, for *Worms*. Of these there are many Sorts; some breed only in the Earth, a *Earth-worm*; others, of or amongst Plants, a *Dock-worm*; and others breed out of Excrem

or in the Bodies of living Creatures, as in the Horns of Sheep or Deer; or some of dead Flesh, as the *Maggot* or *Gentle*, and others.

Now these be most of them particularly good for particular Fishes; but, for the *Trout*, the *Dew* (which some also call the *Lob-Worm*) and the *Brandling* *, are the chief; especially the first for a great *Trout*, and the latter for a less †. There are also of *Lob-worms*, some called *Squirrel-Tails*, a *Worm* that has *a red Head, a Streak down the Back, and a broad Tail*; which are noted to be the best, because they are the toughest, and most lively, and live longest in the Water: For you are to know, a dead Worm is but a dead Bait, and like to catch nothing, compared to a lively, quick, stirring *Worm*. And for a *Brandling*, he is usually found in an old Dunghill, or some very rotten Place near it, but most usually in Cow or Hogs, rather than Horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for *that Worm*; but *the best of them are taken in the Bark of the Tanners, which they cast up in Heaps, after they have used it about their Leather.*

There are also divers other Kinds of *Worms*, which, for Colour and Shape, alter even as the Ground out of which they are got; as the *Marsh-worm*, the *Tag-tail*, the *Flag-worm*, the *Dock*, the *Oak-worm*, the *Gilt-tail*, the *Twachel* or *Lob-worm*, which, of all other, is the most excellent Bait for a *Salmon*, and too many to name; even as many Sorts as some think there are of Herbs or

* You fish in this Way as with a Fly, at Top-Water, casting your Worm gently up against the Stream. — *'Tis an excellent Method, and kills incredibly.* See it described, with the Way how to put on your Brandling, Part II.

† A *Cadis* is likewise a sure-killing Bait, fished with, *quite at Ground.* See how to use it, Part II.

Shrubs, or of several Kinds of Birds in the A
of which I shall say no more, but tell you,
what *Worms* soever you fish with, are the be
for being well scowered, that is, long kept bef
they are used; and in Case you have not been
provident, then the Way to cleanse and sco
them quickly, is to put them all Night in Wa
if they are *Lob-worms*, and then put them
your Bag, with Fennel; * but you must not
your *Brandlings* above an Hour in Water,
then put them into Fennel, for sudden Use;
if you have Time, and purpose to keep them
then are best preserved in an Earthen Pot,
good Store of Moss, which is to be fresh
three or four Days in Summer, and every W
or eight Days in Winter, or at least the
taken from them, clean washed, and wrung
twixt your Hands, till dry, and then put to
again; and when your *Worm*, especially the *Br*
ling, begins to be sick, and lose of his Big
then you may recover him, by putting a
Milk or Cream, about a Spoonful a Day,
them, by Drops, on the Moss; and if then
added to the Cream an Egg, beaten and boil
it, then it will both fatten and preserve them
And note, that when the Knot which is ne
the Middle of the *Brandling* begins to swell,
sick, and, if he be not well looked to, near
And, for *Moss*, there are divers Kinds wh
could name to you, but will only tell you,
which is likest a Buck's-horn is best, except
soft white Moss which grows on some Heath
is hard to be found. And note, that in a
dry Time, when you are put to an Extremi
Worms, Walnut-tree Leaves squeezed into W

* Moss, if to be had, is best; the other is bitter.

or Salt in Water, and that Water poured on the Ground, where you shall see *Worms* are used to rise in the Night, will make them appear presently. And you may take Notice, some say, that *Camphire* put into your Bag with your *Moss* and *Worms*, gives them a strong and so tempting a Smell, that the Fish fare the worse, and you the better for it.

And now I shall shew you how to bait your Hook with a *Worm*, so as shall prevent you much Trouble, and the Loss of many a Hook too, when you fish for a *Trout* with a Running-Line; that is to say, by Hand at the Ground. I will direct you in this as plainly as I can, that you may not mistake*.

Suppose it a big Lob-worm, *put your Hook into him somewhat above, and out again a little below the Middle; having so done, draw your Worm above the Arming of your Hook. At the entering your Hook, it must not be at the Head-end of the Worm, but at the Tail-end of him, that the Point of your Hook may come out toward the Head-end; and, having drawn him above the Arming of your Hook, then put the Point of your Hook again into the very Head of the Worm, till it come near the Place where the Point of the Hook first came out, then draw back that Part of the Worm that was above the Shank or Arming of your Hook, and so fish with it; and, if you mean to fish with two Worms, then put the second on before you turn back the Hook's-head of the first Worm.* You cannot lose above

* Another experienced Way is, "Take *two* Lob-worms; put "the *first* on the Hook with the Head foremost, and slip it a little "up the Line, to make Room: Then put the *second Worm* on, "with the Tail foremost, and draw both close to meet together, as "if they were knotting or engendering." *They drop often in this Manner from the Banks into the Rivers, while they are thus engaged, and are snapped up by the Trout.* See more of this Way of baiting, Part II.

two or three Worms, before you attain to wh
direct you; and, having attained it, you will
it very useful, and thank me for it, for you
run on the Ground without tangling.

Now for the *Minnow* or *Penk*. He is
easily found and caught till *March* or *April*,
then he appears first in the River; Nature ha
taught him to shelter and hide himself in the w
ter in Ditches near the River, and there to
and keep himself warm in the Mud or We
which rot not so soon as in a running River
which Place if he were in Winter, the distemp
Floods that are usually in that Season, would f
him to take no Rest, but carry him headlon
Mills and Weires, to his Confusion. And of
Minnows, first, you are to know, that the bi
Size is not the best, *but the middle-sized*
whitest. And it must be so put on your H
that it must turn round when it is drawn a
the Stream *; and, that it may turn nimble,
must put it on a big-sized Hook, as I shall
direct you; which is thus. Put your Hook
his Mouth, and out at his Gill, then having d
your Hook two or three Inches beyond or th
it, put it again into his Mouth, and the Poin
Beard out at his Tail, and then tie the Hoo
his Tail about very neatly with a white Th
which will make it the apter to turn quick
Water: That done, pull back that Part of
Line which was slack when you put your
into the *Minnow* the second Time, that it
fasten the Head so that the Body of the *M*
shall be almost strait on your Hook; then tr

* The Hook, put just into the Mouth, and through th
Chaps, that the Point may lie downward, is easily and quick
saves Trouble, and is as good as any Way you can use.

it will turn, by drawing it cross the Water, or against the Stream; and if it do not turn nimbly, then move the Tail a little to the Right or Left-Hand, and try again, till it turn quick; for if not, you are in Danger to catch nothing; for know, it is impossible that it should turn too quick. And in Case you want a *Minnow*, then a small *Loach*, or *Sticklebag*, or any other small Fish will serve as well. And you may salt †, and by that Means keep them fit for Use three or four Days or longer, and Bay-Salt is the best.

And here let me tell you, what many old Anglers know right well, that at some Times, and in some Waters, a *Minnow* is not to be got; and therefore I have (which I will shew to you) an artificial *Minnow* ‡, that will catch a *Trout* as well as an artificial Fly; and it was made by a handsome Woman, that had a fine Hand, and a live *Minnow* lying by her. The Body was Cloth, wrought over *thus* with a Needle; the Back, with very sad *French-green* Silk; a paler Green toward the Belly, shaded as perfectly as you can imagine, just as you see a *Minnow*; the Belly white Silk, and another Part of it Silver Thread. The Tail and Fins, of a Quill shaven thin; its Eyes of two little black Beads. The Head was so shadowed, and all so curiously wrought, and so exactly dissembled, as would beguile any sharp-sighted *Trout* in a swift Stream. And this *Minnow* I will now shew you (look, here it is) and if you like it, lend it you to have two or three made by it, for they

* By some (Mr. *Cotton* especially) these are preferred to the *Minnow*. See Part II. Chap. XII. at the Beginning.

† This Method, Mr. *Cotton* (who was the best *Trout Angler* of his Time) discommends. See Part II. Chap. above.

‡ These, made of Tin, &c. are now sold common at the Tackle Shops.

they are eafily carried about an Angler, and a excellent Ufe; for a large *Trout* will com fiercely at a *Minnow*, as the higheft-mettled *Ha* feizes a *Partridge*, or a *Greyhound* a *Hare* have been told, that a hundred and fixty *Min* have been found in a *Trout*'s Belly; either *Trout* had devoured fo many, or the *Miller* gave it my Friend had forced them down Throat when taken.

Now for *Flies*; which is the third Bait wh with *Trouts* are ufually taken. There are as m Sorts as there are Fruits. I will name you fome; as the *Dun* and *Stone Flies*, the *Red*, *M* and *Tawny Flies*, the *Shell* and *Cloudy*, or *Bla Flies*, the *Flag* and *Vine Flies*, *Caterpillar*, *Ca* and *Bear Flies*; indeed too many for me to n or you remember; and their Breeding is fo va and wonderful, that I might eafily amaze m and tire you in the Recital.

And yet I will exercife your promifed Patie by faying a little of the *Caterpillar*, or *Palmer* or *Worm*; that by them you may guefs wh Work it were in a Difcourfe, but to run over very many Flies, Worms, and little living C tures, with which the Sun and Summer adorn beautify the River-banks and Meadows, bot the Recreation and Contemplation of us Ang Pleafures, which, I think, I myfelf enjoy than any other Man that is not of my Profeff

Pliny holds an Opinion *, That many have Birth from a Dew that in the Spring falls upo

* Thefe Opinions of the Antients concerning fpontaneous ration, were very much the Way of thinking at the Time Mr wrote; though, by the Difcoveries of the Microfcope, they juftly exploded.

Leaves of Trees; some Kinds of them, from that left upon Herbs or Flowers; and others, from a like Dew left upon Coleworts or Cabbages: all which thickened and condensed, by the Sun's generative Heat, are hatched, and in three Days made living Creatures, of several Shapes and Colours; some being hard and tough, others smooth and soft; some have Horns on the Head, some on their Tail, others none; some have Hair, some not; some have sixteen Feet, some less, and others none. But, as our *Topsel** hath with great Elegance observed, those which have none move on the Earth, or on broad Leaves, with a Motion not unlike the Waves of the Sea. Some of them he also observes, are bred of the Eggs of *Caterpillars*, and in time turn to be *Butterflies*, and their Eggs again turn the following Year to *Caterpillars*; and some affirm, that every Plant has his particular *Fly* or *Caterpillar*, which it breeds and feeds. I have seen, and may therefore affirm it, a green *Caterpillar* or *Worm*, as big as a small Peascod, which had fourteen Legs, eight on the Belly, four under the Neck, and two near the Tail; it was found on a Privet-hedge †, and taken thence, and put into a large Box, and a little Branch or two of Privet put to it, on which I saw it feed as sharply as a Dog gnaws a Bone; it lived thus five or six Days, thrived, and changed Colour two or three Times; but, by some Neglect, it died, and did not turn to a Fly; which, if it had lived, it had doubtless done, to one of those Flies that some call *Flies of Prey*, which they that walk by the Rivers may in Summer see fasten on smaller ones, and, I think, make them their Food. And it is observable

* *History of Serpents.*

† *i. e.* Sweet-Brier.

obſervable, that as there are theſe Flies of P
which are very large, there are others very litt
created, I think, only to feed them, that br
out of I know not what; whoſe Life, they
Nature intended not to exceed an Hour: And
that Life is thus made ſhorter by other Flies,
Accident.

It is endleſs to tell you, what the curi
Searchers into Nature's Productions have obſer
of theſe Worms and Flies. But yet I ſhall tell
what *Aldrovandus*, our *Topſel*, and others, ſay
the *Palmer-worm* or *Caterpillar*; that whe
others content themſelves to feed on partic
Herbs or Leaves (for moſt think thoſe very Lea
that give them Life and Forms, give them pa
cular Feeding and Nouriſhment, and upon th
they uſually abide) yet he obſerves, that thi
called a *Pilgrim* or *Palmer-worm*, for his
wandering Life, and various Food; not conte
ing himſelf, as others do, with any certain P
of Abode, or any peculiar Kind of Herbs or Fl
ers for his Feeding, but will boldly and diſorde
wander up and down, and not endure to be
to a Diet, or fixed to a particular Place.

Nay, the Colour of *Caterpillars* are very eleg
and beautiful; I ſhall, for a Taſte of the reſt,
ſcribe one of them, which I will ſome Time
Month * ſhew you, feeding on a Willow-tree,
you ſhall find him punctually to anſwer this
Deſcription: *His Lips and Mouth ſomewhat yel
his Eyes black as Jet, his Forehead purple, his
and hinder Parts green, his Tail forked and bl
the whole Body ſtained with a kind of red Sp
which run along the Neck and Shoulder-blade,
unlike the Form of St.* Andrew's *Croſs*, or
L

* *Viz.* in *June*.

Letter X, *and a white Line drawn down his Back to his Tail*; all which add much Beauty to his whole Body. And it is, to me, observable, that, at a fixed Age, this *Caterpillar* gives over to eat, and, towards Winter, comes to be covered with a strange Shell or Crust, called an *Aurelia*, and so lives a kind of Dead-life, without eating, all the Winter *; and, as others of different Sorts turn to be several Kind of Flies and Vermin the Spring following, so this *Caterpillar* then proves to be a painted *Butterfly* — Come, come, my Scholar, you see the River stops our Morning's Walk, and I will also stop my Discourse. Only as we sit down under this Honeysuckle Hedge, whilst I look a Line to fit the Rod that our Brother *Peter* lent you, I shall, for a little Confirmation of what I have said, repeat the Observation of *Du Bartas*†.

'Th' Almighty, pleas'd to manifest his Pow'r,
Bid Warmth prolific fill the dewy Show'r;
Straight, seedless Bodies view! with Motion rise,
And Putrefaction issues into Life.

Thus coldest Damp the Salamander breeds,
The Fly Perausta *from the Fire proceeds;*
Kill'd with cool Air, their Bodies Flames abide,
In Fire they live, *which all consumes beside.*

So slow Bootes *from his Height perceives*
In icy Islands, Goslings ‡ *hatch'd from Leaves;*
Which the Sea putrifies wherein they fall,
Thence Birds arise, which Solan Geese *we call.*

Thus

* View Sir *Francis Bacon's Exper.* 732 and 90.
† Poem of Week and Works, 6th Day.
‡ See Gerhard's Herbal, *and* Cambden.

Thus rotten Planks of broken Veſſels change
To Barnacles, *a Transformation ſtrange!*
'Twas firſt a Tree, 'tis next a ſhatter'd Hull,
A Muſhroom then, and laſt, a flying Gull.

Vena. O my good Maſter, this Morning's W
has been ſpent to my great Pleaſure and Wo
But when ſhall I have your Direction how to m
artificial Flies, like thoſe the *Trout* loves beſt;
how to uſe them?

Piſc. My honeſt Scholar it is now paſt
o'Clock, we will fiſh till Nine, and then go
Breakfaſt. Go you to yonder *Sycamore* Tree,
hide your Bottle of Drink under the hollow
of it; for about that Time, in that Place, we
make a brave Breakfaſt, with a Piece of powd
Beef, and a Radiſh or two, that I have in
Fiſh-bag; we ſhall, I warrant you, make a g
honeſt, wholſome, hungry Breakfaſt, and
then give you Directions for the making and
of your Fly: And, in the mean Time, the
your Rod and Line; and my Advice is, that
fiſh as you ſee me do; and let us try which
catch the firſt Fiſh.

Vena. I thank you, Maſter; I will obſerve
practiſe your Direction as far as I am able.

Piſc. Look you, Scholar, you ſee I have ho
a good Fiſh. I now ſee it is a *Trout*; I pray
that Net under him, and touch not my Line,
if you do, then we break all. Well done, Sch
I thank you — Now for another. Truſt m
have another Bite — Come, Scholar, come
down your Rod, and help me to land this, as
did the other — So now we ſhall be ſure to h
good Diſh of Fiſh for Supper.

Vena. I am glad of that; but I have no Fortune. Sure, Master, yours is a better Rod, and better Tackling.

Pisc. Nay, then take mine, and I will fish with your's. — Look you, Scholar, I have another. Come, do as you did before. — And now I have a Bite at another — Oh me! he has broke all; there is Half a Line and a good Hook lost.

Vena. Ay, and a good *Trout* too.

Pisc. Nay the *Trout is not* lost, for pray take Notice, no Man can lose what he never had.

Vena. Master, I can neither catch with the first nor second Angle. I have no Fortune.

Pisc. Look you, Scholar, I have yet another — And now, having caught three Brace of *Trouts*, I will tell you a short Tale as we walk towards our Breakfast. A Scholar, a Preacher I should say, that was attempting to procure the Approbation of a Parish for their Lecturer, had got from his fellow Pupil the Copy of a Sermon, that was first preached, with great Commendation, by him that composed it; and though the Borrower of it delivered it Word for Word as it was at first, yet it was utterly disliked, as it was preached by the second; which the Sermon-borrower complained of to the Lender of it, and was thus answered: "I lent you indeed "my Fiddle, but not my Fiddlestick; for you are "to know, that every one cannot make Musick "with my Words, which are fitted for my own "Mouth." And so, my Scholar, *you are to know*, that as the ill Pronunciation, or ill accenting of Words in a Sermon spoils it, so the ill Carriage of your Line, or not fishing even to a Foot in a right Place, makes you lose your Labour. And though you have my Fiddle, that is, my very Rod and Tackling with which you see I catch Fish, yet you

you have not my Fiddlestick; that is, you have Skill to carry your Hand and Line, nor how guide it to a right Place; and this must be ta you (for you are to remember, I told you *Ang is an Art*) either by Practice, or long Obse tion, or both. But take this for a Rule, w you fish for a *Trout* with a *Worm*, let your L have so much, and not more Lead, than will the Stream in which you fish; that is to say, m in a great troublesome Stream than in a smo that is quieter: as near as may be, so much will sink the Bait to the Bottom, and keep it in Motion, and not more — But now let's Grace, and fall to Breakfast. What say y Scholar, to the Providence of an old Angler? D not this Meat taste well? And was not this P well chosen to eat it? For this Sycamore-tree shade us from the Sun's Heat.

Vena. All excellent good, and my Stomach ex lent good too. And now I remember, and find true which devout *Lessius* says, "That poor M "and those that fast often, have much more h "sure in eating, than rich Men and Gluttons, "always feed before their Stomachs are empt "their last Meat, and call for more; and so "themselves of that Pleasure which Hunger br "to the others." And I do seriously approv that Saying of your's, That "you had rather "civil, well-grounded, temperate, poor An "than a drunken Lord." But I hope ther none such; however, I am certain of this, th have been at many costly Dinners, that have afforded me Half the Content that this has d for which I thank God and you. And now, M Master, proceed to your promised Direction making and ordering my artificial Fly.

Pisc. My honeſt Scholar, I will do it, for it is a Debt due to you by my Promiſe; and becauſe you ſhall not think yourſelf more engaged to me than indeed you really are, I will freely give you ſuch Directions as were lately given to me by an ingenious Brother of the Angle, an honeſt Man, and an excellent Fly-fiſher.

§ * §

You are to note, that there are twelve Kinds of artificial Flies to angle with upon the Top of the Water *. *Note*, by the Way, ☞ *that the fitteſt Seaſon of uſing theſe, is a bluſtering windy Day, when the Waters are ſo troubled, that the natural Fly cannot be ſeen, or reſt upon them.*

The Firſt is the *Dun-fly* in *March*; the Body is made of Dun-wool, the Wings of the Partridge's Feathers. The Second is another *Dun-fly*, the Body of black Wool, and the Wings made of black Drake's Feathers, and of the Feathers under his Tail. The Third is the *Stone-fly* in *April*, the Body of black Wool, made yellow under the Wings and Tail, and made with the Wings of the Drake. The Fourth is the *Ruddy-fly*, in the Beginning of *May*, the Body made of red Wool, wrapt about with black Silk, and the Feathers are the Wings of the Drake, with the Feathers of a red Capon dy'd, which hang dangling on his Sides, next to the Tail. The Fifth is the yellow or greeniſh *Fly* (in

* This Catalogue has been copied by almoſt every Writer on the Subject, and could be never mended. But longer Trials have ſhewn that *three or four* of the Sorts of artificial Flies, which every Fiſhing-Place now ſupplies at a cheap Expence, will ſerve throughout every Month of the Year, as well as the whole Liſt. Some hold a *Trout* to be very curious about his *Flies*, nor the *Seaſons* of them. *I have* obſerved, ſays an experienced Artiſt, *very ſucceſsfully, with an artificial Fly* in Auguſt. *See fuller Inſtructions for* Fly-making, Part II. Chap. VII and VIII.

(in *May* likewise) the Body made of yellow W
and the Wings made of a red Cock's Hack
Tail. The Sixth is the *Black fly*, in *May*,
the Body made with black Wool, and lapt a
with the Herle of a Peacock's Tail; the W
are made of the Wings of a brown Capon,
his blue Feathers in his Head. The Seventh
the sad *Yellow-fly*, in *June*; the Body is made
black Wool, with a yellow List on either S
the Wings taken from the Wings of a Buzz
bound with black, braked Hemp. The Eigh
the *Moorish-fly*, made with the Body of dus
Wool, and, the Wings, of the blackish Ma
the Drake. The Ninth is the *Tawny-fly*,
till the Middle of *June*, the Body made of ta
Wool, the Wings made contrary one against
other, of the whitish Mail of the wild D
The Tenth is the *Wasp-fly*, in *July*, the
made of black Wool, lapt about with yellow
the Wings made of the Feathers of the Drake
of the Buzzard. The Eleventh is the *Shell*
good in *Mid July*, the Body made of gree
Wool, lapt about with the Herle of a Peac
Tail, and the Wings made of the Wings o
Buzzard. The Twelfth is the dark *Drak*
good in *August*, the Body made with black W
lapt about with black Silk; his Wings are
with the Mail of the black Drake, with a
Head. *Thus have you a* Jury *of Flies, like*
betray and condemn all the Trouts *in the River*.

I shall next give you some other Direction
Fly fishing, such as are recommended by Mr.
mas Barker, * a Gentleman that hath spent

* In a singular odd old Book by him called *Barker's Delig*
the Art of Angling. Something more from him, passed over
Walton, will be added in the Note upon *Trout Night-fishing*
follows in this Chapter.

Time in fishing; but I shall do it with a little Va-
riation. First, let your Rod * be light, and very
gentle † (I take the best to be of two Pieces) and
let not your Line (especially for three or four
Links next the Hook) exceed three or four Hairs
at the most, though you may fish a little stronger
above, in the upper Part of your Line; but if you
can attain to angle with one Hair ‡, you shall have
more Rises, and catch more Fish. Now, you
must be sure not to cumber yourself with too long
a Line, as most do; and, before you begin to angle,
desire to have the Wind on your Back, and the Sun,
if it shines, to be before you, and to fish down the
Stream, and carry the Point or Top of your Rod
downward; by which Means, the Shadow of your-
self, and Rod too, will be least offensive to the
Fish: For the Sight of any Shade amazes them,
and spoils your Sport, of which you must take
great Care.

In the Middle of *March* (till which Time a Man should not in Honesty catch a *Trout*) or in *April*, if the Weather be dark, or a little windy or cloudy, the best fishing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I last spoke to you §. Of these there are divers Kinds, or at least of divers Colours. *These, and the* May-fly, *are the Ground of all Fly-angling*; which are to be thus made.

First, you must arm your Hook with the Line in the Inside of it, then take your Scissars, and cut so much of a brown Mallard's Feather, as in your own

* This, with the Line, should be each six Yards long, if the Stream admits, and the Banks are high; else your Line must be shorter.

† He means *taper, pliable.*

‡ The best for this is a Hog's Bristle, either one or two, Indian Graft, or rather Silkworm-gut, sold common at the Shops.

§ Page 84.

own Reason will make the Wings of it, you
ing withal, regard to the Bigness of Littlen
your Hook; then lay the outmost Part of
Feather next to your Hook, then the Point
your Feather next the Shank of your Hook;
having so done, whip it three or four Times
the Hook, with the same Silk with which
Hook was armed; and having made the Silk
take the Hackle of a Cock or Capon's Neck,
Plover's Top, which is usually better; take off
one Side of the Feather, and then take the Hac
Silk or Crewel, Gold or Silver Thread, make
fast at the Bent of the Hook, that is to say, be
your Arming; then you must take the Hac
the Silver or Gold Thread, and work it up to
Wings, shifting or removing your Fingers as
turn the Silk about the Hook, still looking at e
Turn, that your Gold, or what Materials yo
you make your Fly of, lie right and neatly;
if you find they do so, then, when you have m
the Head, make all fast, and work your Ta
up to the Head, and make that fast; then, w
a Needle or Pin, divide the Wing into two,
with the Arming silk, whip it about, cross-wa
betwixt the Wings, and, with your Thumb,
must turn the Point of your Feather towards
Bent of the Hook, working it three or four t
about the Shank of it; then view the Proport
and if all be neat, and to your liking, fasten
confess, no Direction can be given to make a
of a dull Capacity able to make a Fly well;
yet I know this, with a little Practice, will
an ingenious Angler in a good Degree: But
see a Fly made by an Artist in that Kind, is
best teaching to make it; and then an inge
Angler may walk by the River, and mark

ly falls upon the Water that Day*, and catch
ne of them, if he see the *Trouts* leap at a Fly of
at Kind; and having Hooks always ready hung,
ith him, and a Bag also with Bear's Hair, or the
air of a brown or sad-coloured Heifer, Hackles
f a Cock or Capon, several coloured Silk and
rewel to make the Body of the Fly; the Fea-
ers of a Drake's head, black or brown Sheep's
Wool, or Hog's Wool or Hair; † Thread of Gold
d Silver, Silk of several Colours, especially sad-
oloured, to make the Fly's Head (and there be
o other coloured Feathers, both of little Birds,
d speckled Fowl) I say, having those with him
a Bag, and trying to make a Fly, though he
iss at first, yet shall he at last hit it better, even
such Perfection, that none can well teach him.
nd if he attain to make his Fly right, and have
e Luck to hit also where there is Store of *Trouts*,
dark Day, and a right Wind, he will catch such
lenty of them, as will encourage him to grow
ore and more in Love with the Art of Fly-
aking.

Vena. But, my loving Master, if any Wind will
ot serve, then I wish I were in *Lapland*, to buy a
ood Wind of one of the honest Witches, that sell
o many and so cheap.

Pisc. Marry, Scholar, but I would not be there,
er, indeed, from under this Tree; for look how
t begins to rain, and, by the Clouds, if I mistake
ot, we shall presently have a smoaking Shower,
nd therefore sit close: This Sycamore-tree will
elter us; and I will tell you, as they shall come
into

* The Method is, to shake or beat the Boughs or Bushes growing
ar the Water.

† This is what grows under the Bristles on the Neck and other
aces and is very downy.

into my Mind, more Obſervations of Fly-fi
for a *Trout*.

But firſt, you are to take Notice of the W
that the Southern is ſaid to be beſt; one obſe

——————— *The Wind, when South,*
Blows your crav'd Bait e'en in the Fiſhes M

Next to that, the Weſt Wind is believed
the beſt; and, having told you the Eaſt W
the worſt, I need not tell you which is the b
the third Degree. And yet, as *Solomon* obſe
that "he that conſiders the Wind ſhall
"ſow;" ſo he that buſies his Head too
about them, if the Weather be not made ex
cold by an Eaſt Wind, ſhall be a little ſup
tious; for, as it is obſerved, that there is no
Horſe of a bad Colour, ſo I have obſerved,
it be a cloudy Day, and not extreme cold,
Wind ſit in what Corner it will, and do its
I heed it not. And yet, take this for a
That I would willingly fiſh ſtanding on the Lee-ſ
And you are to take Notice, *That the Fiſh*
ſwim nearer the Bottom, and in deeper Wate
Winter, than in Summer; and alſo nearer th
tom in a cold Day, and then get neareſt the La
of the Water.

But I promiſed to tell you more of Fly-
for a *Trout*, which I may have Time enou
do, for you ſee it rains *May Butter*. Firſt,
May-fly, you may make his Body with gre
coloured Crewel, or willowiſh Colour, dar
it in moſt Places with waxed Silk, or ribbe
black Hair, or ſome of them ribbed with
Thread; and ſuch Wings for the Colour,

* *That Shore* which is next the Wind.

ſee the Fly to have at that Seaſon, nay, at that very Day, on the Water. Or you may make the *Oak-fly* with an orange-tawny, and black Ground, and the brown of a Mallard's Feather for the Wings. And you are to know, that theſe two are moſt excellent Flies; that is, the *May-fly* and the *Oak-fly* *. And, let me again tell you, that you keep as far from the Water as you can poſſibly, whether you fiſh with a Fly or Worm; and fiſh down the Stream; and, when you fiſh with a Fly, if it be poſſible, let no Part of your Line touch the Water, but your Fly only, and be ſtill moving your Fly upon the Water, or caſting it into the Water, you yourſelf being always moving down the Stream. Mr. *Barker* commends ſeveral Sorts of the *Palmer-flies*, not only thoſe ribbed with Silver and Gold, but others that have their Bodies all made with black, or ſome with red, and a red Hackle. You may alſo make the *Hawthorn-fly*, which is all black, and not big, but very ſmall, the ſmaller the better; or the *Oak-fly*, as was ſaid before: or a Fly made with a Peacock's Feather, is excellent in a bright Day. You muſt be ſure you want not in your Magazine-bag the Peacock's Feather, and Grounds of ſuch Wool and Crewel as will make the *Graſhopper*. And note, ☞ *that uſually the ſmalleſt Flies are beſt*: And alſo, *that the*

E *light*

* The *Cad-bait*, or (elſe) *Oak-worm*, upon the Point of the Hook, with the artificial Fly, is recommended. When the Fiſh appear at Top, they will take the *Oak-worm* upon the Water, rather than under it, or than the Fly itſelf; and it is more deſired by them. After you have dibbed with theſe Flies on the Surface till they are tired, cut off their Wings, and fiſh with them at Mid-water, or a little lower. This is reckoned a valuable Secret. — You may dib for a *Trout* alſo with a *Fly* or *Graſhopper*, as you do for a *Chub*, under a Buſh, by the Bank Side, with a ſtrong Rod, and ſhort ſtrong Line. If they do not riſe after Half a Dozen Trials, there are none there, or elſe they diſlike your Bait.

light Fly does usually make most Sport in a dark [illegible] *and the darkest and least Fly in a bright or clear* [illegible] And lastly note, that you are to repair upon Occasion to your Magazine-bag, and, as you Reason, vary and make them lighter or fa according to your Fancy, or the Day.

And now I shall tell you, that fishing with a tural Fly is excellent, and affords much Ple They may be found thus: The *May-fly* usua and about *that* Month, near the River Side, cially against Rain. The *Oak-fly*, on the Bo Body of an Oak or Ash, from the Beginnin *May* to the End of *August*; it is a brownish and easy to be so found, and stands usually wit Head downwards, that is, towards the Roo the Tree. The small black Fly, or *Hawth fly*, is to be had on any Hawthorn-bush afte Leaves are come forth. With these, and a Line (as I shewed to angle for a *Chub*) you dape or dop, and also with a *Grashopper* beh Tree, or in any deep Hole, still making it to on the Top * of the Water, as if it were alive, still keeping yourself out of Sight, you shal tainly have Sport if there be *Trouts*, in a hot especially in the *Evening of a hot Day*†.

Scholar, my Direction for Fly-fishing is with this Shower, for it has done raining. An look about you, and see how pleasantly that dow looks; nay, and the Earth smells as s too. Come, let me tell you what holy Mr *bert* says of such Days and Flowers as these then we will thank God that we enjoy them

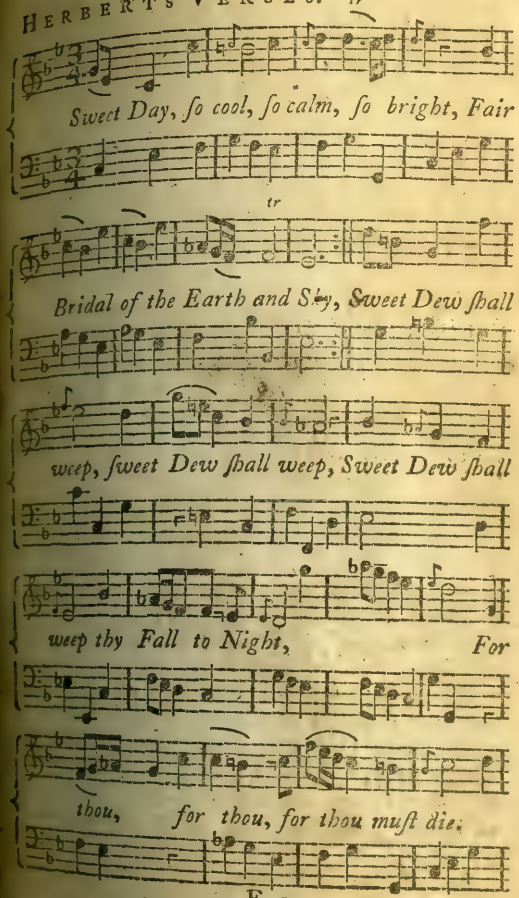
* This is the usual Practice. Yet the largest *Trouts* m by letting the *Fly* sink five or six Inches under the Water.

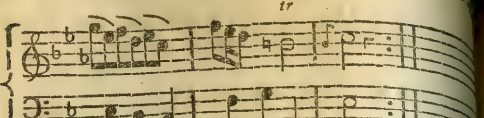
† If a Shower then falls they will rise at Gnats presently

walk to the River, sit down quietly, and try to catch the other Brace of *Trouts*.

M. B.

HERBERT'S VERSES.


tr
Sweet Day, so cool, so calm, so bright, Fair
tr
Bridal of the Earth and Sky, Sweet Dew shall
weep, sweet Dew shall weep, Sweet Dew shall
weep thy Fall to Night, For
thou, for thou, for thou must die.



Sweet Rose, whose Hue, angry and brave,
Bids the rash Gazer wipe his Eye,
Thy Root is ever in its Grave,
And thou must die.

[**Sweet spring, full of sweet Days and Roses,*
A Box where Sweets compacted lie,
My Musick shews you have your Closes,
And all must die.

Only a sweet and virtuous Soul,
Like season'd Timber never gives,
But when the whole World turns to Coal,
then chiefly lives.

Vena. I thank you, good Master, for your ... Direction for Fly-fishing, and for the sweet ... joyment of the pleasant Day, which is so far ... without Offence to God or Man; and I thank ... for the sweet Close of your Discourse with ... *Herbert*'s Verses, who, I have heard loved ... gling; and I the rather believe it, because he ... a Spirit suitable to Anglers and those prin... Christians, that you love, and have so much ... mended.

Pisc. Well, my loving Scholar, and I am pl... to know that you are so well pleased with m... rection and Discourse; and since you like ... Verses of Mr. *Herbert*'s so well, let me te... what a reverend and learned Divine, that pro... to imitate him, has writ of our Book of C...

Pro...

* This Verse must be left out in the singing.

Prayer; which I know you will like the better, because he is a Friend of mine, and I am sure no Enemy to Angling.*

* In Respect to Mr. *Walton*, and his commended Friend, we could not, after this Character, reject these Verses: But after all the best Assistance we could give them, they are so destitute of Poetry, and the Spirit and Sweetness of the evangelical Mr. *Herbert*, that we are persuaded no Reader of Taste will be offended they are removed into the Margin, to be read or passed over, as shall best please them.

Pray'r by the Book? and common? — Yes, why not?
The SPIRIT *of* Grace
And Supplication
Is not left free, alone,
For Time and Place,
But Manner too. To read or speak by Rote
Is all alike, to him who prays
In Heart, what with his Mouth he says.

They that in private, by themselves alone
Do pray, may take
What Liberty they please,
In chusing on the Ways
Wherein to make
Their Soul's most intimate Affections known
To HIM *who sees in Secret — when*
They're most conceal'd from other Men.

But HE, *who unto others leads the Way*
In Publick Pray'r,
Should do it so
As all that hear may know
They need not fear
To tune their Hearts to his rais'd Tongue, and say
AMEN; *nor doubt they were betray'd*
To sin — e'n when they would have pray'd.

Devotion *will add Life to the* mere Letter:
And why should not
That, which Authority
Prescribes, accounted be
Advantage got?
If Prayer *be good, the* commoner *the* better,
Pray'r in the Church's Words, *as well*
As Sense, *of* ALL PRAY'RS bears the Bell.

CH. HARVIE.

And now, Scholar, I think it will be Time to repair to our Angle-rods, which we left in the Water to fish for themselves; you shall chuse which shall be your's, and it is an even Lay on of them catches.

And, let me tell you, this Kind of fishing with a Dead-rod, and laying Night-hooks, are like put ting Money to Use, for they both work for their Owners, when they do nothing but sleep or eat or rejoice, as you know we have done this Hour, and sat as quietly, and free from Care under this Sycamore, as *Virgil's Tityrus*, and *Melibæus*, did under their broad Beech-tree. Life, my honest Scholar, no Life so happy, and pleasant, as the Life of a well-governed Angler; for when the Lawyer is swallowed up with Business, and the Statesman is preventing or contriving Plots, then we sit on Cowslip Banks, hear the Birds sing, and possess ourselves in as much Quietness as these silent Silver Streams, which we now see glide so quietly by us. Indeed, my good Scholar, we may say of Angling, as Dr. *Boteler* said of Strawberries, *Doubtless, God could have made better Berry*; *but, doubtless, God never did*: and so, if I might be Judge, God *never did allow more calm, quiet, innocent Recreation, than Angling*. I will tell you, Scholar, when I sat last on this Primrose Bank, and looked down these Meadows, I thought of them as *Charles* the Emperor did of the City of *Florence*, *That they were too pleasant to be looked on but only on Holydays*. As I then sat on this very Grass, I turned my Thoughts into Verse: It was a Wish, which I will repeat to you.

* The Relator adds he was used to say, "*It was Pity that "City should not have a Case or Sheath to keep it from the "Weather.*"

The ANGLER'S WISH.

In flow'ry Meads, here let me live;
These cryſtal Streams ſweet Solace give;
To whoſe harmonious bubbling Sound,
My dancing Float and Heart rebound.
My ſtretch'd here at Eaſe, I view the Dove
Court his chaſte Mate to Sports of Love;
Or, on yon Bank, my Mind I pleaſe
(Breathing the healthy Weſtern Breeze)
To ſee ſweet Dew-drops kiſs the Flow'rs,
Wiſh'd off by April's ſweeter Show'rs;
Here liſten to my Kenna's * *Song,* [*Like Her-
There ſee the Black-bird feed her Young. mit
Or a Leverock build her Neſt; poor.]
While calm'd my weary Spirits reſt,
Raiſing my low-pitch'd Thoughts above
This Earth, and all poor Mortal's Love:
Here joying in my peaceful Sports,
From Law-Suits free, and Pomp of Courts.——
Or with my Bryan †, *and my Book,*
Loiter long Days near Shawford-Brook; ‡
There eat by him my homely Meat,
There ſee the Sun both riſe and ſet;
There bid Good-morning to next Day,
And meditate my Time away;
And angle on, and Paſſage crave,
In quiet, to a welcome Grave.

When I had ended this Compoſure, I left this Place, and ſaw a Brother of the Angle ſit under that *Honeyſuckle Hedge* (one that will prove worth your

E 4

* The Name ſeems a Family Reference, as he married the Siſter of [illegible]biſhop *Ken*. The Words *Like Hermit poor*, allude to a moſt celebrated Song which was all the Vogue in *Walton*'s Time; and a meaſure by Compoſition.

† An Editor names him in a Note, "*A Friend of the Author*;" from the Circumſtances it ſhould rather ſeem his favourite *Dog*.

‡ In *Staffordſhire*.

your Acquaintance); I ſat down by him, and p
ſently we met with an accidental Piece of Me
ment, which I will relate to you; for it rains

On the other Side of this very Hedge ſat a G
of Gypſies; and, near to them, a Gang of B
gars: The Gypſies were then to divide all the M
ney that had been got that Week, either by ſte
ing Linnen or Poultry, or by Fortune-telling,
Legerdemain, or indeed by any other Sleights a
Secrets belonging to their myſterious Governme
And the Sum that was got, proved to be
twenty and ſome odd Shillings. The odd Mo
was agreed to be diſtributed among the Poor
their own Corporation; and, for the remai
twenty Shillings, *that* was to be divided unto f
Gentlemen Gypſies, according to their ſeveral D
grees in their Commonwealth.

And the firſt, or chiefeſt Gipſy, was to hav
third Part of the twenty Shillings, which all M
know is 6*s*. 8*d*.

The ſecond was to have a fourth Part of
20*s*. which all know to be 5*s*.

The third was to have a fifth Part, which
know to be 4*s*.

The fourth and laſt Gipſy was to have a fi
Part of the 20*s*. which all Men know to be 3*s*.

As for Example:

	3 times	6*s*. 8*d*.	is	20*s*.
So is	4 times	5*s*.	——	20*s*.
So is	5 times	4*s*.	——	20*s*.
And ſo is	6 times	3*s*. 4*d*.		20*s*.

And yet he that divided the Money was ſo
a Gypſy, that, though he gave to every
theſe ſaid Sums, he kept one Shilling of it
himſelf.

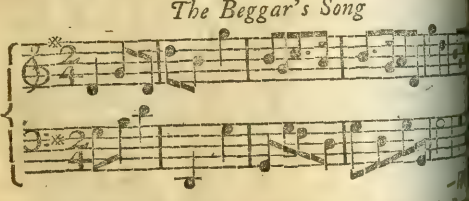
	s.	d.
As for Example	6	8
	5	0
	4	0
	3	4
make but	19	0

But now you shall know, that when the four Gypsies saw he had got one Shilling by dividing the Money, though not one of them knew why to demand more, yet, like Lords and Courtiers, every Gypsy envied him that was the Gainer, and wrangled with him, and said, the remaining Shilling belonged to him: and so they fell to so high a Contest about it, as none that knows the Faithfulness of one Gypsy to another will easily believe; only we that have lived these last twenty Years are certain, that Money has been able to do much Mischief. However, the Gypsies were too wise to go to Law, and therefore voted their choice Friends *Rook* and *Shark*, and our late *English Guzman*, to be their Arbitrators and Umpires; and so they left this Honeysuckle Hedge, and went to tell Fortunes, and cheat, and get more Money and Lodging in the next Village. When these were gone, we heard as high a Contention amongst the Beggars, *Whether it was easiest to rip a Cloak? or unrip a Cloak?* One Beggar affirmed, it was all one; but that was denied, by asking her, *If doing and undoing was all one?* Then another said, *It was easiest to unrip a Cloak, for that was to let it alone.* But she was answered, by asking her, *How she unript it, if she let it alone?* And she confessed herself mistaken. These, and twenty such-like Questions, were proposed, and answered,

with as much beggarly Logick and Earneſtne
was ever heard to proceed from the Mouth o
moſt pertinacious Schiſmatic; and ſometimes a
Beggars (whoſe Number was neither more nor
than the Poets nine Muſes) talked altogether a
this ripping and unripping, and ſo loud, that
one heard what the other ſaid. But, at laſt,
Beggar craved Audience, and told them, That
Father *Clauſe*, whom *Ben Johnſon*†, in his *Begg*
Buſh, created King of their Corporation, was
Night to lodge at an Alehouſe, called *Catch-*
by-the-way, not far from *Waltham-croſs*, in
high Road towards *London*; and he deſired th
to ſpend no more Time about that, and ſuch
Queſtions, but refer all to Father *Clauſe* at N
for he was an upright Judge, and, in the m
Time, draw Cuts what Song ſhould be ſung n
and who ſhould ſing it. They all agreed to
Motion; and the Lot fell to her that was
youngeſt and verieſt Virgin of the Company;
ſhe ſung *Frank Daviſon*'s Song, which he m
forty Years ago*, and all the Company joine
ſing the Burthen with her. The Ditty was t
But firſt the Burthen.

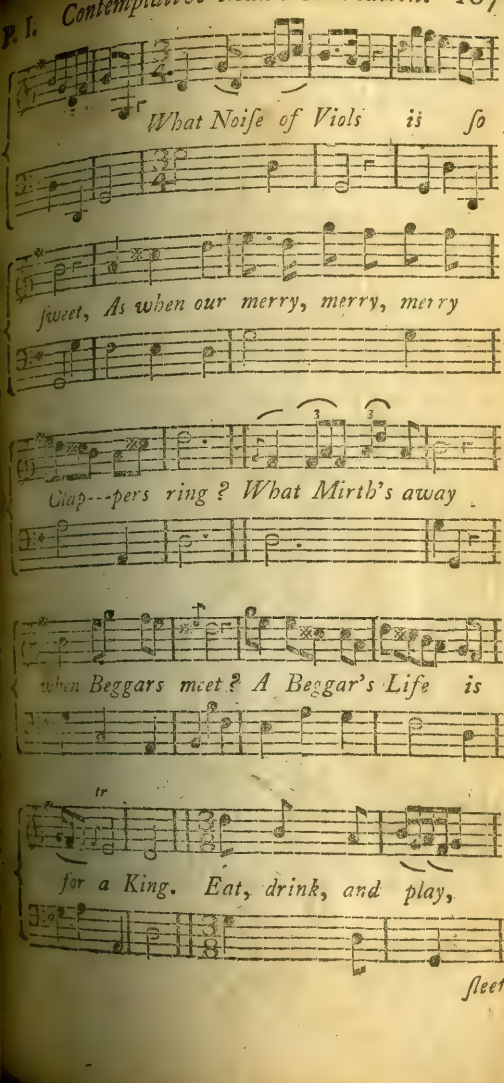
Bright ſhines the Sun, play, Beggars, play,
Here's Scraps enough to ſerve to Day.

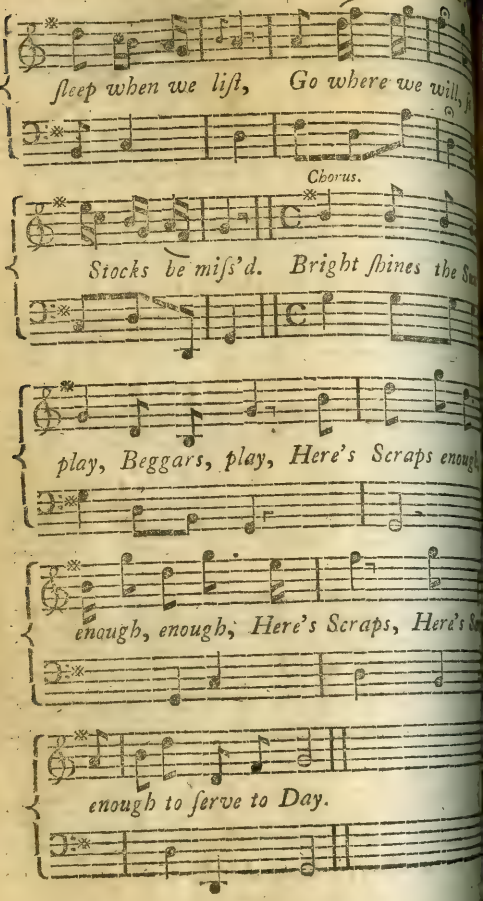
The Beggar's Song



* This Name is an Error of Memory, the Play is in *B*
and *Fletcher*'s Dramatic Works.

† About the Year 1610.


What Noise of Viols is so
sweet, As when our merry, merry, merry
Clap---pers ring? What Mirth's away
when Beggars meet? A Beggar's Life is
tr
for a King. Eat, drink, and play,
sleep


sleep when we list, Go where we will,
Chorus.
Stocks be miss'd. Bright shines the Su
play, Beggars, play, Here's Scraps enough
enough, enough, Here's Scraps, Here's S
enough to serve to Day.

The World is our's, and our's alone,
We have alone the World at Will,
We purchase nought, all is our own,
Both Fields and Streets we Beggars fill.
**[Fields yield us Shades, to nap and eat,*
Streets Fools — our mumping Gangs *to cheat.]*
Bright shines the Sun, play, Beggars, play,
Here's Scraps enough to serve to Day.

An hundred Herds of black and white
Upon our Gowns securely feed;
And yet, if any dare us bite,
He dies therefore, — as sure as Creed:
Thus Beggars lord it as they please,
And only Beggars live at Ease.
Bright shines the Sun, play, Beggars play,
Here's Scraps enough to serve to Day.

Ven. I thank you, good Master, for this Piece of Merriment, and this Song, which was well humoured by the Maker, and well remembered by you.

Pisc. But, I pray, forget not the Catch which you promised to make against Night; for our Countryman, honest *Coridon*, will expect it, and my Song, which I must be forced to patch up, for it is so long since I learned it, that I have forgot a Part of it. — But come, now it has done raining, let us stretch our Legs a little, in a gentle Walk to the River, and try what Interest our Angles will pay us, for lending them so long to be used by the *Trouts*: Lent them, indeed, like Usurers, for our Profit, and their Destruction.

Vena.

* These two Lines are supplied to make the Measure, which is deficient in the Author's Copy.

Vena. Ah me! look you, Master, a Fish! Fish! — Oh, alas, Master! I have lost her.

Pisc. Ay, marry, Sir, that was a good Fish, deed. If I had had the Luck to have taken that Rod, then it is twenty to one he should have broke my Line by running to the Rod's E as you suffered him: I would have held him wi its Bent, unless he had been Fellow to the *Trout* that is near an Ell long, which was of a Length and Depth, that he had his Picture dra and now to be seen at my Host *Rickaby*'s, *George* in *Ware*; and it may be, by giving very great *Trout* the Rod, that is, by casting him in the Water†, I might have caught him the long Run; for so I use always to do wh meet with an overgrown Fish, and you learn to do so hereafter: For I tell you, Sch *Fishing is an Art*; or, at least, it is an Art catch Fish.

Vena. But, Master, I have heard, that the *Trout* you speak of is a *Salmon*.

Pisc. Trust me, Scholar, I know not wh say to it; there are many Country People that lieve *Hares* change Sexes every Year; and m learned Men think so too: For, in dissecting th

* There is this Method, if you lose a *Trout*, by getting breaking your Tackle, how to take her afterwards. Near Hold, if you can discover it, or where you struck her, fix Stick in the Water, the Bark so loosed as to hold your Line and yet close enough to keep it from slipping out, or the carrying it away. Your Hook and Line must be very strong with a *Lob-worm*, and let it hang a Foot from the Stick; fe other End of your Line to a Stick, or a Bough in the Ba within one Hour, you may be sure of her, if all your hold.

† Mr. *Cotton* dislikes this Method, and offers his Part II. Chap. XII. toward the Beginning.

they find Reasons to incline them to that Belief.* And, whether this was a *Salmon* when he came into fresh Water, and his not returning to the Sea hath altered him to another Colour or Kind, I am not able to say; but, I am certain, he hath all the Signs of being a *Trout*, both for his Shape, Colour, and Spots; and yet many think he is not.

Vina. But, Master, will this *Trout* I had hold of you? For it is like he hath the Hook in his Belly.

Pisc. I will tell you, Scholar, that unless the Hook be fast in his very Gorge, it's more than probable he will live; and a little Time, with the Help of the Water, will rust the Hook, and it will in length wear away, as the Gravel does in the Horse's Hoof, which only leaves a false Quarter.

And now, Scholar, let us go to my Rod — Look you, Scholar, I have a Fish too, — but it proves a course-headed *Chub*; and this is not much amiss, for it will pleasure some poor Body as we go to our Lodging, to meet our Brother *Peter*, and honest *Cranon* — Come, now bait your Hook afresh, and then it into the Water, for it rains again, and we will even retire to the Sycamore-tree, and there I will give you more Directions concerning fishing; for I would fain make you an Artist.

Vina. Yes, good Master, pray let it be so.

Pisc. Well, Scholar, now we are sat down, and at Ease, I shall tell you a little more of *Trout*-fishing. You are to know, there is *Night* as well as *Day-fishing*, for a *Trout*, and that in the Night, the best *Trouts* come out of their Holds; and the Manner of taking them is on the Top of the Water,

* There is added (more worthily expunged) that "*To make the Wonder seem less, Dr.* Mer. Casaubon, from Peucerus *the Physician*, reports a People that once a Year turn Wolves, partly in Shape, and partly in Conditions," Treatise of credible and incredible Things.

Water, with a great *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, o
ther *two*, which you are to fish with in a
where the Waters run somewhat quietly (for,
Stream, the Bait will not be so well discerne
say, in a quiet or dead Place, near to some
there draw your Bait over the Top of the W
to and fro; and, if there be a good *Trout*
Hole, he will take it*, especially if the Nig
dark, for then he is bold, and lies near the To
the Water, watching the Motion of any *Fro*
Water-rat, or *Mouse*, that swims betwixt hi
the Sky; these he hunts after, if he sees the W
but wrinkle or move in one of these dead H
where these great old *Trouts* usually lie, nea
their Holds †; For you are to note, that the
old *Trout* is both subtle and fearful, and does
usually stir out, but lies close all Day, as the t
rous Hare does in her Form; for the chief Fe
of both is seldom in the Day, but usually
Night, and then the great *Trouts* feed very bol

And you must fish for him with a strong
and not a little Hook, and let him have Ti
gorge your Hook, for he does not usually s
it, as he often will in Day-fishing; and,
Night be not dark, then fish so with an a

* You will hear when they rise, slack your Line then
nigh as you can guess to the Bottom, holding it upright,
easily perceive a Bite by your Hand.

† At some times the *Lobworms*, used at Ground, is bes
two Worms, the four Ends hanging down as even as you ca
the Dark, with a running Plummet (a bored Shot or B
portioned to the Stream, about ten Inches from the Hook.
feel it run true upon the Ground, throwing in up the Str
carrying your Hand strait. When you feel a Bite, give
not one in twenty but gorges the Bait. The least Sna
him; give a Turn or two and land him, which you may
Hands. *Barker's Delight, or Art of Angling.*

fly of a light Colour, and at the Snap: * Nay, he will sometimes rise at a dead Mouse, or a Piece of Cloth, or any thing that seems to swim cross the Water, or to be in Motion. This is a choice Way, but I have not often used it, because it is void of the Pleasures that such Days as these (that we two now enjoy) afford an Angler.

And you are to know, that in *Hampshire*, which I think exceeds all *England* for swift, shallow, clear, pleasant Brooks, and Store of *Trouts*, they use to catch *Trouts* in the Night, by the Light of a Torch or Straw, which, when they have discovered, they strike with a *Trout-spear*; or otherways. This Kind of Way they catch very many; but I would not believe it till I was an Eye-witness of it; nor do I like it, now I have seen it.

Vena. But, Master, do not *Trouts* see us in the Night.

Pisc. Yes, and hear and smell too, both then and in the Day-time; for *Gesner* observes, the *Otter* smells a Fish forty Furlongs off him in the Water: And that it may be true, seems to be confirmed by Sir *Francis Bacon* †, who proves, that Waters may be the Medium of Sounds, by demonstrating it thus: That if you knock two Stones together very deep under Water, those that stand upon a Bank near that Place, may hear the Noise, without any Diminution of it by the Water. He also offers the like Experiment concerning the letting an Anchor fall, by a very long Cable or Rope, on

* *i. e.* The first Touch of the Fish. — Mr. *Barker* names the *Yellow Palmer* on a large Hook, then as the Dawn advances, a *Red*, and at full Light a *Black* of the *same Kind*. These three, with Lob-worms, he says, serve all the Year for *Night-angling*, which, he adds, is the true Experience, and surest of all, and kills largest *Trouts*. Your Line must not be longer than your Rod. *Barker's Delight, or Art of Angling.*

† Natural History, *Cent.* 8th.

on a Rock or Sand, within the Sea; and this ... so well observed and demonstrated, as it is by ... learned Man, has made me believe, that ... unbed themselves and stir, at the *Noise* of T... der; and not only, as some think, by the ... or stirring of the Earth, which is occasio... that Thunder. And this Reason of Sir *F... Bacon* *, has made me crave Pardon of one ... laughed at, for affirming, "That he knew ... "come to a certain Place in a Pond to be fe... "the ringing of a Bell, or the beating of a D... And, however, it shall be a Rule for me, to ... as little Noise as I can when I am fishing, un... *Francis Bacon* be confuted, which I shall giv... Man Leave to do.

And, lest you may think him singular in ... Opinion, I will tell you, this seems to be be... by our learned Dr. *Hakewell* †, who quotes ... to report, that one of the Emperors had pan... Fish-ponds, and in them several Fish, that ap... and came when they were called by their ... Names. And St. *James* ‡ tells us, *That all ... in the Sea have been tamed by Mankind.* ... *Pliny* §, that *Antonia*, the Wife of *Drusus*, ... *Lamprey*, at whose Gills she hung Jewels, ... rings. And that others have been so weak, ... shed Tears at the Death of Fishes which ... have kept and loved. These Observations, ... will to most Hearers appear wonderful, ... have a further Confirmation from *Martial*, ... writes thus:

Piscator fuge, ne nocens, &c.

* Exper. 792.

† Apology for God's Power and Providence, *p.* 360.

‡ Chap. i. 7. § Lib. ix. 35.

Rash Angler, here thy guilty Sport forbear,
These finny Natives are a Monarch's Care.
The gentle Kind obey his known Command,
And feed familiar from his sporting Hand.
Each has his Name, which sev'rally they hear,
And to their Owner's Summons strait appear.

All the further Use I shall make of this shall be to advise Anglers to be patient and forbear swearing, lest they be heard, and catch no Fish.

And so I shall proceed next to tell you, it is certain some Fields near *Lemster*, a Town in *Herefordshire*, are observed to make the Sheep that feed upon them more fat than the next, and to bear finer Wool; that is to say, *that* Year in which they feed in such a particular Pasture, they will yield finer Wool than they did the Year before they came to feed in it, and courser again, if they shall return to their former Pasture; and again return to finer Wool, being fed in the Fine-wooled ground. Which I tell you, that you may the better believe that I am certain, if I catch a *Trout* in one Meadow, he shall be white and faint, and (very like) be lousy; and, as certain, if I catch a *Trout* in the next, he shall be strong and red, and lusty, and much better Meat. Trust me, Scholar, I have caught many a *Trout* in a particular Meadow, that the very Shape, and the enamelled Colour of him, hath been such as has moved me to look on him; and I have with much Pleasure concluded with *Solomon*, *Every Thing is beautiful in his Season.**

I will

* *Eccles.* II. 11.

I will next, by your Favour, say a little *Umber* or *Grayling*; which is so like a *Trout* his Shape* and Feeding, that I desire I may ex your Patience with a short Discourse of him.

CHAP. VI.

Observations of the Umber *or* Grayling, *and rections how to fish for them.*

Pisc. THE *Umber* and *Grayling* are thoug some to differ, as the *Herring* and *chard* do. But though they may do so in Nations, I think those in *England* differ no but in their Names †. *Androvandus* says, the of the *Trout*-Kind; and *Gesner*, that in his C try, which is *Switzerland*, he is accounte choicest of all Fish; and, in *Italy*, is, in Month of *May*, so highly valued, that he is then at a much higher Rate than any other The *French* (who call the *Chub Un Villain* the *Umber*, of the Lake *Leman*, *Un Umble C lier*; and they value the *Umber* or *Grayli* highly, that they say he feeds on Gold, and many have been caught in their famous River out of whose Bellies Grains of Gold have often taken. Some think he feeds on W Thyme ‡, and smells so at his first taking the Water. And they may think so, with as Reason as we do, that our *Smelts* imitate the

* For this Reason, the Picture both of *This* and the (which is another Fish of the *Trout* Kind) are omitted, as which Mr. *Walton* thought proper to do likewise.

† The larger *Grayling* is called an *Umber*; as the Fi *Jack* is called a *Pike*.

‡ Perhaps from hence he has his *Latin* Name *Thymallus*.

to Smell at their being first caught; which I think is a Truth. *Aldrovandus* says, *The* Salmon, Gray-ling, Trout, *and all Fish that live in clear and running Streams, are made by their Mother Nature of most exact Shape and pleasant Colours, purposely to incite us to a Joy and Contentedness in feasting with them.* Whether this is a Truth or not, is not my purpose to dispute; but it is certain, all that write of the *Umber*, declare him to be very medicinal. Another says, *The Fat of a* Grayling, *being set with Virgin Honey a Day or two in the Sun, in a little Glass, is very excellent against Redness, or any Spots that breeds in the Eyes. Salvian* takes him to be called *Umber* *, from his swift swimming or vanishing out of Sight, more like a Shadow or Ghost, than a Fish. Much more might be said both of his Smell and Taste; but I shall only tell you, that St. *Ambrose*, the glorious Bishop of *Milan*, who lived when the Church kept fasting Days, calls him the *Flower-fish*, or *Flower of Fishes*, and was so far in love with him, that he would not let him pass without the Honour of a long Discourse; but I must; and pass on to tell you, how to take this dainty Fish.

§ * §

First, note, That he grows not to the Bigness of a *Trout*; for the biggest of them do not usually exceed eighteen Inches. He lives in such Rivers as the *Trout* does, and is customarily taken with the same Baits, and after the same Manner; for he will bite either at the *Minnow*, *Worm* or *Fly*, (though not often at the *Minnow*) and is very gamesome at the *Fly*, and much simpler, and therefore bolder than a *Trout*; for he will rise twenty

* From the *Latin*, *Umbra*, a Shadow. Mr. *Cotton* thinks him so called from his Shades or Spots. P. II. Chap. VI.

twenty Times at *one Fly* if you miss him, and rise again. He has been taken with a Fly of the red Feathers of a *Parakeet*, and will one not unlike a *Gnat*, or small *Moth*, or at most Flies that are not too big. He is that lurks close all Winter*, but is very and jolly after *Mid-April*, or in *May*, and Months. His Shape is very fine, his Flesh his Teeth (those little ones he has) are Throat; yet he has so tender a Mouth, that often lost after an Angler has hooked him, any other Fish. Though there are many of Fishes in the delicate River *Dove*, in *Trent*, some other smaller Rivers, as that which runs *Salisbury*, yet he is not so general a Fish *Trout*, nor to me so good to eat, or to angle And so I shall take my Leave of him, and to some Observations of the *Salmon*, and how catch him.

Chap. VII.

Observations of the Salmon; *with Directions to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE *Salmon* is accounted the King Fresh-water-Fish, and is ever bred Rivers relating to the Sea, yet so high, or so it, as admit of no Tincture of Salt or Brackish They are said to breed or cast their Spawn in Rivers, in the Month of *August*. Some say then they dig a Hole or Grave in a safe Place the Gravel, and there lodge their Eggs or Spawn

* Mr. *Cotton*'s Judgment differs. See Part II. Chap.

after the *Melter* (or *Male*) has done his natural Office; and then hide it most cunningly, covering it over with Gravel and Stones, and so leaving it to their Creator's Protection; who, by a gentle Heat which he infuses into that cold Element, makes it brood and beget Life in the Spawn, and to become *Samlets* early the Spring following.

The *Salmons* having spent their appointed Time, and done this natural Duty in the fresh Waters, go back to the Sea before Winter, both the *Melter* and *Spawner*; but, if they be stopt by Flood-gates or Weires, or lost in the fresh Waters, then those left behind grow sick and lean, and unseasonable, and kipper, that is to say, have bony Gristles grow out of their lower Chaps, not unlike a Hawk's Beak, which hinder their feeding *; and in time, such Fish so left behind, pine away and die. It is observed, that they may live thus one year from the Sea, but then they grow insipid and tasteless, losing both their Blood and Strength, and pine and die the second Year; and, it is conjectured, those little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers relating to the Sea †, are bred by such sick *Salmon* that could not get to the Sea; and that, though they abound, yet they never thrive to any considerable Bigness.

But, if the old *Salmon* gets to the Sea, then that Gristle wears away, or is cast off, as the Eagle is said to cast his Bill, and he recovers his Strength, and comes next Summer to the same River, if it be possible, to enjoy the former Pleasures that there possessed him: For, as one has wittily observed,

* Later Writers account otherwise for this Excrescence. It is peculiar to the Male, and is said to be only a natural temporary Defence given him against other Fish that would devour the Spawn.

† Particularly of *Yorkshire*, *Devonshire*, and *Dorsetshire*, about

ſerved, they are like ſome Perſons of Honour Riches, which have both their Winter and mer Houſes, the freſh Rivers for Summer, and ſalt Water for Winter, to ſpend their Life which is not (as Sir *Francis Bacon* has obſerv his *Hiſtory of Life and Death*) above ten Y And it is to be obſerved, that though they g big in the Sea, yet they grow not fat but in Rivers; and that the further they get from Sea, they are both fatter and better.

Next, I ſhall tell you, that though they very hard Shift to get out of the freſh Rivers the Sea, yet they will make harder to get o the ſalt into the freſh Rivers to ſpawn, or g the Pleaſures they have formerly found in t to which End, they will force themſelves thr Flood-gates, or over Weires, or Hedges, or in the Water, even to a Height beyond c mon Belief. *Geſner* ſpeaks of ſuch Places known to be above eight Feet high above Current: And our *Camden* mentions, in his *tannia*, the like Wonder to be in *Pembroke* where the River *Tivy* falls into the Sea *, and the Fall is ſo downright and high, that the P ſtand and wonder at the Strength and Sleight they ſee the *Salmon* uſe to get out of the Sea the ſaid River; and the Manner and Height Place is ſo notable, that it is known far i Name of *Salmon-leap*; concerning which, this out of *Michael Drayton* †, my hone Friend.

* The chief of theſe is in the River *Wear*, near *Durham* is another very famous at *Old Aberdeen*, and *Inverneſs*; and *lip*, ſeven Miles from *Dublin*, is one thirty Feet high.

† Poem of *Polyolbion*.

And when the Salmon *seeks a fresher Stream to find*
(Which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his Kind)
As he tow'rds Season grows, and stems the watry Tract
Where Tivy falling down, makes an high Cataract,
Forc'd by the rising Rocks that there her Course oppose,
As tho' within her Bounds they meant her to incloſe:
Here when the lab'ring Fiſh does at the Foot arrive,
And finds that by his Strenght he does but vainly ſtrive,
His Tail takes in his Mouth, and (bending like a Bow
That's to full Compaſs drawn) aloft himſelf doth throw;
Then ſpringing at his Height, as doth a little Wand
That bended End to End, and ſtarted from the Hand
Doth caſt itſelf doth caſt, ſo does the Salmon *vault;*
And if at firſt he fail, his ſecond Summer-ſalt
He inſtantly eſſays; and from his nimble Ring,
Now jerking, never leaves until himſelf he fling
Above th' oppoſing Stream. ———

And next I ſhall tell you, it is obſerved by *Geſner* and others, that there is no better *Salmon* than in *England*; and though ſome of our Northern Counties have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of ſo excellent a Taſte.

And, as I have told you, that Sir *Francis Bacon* obſerves, the Age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten Years; ſo let me next acquaint you, that his Growth is very ſudden. It is ſaid that after he is got into the Sea, he becomes from a *Samlet*, not ſo big as a *Gudgeon*, to be a *Salmon*, in as ſhort a Time as a *Gooſing* becomes a *Gooſe*. Much of this has been diſcovered, by tying a Ribband, or ſome known Tape or Thread, in the Tails of young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weires, as they have paſſed towards the ſalt Water, and then by taking a part of them again with the known Mark, at the ſame Place, at their Return from the Sea, which

is usually about six Months after. And the
Experiment has been tried upon young *Swa*
who have, after six Months Absence, been
served to return to the same Chimney, there
make their Nests and Habitations for the Sum
following. Which has inclined many to
that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same R
in which it was bred; as young *Pigeons* taken
of the same Dove-coté, have been found to do.

And you are yet to observe further, that the
Salmon is usually bigger than the Spawner,
that he is more kipper, and less able to endure
Winter in the fresh Water, than the *she* is;
she is, at that Time of looking less kipper
better, as watry, and as bad Meat.

And yet, as there is no general Rule with
an Exception, so there are some few Rivers in
Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmons* in Seaso
Winter; as it is certain there are in the R
Wye, in *Monmothshire*, where their proper Sea
is, as *Camden* observes, from *September* till A
But, my Scholar, the Observation of this,
many other Things, I must in Manners omit,
cause they will prove too large for our nar
Compass of Time; and, therefore, I shall next
upon my Direction how to fish for this *Salmon*.

And for that first, you shall observe, that alt
he stays not long in a Place, as *Trouts* will,
as I said, covets still to go nearer the Spring-he
and that he does not (as the *Trout*, and m
other Fish) lie near the Water Side, or Bank
Roots of Trees, but swims in the deep and
Parts of the Water, usually in the Middle,
near the Ground. There you are to fish for
And he is to be caught as the *Trout* is, w

Worm or *Minnow* (which some call a *Penk*) or with a *Fly**.

§ * §

He is very seldom observed to bite at a *Minnow*, yet sometimes he will, and not often at a *Fly*; but more usually at a *Worm* †, and chiefly at a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, which should be well scowred, that is to say, seven or eight Days in Moss, before you fish with them; and if you double your Time to sixteen or twenty, or more Days, it is still the better, for the Worms will still be clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue so, longer upon your Hook; and they may be kept longer, by keeping them cool, and in fresh Moss, and some advise to put *Camphire* into it. Many use to fish for a *Salmon* with a Ring of Wire on the Top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a Length as is needful when he's hooked; or, to that End, some use a Wheel about the middle of their Rod, or nearer their Hand, which is to be observed better by seeing one of them, than by a large Demonstration of Words.

And now I shall tell you, that which may be called a Secret. I have been a fishing with old *Oliver Henly* (now with God) a noted Fisher both for *Trout* and *Salmon*; and I have observed, that he would take three or four Worms out of his Bag, and put them into a little Box in his Pocket, where he usually let them continue Half an Hour, or more, before he would bait his Hook with them. I have asked him the Reason; and he has replied, "He did but pick the best out, to be in Readiness against he baited the Hook the

F 2 "next

* *A Cadis*, or a *Gentle*, put upon the Tip of a Hook baited with a *Worm*, takes *Salmon-Smelts* beyond Expectation.

† Also at the *Bob* or *Earth-grub*, and *Cadis*; single, or together.

" next Time.". But he has been obſerved, by others and myſelf, to catch more Fiſh than or any other Man, that has ever gone a Fiſh with him, eſpecially *Salmons*. And I have told lately, by one of his moſt intimate Friends that the Box in which he put theſe Worms, anointed with a Drop or two, or three, of the of *Ivy-berries*, made by Expreſſion or Infuſion and that, by the Worms remaining in that an Hour, or a like Time, they had incorporated Kind of Smell that was irreſiſtably attractive, nough to force any Fiſh within the Smell of to bite. This I heard not long ſince from a Friend but have not tried it; yet I grant it probable, refer my Reader to Sir *Francis Bacon*'s *Natural Hiſtory*, where he proves Fiſhes may hear; doubtleſs they may, more probably, ſmell: And am certain, *Geſner* ſays, the *Otter* can ſmell in Water; And I know not but Fiſh may do ſo it is left for a Lover of Angling, or any that delights to improve that Art, to try this Concluſion.

I ſhall alſo impart two other Experiments not tried by myſelf) which I will deliver in ſame Words that they were given me (by an cellent Angler, a very Friend) in Writing, told me, the latter was too good to be told in a learned Language, leſt it ſhould be made common.

Take the ſtinking Oil drawn out of Pease of an Oak, by a Retort, mixed with Turpentine and Hive-Honey; anoint your Bait therewith, and it will doubtleſs draw the Fiſh to it.

* Some adviſe, to anoint only eight Inches of the Line next Hook, which ſhould be always of double Hairs, that it may ſink the better, and muſt be repeated when waſhed off.

The other is, *Vulnera Hederæ grandissimæ, inflicta sudant Balsamum oleo gelato, albicantique persimile, odoris vero longe suavissime* *.

* In *English* —— *Silt the largest Branches of an Ivy-tree, it will sweat an Oil-like Balsam, white in Colour, and of a pleasant Odour.*

Several other Unguents are enumerated by Writers, who shew an Affectation of making a simple Recreation a Mystery; and some of them, with an uncommon Eclat, recommended Ingredients in their Compositions, the bare naming of which, in humane and delicate Tempers, must excite Horror, and sound more like Witches Spells: As a Mixture of Human Fat, Man's Scull or Bones powdered, Mummy, *the Earth taken off a fresh Grave, sprinkled on the Worms*; pretended to do Wonders in Dr. *Charras's* applauded Receipts and [illegible] Secrets of Angling.

The Oil of Spike, that of Polypody of the Oak, of Ivy-berries, or the Gum of the Tree; Assa-fœtida, Turpentine; mentioned by Mr. *Walton*, seem to be, simply applied either to the Line or Baits, as powerful as any, or all. Yet, for the Satisfaction and Trial of the curious Angler, I have selected such Receipts of the compounded Kind, whose Ingredients are innocent, and Effects accounted extraordinary.

Take Juice of Camomile, Half a Spoonful; chymical Oil of Spike, one Dram; Oil of Comfrey, by Infusion, one Dram and an Half; Goose-grease, two Drams: Dissolve them well over the Fire, and let them stand till cold. Keep them in a strong Gass Bottle, unstopped, for three or four Days; then stop it very close, and anoint your Bait, when you angle, with this Composition. Some add to it three Drams of Spirit of Vitriol, and call it the universal and infallible Bait. Or,

Take Assa-fœtida, three Drams; Camphire, one Dram; Venice Turpentine, one Dram: Beat all together, with some Drops of the chymical Oils of Lavender and Camomile, of each an equal Quantity; anoint eight Inches of the Line above the Hook with it, as before directed. That for a Trout in a muddy, and a Gudgeon in a clear Water, has the Preference to any Unguent whatsoever.

Put Camphire in the Moss to your Worms, the Day you angle. *Or dissolve two Ounces of Gum-ivy in a Gill of Spring Water; mix this with a like Quantity of Oil of Sweet Almonds. Get Linnen Thrums (the Ends of the Weavers Warp) well washed and squeezed; wet them in this Composition, and put into them your Worms, well scoured, the Day you angle.* Or,

Take a Handful of Houseleek; Half a Handful of inner-green Bark of Ivy-stalks; pound them well together, and wet your Moss with the expressed Juice. Some commend the Juice of Nettles with the Houseleek; and some the Houseleek only.

It is supremely sweet to any Fish, and yet *A*
fœtida may do the like.

But in these things I have no great Faith, y
grant it probable; and have had from some che
cal Men (namely, from Sir *George Hastings*, a
others) an Affirmation of them, to be very a
vantageous: But no more of these, especially
this Place.

I might here, before I take my Leave of
Salmon, tell you, that there is more that one S
of them; as namely, a *Tecon*, and another, ca
in some Places a *Samlet*, or by some a *Skegger*
but these, and others which I forbear to na
may be Fish of another Kind, and differ, as
know a *Herring* and *Pilchard* do, which, I th
are as different as the Rivers in which they br
and must by me be left to the Disquisitions of

Oil of Anise, Spikenard of Spain, *Sperma-cœti, powdered C*
seed, Galbanum, are all highly commended, and may be tried
or compounded; either mixed up in Paste, or used as Unguen

Make up a Paste *with Mulberry Juice, Hedgehog's Fat, Oil of*
ter Lillies, and a few Drops of Oil of Penny-royal. Some highly
mend this.

Oil of Amber, Rosemary and Myrrh, alike of each, mixed
Worms, *or* in Paste, is said to make the Bait so powerful,
Fish will resist it.

Sea-Gull's Fat, mixed with Eringo Juice, is an attractive C

Unpickled Samphire bruised, made up in Balls for Ground
with Walnut Oil, is excellent for Carp, Bream, Tench. Also

Bean Flour, with a little Honey, wetted with rectified Sp
Wine and a little Oil of Turpentine, made up in small Pellets
thrown in over Night, will make the Fish very eager, and k
at the Place; where you'll be sure to find them next Morning.

* Called also a *Brandlin*. They live in the swiftest
Streams, and never grow bigger than six or eight Inches.
Bait for these is an *Ant-fly*, or a *Red-worm*, as for *Gudgeon*
they are taken often *with them)* on the Scowers. What
particular, they are all *Males*; and, it is believed, preserve
Kind by impregnating the *Salmon-Spawn* where they find it

of more Leisure, and greater Abilities, than I profess myself to have.

And, lastly, I am to borrow so much of your promised Patience, as to tell you, that the *Trout* or *Salmon*, being in Season, have, at their first taking out of the Water, which continues during Life, their Bodies adorned, the one with such red Spots, and the other with such black or blackish, which give them such an Addition of natural Beauty that, I think, was never given to any Woman by the artificial Paint or Patches in which they so much pride themselves in this Age: And so I shall leave them both, and proceed to some Observations of the *Pike*.

Chap. VIII.

Observations of the Luce *or* Pike; *with Directions how to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE mighty *Luce* or *Pike* is taken to be the Tyrant, as the *Salmon* is the King, of the fresh Waters. It is not doubted, but that they are bred, some by Generation, and some not; as namely, of a Weed, called *Pickerel-weed*, unless learned *Gesner* be mistaken; for he says, this Weed, and other glutinous Matter, with the Help of the Sun's Heat in some particular Months, and some Ponds, fitted for it by Nature, do become *Pikes*. But, doubtless, divers *Pikes* are bred after this Manner, or are brought into some Ponds some other Ways, such as are past Man's finding out, of which we have daily Testimonies.

Sir Francis Bacon, in his *History of Life and Death*, observes the *Pike* to be the longest-lived of any Fresh-water Fish; and yet he computes it to

be not usually above forty Years; and others
it to be not above ten: And yet *Gesner* re
tions a *Pike*, taken in *Sweedland*, in the Y
1449, with a Ring about his Neck, declaring
was put into the Pond by *Frederick* the Seco
more than two hundred Years before he was
taken, as by the Inscription of that Ring, be
Greek, was interpreted by the then Bishop
Worms. But of this no more; but that it is
observed, that the old, or very great *Pikes*, hav
them more of State than Goodness, the smaller
middle-sized being, by the choicest Palates,
ferred for the best Meat; as, contrary, the
observed to be better for Age and Bigness.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to
Keepers, because their Life is maintained by
Death of so many other Fish, even those of
own Kind, which has made him by some W
to be called *the Tyrant of the Rivers*, or the *Fr
water Wolf*, by Reason of his bold, greedy,
vouring Disposition; which is so keen, as *G*
relates, that a Man going into a Pond (wher
seems a *Pike* had devoured all the Fish) to w
his Mule, had a *Pike* bit his Mule by the Lip
which he hung so fast, that the Mule drew
out of the Water, and, by that Accident,
Owner of the Mule got the *Pike*. And the
Gesner observes, that a Maid in *Poland* had a
bit her by the Foot, as she was washing Cl
in a Pond. And I have heard the like of a
man in *Killingworth* Pond, not far from *Co*
But I have been assured, by my Friend
Seagrave, of whom I spake to you former
who keeps tame *Otters*, that he hath kno
Pike, in extreme Hunger, fight with one
O

* Page 39.

Otters, for a *Carp* that the *Otter* had caught, and was then bringing out of the Water. I have told you who relate these things, and tell you, they are Persons of Credit; and shall conclude this Observation, by mentioning to you what a wise Man has observed, *It is a hard thing to perſuade the Belly, because it has no Ears.*

But if these Relations be disbelieved, it is too evident to be doubted, that a *Pike* will devour a Fish of his own Kind, that shall be bigger than his Belly, or Throat will receive, and swallow Part of him, and let the other Part remain in his Mouth * till the swallowed Part be digested, and then by Degrees swallow that other Part also; which is unlike the Ox, and some other Beasts, taking their Meat not out of their Mouth immediately into their Belly, but first into some Place betwixt, and then chew it, and digest it (by Degrees) after, which is called *chewing the Cud*: And, doubtless, *Pikes* will bite when they are not hungry, but, as some think, even for very Anger, when a tempting Bait comes near them.

And it is observed, that the *Pike* will eat venomous things, as some Kinds of Frogs are, and yet live without being harmed by them; for, as some say, he has in him a natural Balsam or Antidote against all Poison; and others, that he never eats the venomous Frog till he has first killed her, and then (as Ducks are observed to do to Frogs in Spawning Time, at which Time some Frogs are reckoned to be venomous) so thoroughly washed her, by tumbling her up and down in the Water, that he may devour her without Danger. But

Gesner

* A Pike of a large Size was taken *thus* in the River *Ouse*, by a Person a lesser one, as the Person was drawing it out, who had it in his Mouth both.

Gesner affirms, that a *Polonian* Gentlemen ... faithfully assure him, he had seen two young Ge... at one Time in the Belly of a *Pike*. Doubtless ... *Pike*, in his Height of Hunger, will bite at, ... devour a Dog that swims in a Pond, and ... have been Examples of it, or the like*; for, ... told you, *The Belly has no Ears when Hun... comes upon it.*

The *Pike* is also observed to be a solitary, ... lancholy, and bold Fish; melancholy, because ... always swims or rests himself alone, and never ... Sholes, or with Company †, as *Roach* and *D...* and most other Fish do; and bold, because he fe... not a Shadow, or to see or be seen of any be... as the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Fish do.

It is said by *Gesner*, that the Jaw-bones, ... Hearts, and Galls of *Pikes*, are very medicinal ... several Diseases; to stop Blood, to abate Fevers, ... cure Agues, to oppose or expel the Infection of ... Plague, and to be many ways medicinable and ... ful for the Good of Mankind; but he observ... that the biting of a *Pike* is venomous, and hard ... be cured.

The *Pike* is a Fish that breeds but once a Ye... when other Fish, as namely *Loaches*, breed oft... as we are certain tame Pigeons do, almost ... Month; and yet the Hawk, a Bird of Prey ... the *Pike* is of Fish) breeds but once in tw... Months. His Time of breeding or spawning ... usually about *February*, or somewhat later, ... *Ma...*

* Several Pigeons from a Dove-cot at *Weston Underwood*, ... were lost by the Pikes biting off their Heads, as they came ... in the River.

† The *Pike* preys upon the lesser Sort of his own Species ... of a Pound Weight, will eat another of nearly the same. ... an Instinct for Self-preservation, they are led to avoid one ...

March, as the Weather proves colder or warmer; and his Manner of Breeding is thus: A he or she *Pike* will usually go together out of a River, into some Ditch or Creek, and there the Spawner casts her Eggs, and the Melter hovers over her all that Time, but touches her not.

I might say more of this, but it might be thought Curiosity, or worse, and shall therefore forbear it, and take up so much of your Attention, as to tell you, that the best *Pikes* are noted to be in Rivers; next, those in great Ponds or Meres, and the worst in small Ponds.

But, before I proceed further, I am to tell you, that there is great Antipathy betwixt the *Pike* and some Frogs; and this may appear to the Reader of *Dubravius*, a Bishop in *Bohemia*, who in his Book of Fish and Fish ponds, relates what he says he saw with his own Eyes, nor could he forbear to tell the Reader, which was

"As he, and the Bishop *Thurzo*, were walking "by a large Pond in *Bohemia*, they saw a Frog, "when the *Pike* lay very sleepily and quiet by the "shore Side, leap upon his Head, and the Frog "having expressed his Malice or Anger by his "swoln Cheeks, and staring Eyes, did stretch out "his Legs, and embraced the *Pike*'s Head, and "presently reached them to his Eyes, tearing with "them, and his Teeth, those tender Parts: The "*Pike*, moved with Anguish, moves up and down "the Water, and rubs himself against Weeds, "and whatever he thought might quit him of his "Enemy; but all in vain, for the Frog continued "to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment "the *Pike*, till his Strength failed, and then he sunk "with him to the Bottom of the Water; presently "the Frog appeared again at the Top of the Wa-

"ter,

" ter, and croaked, and seemed to rejoice like
" Conqueror, and then immediately retired to
" secret Hold. The Bishop, that had beheld
" Battle, called his Fisherman to fetch his Ne
" and by all Means to get the *Pike*, that
" might declare what had happened. The
" was drawn up, and both his Eyes eaten out.
" which, when they began to wonder, the Fish
" man bid them forbear, assuring them, he
" certain *Pikes* were often so served."

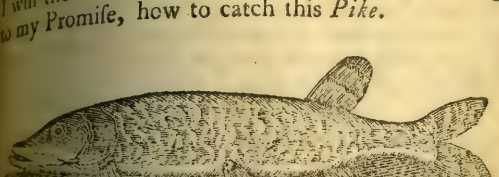
I told this, which is to be read in *Dubravius* to a Friend; who replied, *It was as improbable, to have the Mouse scratch out the Cat's Eyes*: he did not consider that there were *Fishing Frogs* which the *Dalmatians* call the *Water Devil*, which I might tell you as wonderful a Story; but shall tell you, it is not to be doubted, but that there are some *Frogs* so fearful of the *Water Snake*, that when they swim in a Place where they fear to meet with him, they get a Reed across into their Mouth which, if they two meet by Accident, secures the Frog from the Strength and Malice of the Snake. And note, that the Frog swims the fastest of the two.

And, let me tell you, that as there are Water and Land Frogs, so there are Water and Land Snakes. Concerning which, take this Observation; That the Land Snake breeds and hatches her Eggs, which become young Snakes, in some old Dunghill, or like hot Place; but the Water Snake, which is not venomous, and, as I have been assured, by great Observer of such Secrets, does not hatch, but breed her Young alive; which she does not only forsake, but 'bides with them; and, in Case of Surprize, will take them all into her Mouth, and

* Chap. 6.

swim away from any apprehended Danger, and let them out again when she thinks all Danger to be gone. These are Accidents that we Anglers sometimes see, and often talk of.

But whither am I going? I had almost lost myself, by remembering the Discourse of *Dubravius*. I will therefore stop here; and tell you, according to my Promise, how to catch this *Pike*.



§ * §

His feeding is usually on Fish or Frogs *, and sometimes a Weed of his own, called *Pickerel-weed*, of which, I told you, it is conjectured some *Pikes* are bred; for they have observed, that where none have been put into Ponds, they have there found many; and that there has been Plenty of that Weed in those Ponds, and that *that* Weed doth breeds and feeds them: But whether those *Pikes* so bred will ever breed by Generation, as the others do, I shall leave to the Disquisitions of Men of more Curiosity and Leisure; and shall proceed to tell you, that you may fish for a *Pike*, either with a Ledger or a Walking bait. I call that a Ledger-bait, which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain Place, when you shall be absent; and, *that*, a Walking-

* He takes very greedily a *Pigeon's Craw*, well scoured; also a large *Lob-worm*, or two. The Fat of a *Mole*, rubbed on the Worms, is highly prais'ed.

Walking-bait, which you take with you, and P
ever in Motion *. Concerning which two, I
give you this Direction: That your Ledger-bait

* It may be proper to say something here of *Trowling*, w
our Author has omitted, and is a diverting and fashionable W
Pike-fishing. The Tackle may be had all ready prepared
London Shops, where you will be shewn the Use of it. T
Lines are of green or Sky-blue Silk, about thirty Yards l
PLACES. Are a River that has most Turns and Bendings,
too broad, that you may fish both Sides. Near some Log-be
of Flags, Rushes, or Reeds; or a Weed with a small Leaf,
spread long and broad in the Water, that *Pikes* much freque
Stream with many Pits and Bays, is best of all: Of these,
trance and *Bottom* of a Pit, the last especially; and if you
at the *Entrance*, you will be almost sure to meet with another
Bottom. If there is a Ford near to these, with a clear gr
Scower, there you will find good Sport.—BAITS. The bes
Roach, *Dace*, or *Bleak*, newly taken, if the Water is any
thick, or Day cloudy; and nothing is comparable to a large
geon, in a clear Day and Stream. *Great Baits invite him m
little ones are most sure to take him.* Take the Direction here
given, p. 137, how to put them on your Hook.—TIMES,
February, and Part of *March*, all *April*, *August*, *September*,
October; which last is the best Month of all, and a blowing
Day.

Drop in your Bait just before you, then cast on each
Search, and let your third Throw be strait out into the Mid
farther the better, if you have no Annoyance of Weeds or
that will tear and spoil your Bait, and endanger your Hook,
it a little Time to sink; then slowly raise it, by Degrees,
and higher, till you see your Bait; then let it sink again; and
drawing it gently towards you. If a *Pike* takes it, give him
enough, and Time to pouch your Bait; then, when you
moving off, with a slight Jerk hook him, playing him up and
till he is spent sufficient to land him. If he goes *down* the
with your Bait, 'tis commonly a small Fish; if *up*, you may
a large one. At four Feet is your propereſt Depth for *Trowling*.

You must use a Pole of about three Yards in Length, with a
Ring fixed at Top for the Line to run through. The best
der, barked and well dried, which will be tough, and so light
be scarce felt by the Hand.

R. Nobbs, M. A. in 1682 published an intire Treatise
called *The Compleat Troller*, now very scarce. He is an
a good deal of Ingenuity and Humour: But I think I
the Reader an Epitome of all that is considerable in him
the practical Part, in this short Abridgment.

to be a living one (tho' a dead one *may* catch) whether it be a Fish or Frog; and, that you may make them live the longer, you may, or, indeed, *you must*, take this Course.

First, for your Live-bait of Fish, a *Roach* or *Dace* is, I think, best, and most tempting; but a *Perch* * is the longest lived on a Hook; and having cut off the Fin on his Back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take your Knife, which cannot be too sharp, and, betwixt the Head and the Fin on the Back, make such an Incision, or Scar, as you may put the Arming-wire of your Hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the Fish, as Art and Diligence will enable you to do; and so carrying your Arming-wire along his Back, unto or near the Tail of your Fish, betwixt the Skin and the Body of it, draw out that Wire or Arming of your Hook at another Scar, near to the Tail. Then tie him about it with Thread, but no harder than of Necessity, to prevent hurting the Fish: and the better to avoid this, some have a Kind of Probe to open the Way, for the more easy Entrance and Passage of your Wire or Arming. But, as for these, Time, and a little Experience, will teach you better than I can by Words; therefore I will, for the present, say no more of this, but come next to give you some Directions how to bait your Hook with a Frog.

Vina. But, good Master, did you not say, even now, that some Frogs are venomous; and is it not dangerous to touch them?

Pisc.

* Mr. *Nobbes*, aforenamed, says this is the worst Bait of all, and only should be used in Case of Necessity. It is a dark Fish, and the Pike loves a glistering Bait: Therefore he advises to scrape some of the Scales away, to make it show brighter, and would have it used only in *Snap-fishing*. See p. 139, and Note.

Pisc. Yes; but I will give you some Rules and Cautions concerning them. And first, you are to be told, that there are two Kinds of Frogs; that is to say, if I may so express myself, a Flesh and a Fish-Frog; by Flesh-Frogs, I mean Frogs that breed and live on the Land; of these there be several sorts also, and Colours, some being speckled, some greenish, some blackish, or brown. The green Frog, which is a small one, is by Topsel taken to be venomous; and so is the *Padock*, or *Frog-Padock*, which usually keeps or breeds on Land, and is very large, bony, and big, especially the she Frog of that Kind; yet these will come into the Water, but it is not often: And the Land Frogs are-some of them, observed by him, to breed by laying Eggs; and others, of the Slime and Dew of the Earth; and that, in Winter, they turn to Slime again; and, the next Summer, *that* Slime returns to be a living Creature: This is the Opinion of *Pliny*. † And *Cardan* undertakes to give a Reason for the raining of Frogs; but, if it were in my Power, it should rain none but Water-Frogs, for those, I think, are not venomous, especially the right Water-Frog, which, about *February* or *March*, breeds in Ditches, by Slime, and blackish Eggs therein; about which Time, the *he* and *she* Frogs are observed to use divers Summersalts, and to croak, and make a Noise, which the Land-Frog or *Padock* never does. Now, if you find these Water-Frogs you intend to fish for are small, you are to chuse the yellowest that you can get, for these the *Pike* ever likes best. And thus use your Frog, that he may continue long alive.

* In his Folio History of Serpents, with Cuts.

† De Subtil. ex L. 19.

Put your Hook into his Mouth, which you may eaſily do from about the Middle of *April* till *Au-guſt*, and then the Frog's Mouth grows up, and he continues ſo for at leaſt ſix Months, with-out eating, but is ſuſtained, none but HE *whoſe* NAME *is* WONDERFUL, knows how. I ſay, put your Hook, I mean the Arming-wire, through his Mouth, and out at his Gills, and then, with a fine Needle and Silk, ſew the upper Part of his Leg with only one Stitch to the Arming-wire of your Hook, or tie the Frog's Leg, above the upper Joint, to the armed Wire; and, in ſo doing, uſe him as though you loved him, that is, harm him as little as you may poſſibly, that he may live the longer.

And now, having given you this Direction for the baiting your Ledger hook with a live Fiſh or Frog, my next muſt be to tell you, how your Hook, thus baited, muſt be uſed. And it is thus: Having faſtened your Hook to a Line, which, if it be not fourteen Yards long, ſhould not be leſs than twelve; you are to faſten that Line to any Bough * near to a Hole where a *Pike* is, or is likely to lie, or have a Haunt, and then wind your Line on any forked Stick, all your Line, except Half a Yard of it, or rather more, and ſplit that forked Stick with ſuch a Notch at one End of it, as may keep the Line from any more of it ra-velling from about the Stick, than ſo much of it as you intend. Chuſe your Stick to be of that Bigneſs, as may keep the Fiſh or Frog from pulling it under Water till the *Pike* bites; and then the *Pike*, having pulled the Line forth of the Cleft or Notch of that Stick

* This may be done to a long ſlender Aſh or Willow-Pole, ſtuck into the Banks. You may lay three or more of theſe, at Diſtances, and is called *Trimmer-fiſhing*.

Stick in which it was gently faſtened, will have l
enough to go to his Hold, and pouch the
And, if you would have this Ledger-bait to
at a fixed Place, undiſturbed by Wind, or o
Accidents, which may drive it to the Shore
(for you are to note, that it is likelieſt to cat
Pike in the Midſt of the Water) then hang a
Plummet of Lead, a Stone, or a Piece of Tile
a Turf, in a String, and caſt it into the W
(with the forked Stick) to hang upon the Gro
to be an Anchor to keep your Stick from mo
out of your intended Place till the *Pike* co
This I take to be a very good Way to uſe ſo m
Ledger-baits as you intend to make Trial
or if you bait your Hooks thus with live Fi
Frogs, and in a windy Day faſten them
Bough or Bundle of Straw, and, by the Help
that Wind, can get them to move croſs a *Pon*
Mere, you are like to ſtand ſtill on the Shore
ſee Sport preſently, if there be any Store of *P*
Or theſe live Baits may make Sport, being
about the Body or Wings of a Gooſe or D
and ſhe chaſed over a Pond; and the like
be done, with turning three or four live
thus faſtened to Bladders, or Boughs, or Bo
of Hay, or Flags, to ſwim down a River, wh
you walk quietly alone on the Shore, and
ſtill in Expectation of Sport; the reſt muſt
taught you by Practice, for Time will not a
me to ſay more of this Kind of fiſhing with
Baits.

And for your dead Bait for a *Pike*, *that*
may be taught by one Day's going a fiſhing
me, or any one elſe that fiſhes for him; for
baiting your Hook with a dead *Gudgeon*,
Ro

Roach, and moving it up and down the Water *, is too easy a Thing to take up any Time to direct you in it; and yet, because I cut you short in that, I will commute for it, by telling you that which I was told me for a Secret. — It is this.

Dissolve Gum of Ivy in Oil of Spike, and therewith anoint your dead Bait for a Pike, and then put it into a likely Place, and, when it has lain a short Time at the Bottom, draw it towards the Top of the Water, and so up the Stream, and it is more than likely that you have a *Pike* follow with more than common Eagerness. And some affirm, that any Bait, anointed with *the Marrow of the Thigh-bone of an Hern* †, is a great Temptation to any Fish. — These have not been tried by me, but told me, by a Friend of note, that pretended to do me a Courtesy.

But if this Direction to catch a *Pike* do you no good, yet I am certain *this*, how to roast him when he is caught, is choicely good, for I have tried it, and is somewhat the better for not being common: But, with my Direction, you must take this Caution, that your *Pike* must not be a small one, that is, it *must* be more than Half a Yard, or *should be* bigger.

First, open your Pike *at the Gills, and, if need be, cut also a little Slit towards his Belly; out of these*

* This is called *Snap-fishing*. The best Times are *February*, or early in *March*. Your Line should be of Whip-cord, tied to a long manageable Pole; bait as directed before: Let your *Fish-Bait* down a very little under Water, dropping it down often, so as to make a Splash or Noise, among Rushes, or a likely Haunt, and raising it and so again. As soon as you feel or see a *Pike* touch, strike upright, and with a strong Jerk throw him to Land. There are double Hooks and Wire, for this, sold at all the Shops.

† To be had of any of the *London* Poulterers.

these take his Guts, and keep his Liver, which
are to shred very small, with Thyme, Sweet-
joram, and a little Winter-savory; to these put
pickled Oysters, and some Anchovies (two or
both these last whole; for the Anchovies will
but the Oysters should not: To these you must
also a Pound of fresh Butter, which you are to
with the Herbs that are shred, and let them
well salted (if the Pike *be more than a Yard*
then you may put into these Herbs more than a P
or if he be less, then less Butter will suffice);
being thus mixed, with a Blade or two of
must be put into the Pike's *Belly; then sew*
so as to keep all the Butter in, if it be possible
not, as much as you can, but take not off the Sc
then thrust the Spit through his Mouth and
his Tail, and with five or six split Sticks
very thin Lathes, and a convenient Quantity
Tape or Filleting, tie them round the Pike's
from Head to Tail, and the Tape tied some
thick, to prevent his breaking or falling off.
him be roasted very leisurely, and often basted
Claret Wine, and Anchovies and Butter, mixed
gether, and also with what Moisture falls from
into the Pan. When you have roasted him
ciently, hold under him, while you unwind or cut
Tape that ties him, such a Dish as you propose to
him out of, and let him fall into it, with
Sauce that is roasted in his Belly; by this Means
the Pike *will be kept unbroken, and compleat.*
to the Sauce which was within, and to that in the
Pan, you are to add a fit Quantity of best Butter
and squeeze the Juice of three or four Oranges
Lastly, you may put into the Pike *with the Oy-*
sters, two Cloves of Garlick, and take it out
out when the Pike *is cut off the Spit: or, if*

the Sauce the Flavour, let the Dish be rubbed with the using, or not using this Garlick, is left to your Discretion *.

This Dish of Meat is too good for any but Anglers, or very honest Men; and, I trust, you will prove both; and, therefore, I have trusted you with this Secret.

Let me next acquaint you, that *Gesner* tells us, that there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and that the largest that are in the Lake *Thrasimene*, in *Italy*; and the next, if not equal to them, are the *Pikes* of *Poland*; and, that in *England*, *Lincolnshire* boasts to have the biggest †. Just so doth *Sussex* of four sorts of Fish, namely, an *Arundel Mullet*, a *Chichester Lobster*, a *Shelsey Cockle*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

But I will take up no more of your Time with this Relation, but proceed to give you some Observations of the *Carp*, and how to angle for and dress him — But not till he is caught.

CHAP. IX.

Observations of the Carp; *with Directions how to fish for him.*

THE *Carp* is the Queen of Rivers, a stately, a good, and a very subtle Fish, that

* For BOILING, *dress him thus:* Open your *Pike*, rub him with Salt and Claret Wine; save the Milt, a little of the Blood and liver; cut him in two or three Pieces, and put him in when the Water boils, and with him Sweet-marjoram, Savoury, Thyme, or Fennel, with a good Handful of Salt; let him boil near Half an Hour. For the Sauce, take sweet Butter, Anchovies, Horse-Radish, Claret Wine, of each a good Quantity; a little of the Blood, Shalot, Garlick, if approved) some Lemon sliced: Beat them well together, and serve him.

R. Nobbes, in *Compleat Troller*.

† *Ouse*, from between *Newport-Pagnel* and *Bedford*, has them of twenty Pounds, and yields Plenty.

that was not at first bred, nor has been long in *England*, but is now naturalized. It is said, they were brought hither by one Mr. *Mascal* *, a Gentleman that then lived at *Plumsted*, in *Sussex*, a County that abounds more with this Fish than any in this Nation. You may remember that I told you *Gesner* says, there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and doubtless, there was a Time, about an hundred, or a few more Years ago, when there were no Carps in *England*, as may seem to be affirmed by *Richard Baker*, in whose Chronicle you may find these Verses:

Carps *and* Turkies, Hops *and* Beer,
Came all to England *in a Year.*

And, doubtless, as of Sea-Fish, the *Herring* is soonest out of Water; and, of Fresh-water Fish, the *Trout*; so (except the *Eel*) the *Carp* endures most Hardness, and lives longest † out of his own proper Element; and, therefore, the Report of the *Carps*, being brought out of a foreign, into this Nation, is the more probable.

Carps and *Loaches* are observed to breed several Months in one Year, which *Pikes*, and most other Fish, do not; and this is partly proved by tame and wild Rabbets, as also by some Ducks, which will lay Eggs nine of the twelve Months; and yet there are other Ducks that lay not longer than about one Month: And it is the rather believed, because

* *Anno* 1524, in the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. This Gentleman, Mr. *Leonard Mascal*, wrote himself a Treatise of Fishing, which is this Account.

† Mr. *Ray* says, that in *Holland* they hang them up in a Cellar or cool Place, in a small Net full of wet Moss, with only their Heads out, and feed them with white Bread soaked in Milk for [illegible] Days.

ll scarce or never take a Male *Carp* without a Melt, or a Female without a Roe or *Spawn*, and, the most Part, very *much*, especially all the mmer Season. It is remarked, that they breed e naturally in Ponds, than in running Waters they breed there at all) and those that live in ers are taken, by Men of the best Palates, to much the better Meat.

And it is observed, that, in some Ponds, *Carps* not breed, especially in cold Ponds; but, ere they will breed, they multiply innumerably; *ttle* and *Pliny* says, six Times a Year, if there no *Pikes* or *Pearch* to devour their Spawn, when s cast upon Grass, or Flags, or Weeds, where it ten or twelve Days before it is enlivened.

The *Carp*, if he have Water-room and good d, will grow to a very great Bigness and Length: ve heard, to be much above a Yard long. It id by *Jovius*, who has writ of Fishes, that in e Lake *Lurian*, in *Italy*, *Carps* have thriven to e more than fifty Pounds Weight; which is the se probable, for as the Bear is conceived and rn suddenly; and, being born, is but short-ed: So, on the contrary, the *Elephant* is said e *two* Years carried in his Dam; some think e is *ten*, and, being born, grows in Bigness twenty rs, and lives to the Age of an hundred. The *ocodile* is also very long-lived; and, more than t, all that long Life he thrives in Bigness: And think some *Carps* do, especially in some Places, ugh I never saw one above twenty-three Inches, was a great and goodly Fish; but have assured, there are of a far greater Size, and in *gland* too *.

Now,

* The largest we have an Account of, was taken in the *Thames*, *Hampton-Court*, and weighed *thirteen Pounds*. *Willoughby* says increase to *twenty*.

Now, as the Increase of *Carps* is wonderful, their Number, so there is not a Reason found I think by any, why they should breed in Ponds, and not in others of the same Nature Soil, and all other Circumstances. And as Breeding, so are their Decays also very myste I have both read it, and been told, by a Gentl of tried Honesty, that he has known sixty or large *Carp* put into several Ponds near a H where, by reason of the Stakes in the Pond the Owners constant being near to them, it wa possible they should be stolen away from him that when he has, after three or four Y emptied the Pond, and expected an Increas breeding young ones (for, that they might he had, as the Rule is, put in three Melter one Spawner) he has, I say, found neither a nor old *Carp* remaining. And the like I known of one that has almost watched his and at a like Distance of Time, at the fishi it, found, of seventy or eighty large *Carp* above five or six; and he had forborne long fish the said Pond, but that he saw, in a h in Summer, a large *Carp* swim near to the T the Water, with a Frog upon his Head; * he, that Occasion, caused his Pond to be let dry; of seventy or eighty *Carps*, only found five and those very sick and lean, with every Frog sticking so fast on the Heads of the that the Frog would not be got off without Force, or killing. The Gentleman that told this to me, told me he saw it; and did decl Belief to be, and I also believe the same, t thought the other *Carps* that were so strange

* The same was said of the Pike, pa. 131; and only and may hold true of other Fish, and deserves Inquiry.

were so killed by Frogs, and then devoured. And a Person of Honour assured me he had seen a string or *Collar of Tadpoles* *, like a Chain, hang about a *Pike's* Neck to kill him; whether for Meat or Malice, must be to me a Question.

But I am fallen into this Discourse by Accident, of which I might say more, but it has proved longer than I intended, and possibly may not to you be considerable: I shall therefore give you three or four more short Observations of the *Carp*, and then fall upon some Directions how you shall fish for him.

The Age of *Carps* is, by Sir *Francis Bacon* †, observed to be but ten Years; yet others think they live longer. *Gesner* says, a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred Years: but most conclude, that, contrary to the *Pike* or *Luce*, all *Carps* are better for Age and Bigness. The Tongues of *Carps* are noted to be choice and costly Meat, especially to them that love them; but *Gesner* says, *Carps* have no Tongues (like other Fish) but a Piece of Flesh in their Mouth *like a Tongue*, and should be called a Palate. It is certain it is choicely good, and the *Carp* is to be reckoned amongst those leather-mouthed Fish, which I told you have their Teeth in their Throat; and, for that Reason, is very seldom lost by breaking his Hold, if your Hook be once stuck into his Chaps.

I told you, that Sir *Francis Bacon* thinks the *Carp* lives but ten Years; but *Janus Dubravius* ‡ says, that *Carps* begin to spawn at the Age of three Years, and continue to do so till thirty. He says also, that, in the Time of their breeding, which is

G in

* Young Frogs. † *Hist. of Life and Death.*
‡ In his Book of *Fish and Fish-ponds.*

in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the Earth and Water, and apted them for Generation, that three or four Male *Carps* will follow a Female, and she putting on a seeming Coyness, they follow her through Weeds and Flags, where she lets fall her Eggs or Spawn (which sticks fast to the Weeds) and they their Melt upon it, and so it becomes, in short Time, to be a living Fish. It is thought a *Carp* does this several Months in the Year; and is believed, most Fish breed after this Manner, except the Eel. And it has been observed, that when the Spawner has weakened herself by doing that natural Office, that two or three Melters have helped her from off the Weeds, by bearing her up on both Sides, and guarding her into the Deep.—It may seem a Curiosity not worth observing, yet others have judged it worth their Time and Costs, to make Glass-Hives, and order them in such a Manner, as to see how Bees have bred and made their Honey-combs, and how they have obeyed their chief, and governed their Commonwealth. But it is thought that all *Carps* are not bred by Generation, but that some breed otherways, as some *Pikes* do.

The Physicians make the Galls and Stones in the Heads of *Carps* to be very medicinal; but, it is not to be doubted, that in *Italy* they make great Profit of the Spawn of *Carps* *, by selling it to the *Jews*, who make it into red *Caviare*, the *Jews* not being by their Law, admitted to eat of *Caviare* made of the *Sturgeon*, that being a Fish that wants Scales, and by them to be reputed unclean †.

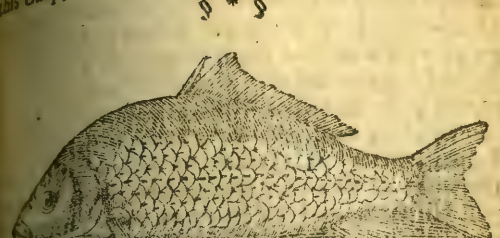
Much more might be said out of him and *Aristotle*, which *Dubravius* often quotes in his Book concerning

* It is a rich and picquant Food (some say) the finest eating in the World.

† *Levit.* xi. 10.

course of Fishes; but it might rather perplex than satisfy you; and therefore I shall chuse to direct you how to catch, rather than spend more Time in discoursing either of the Nature or Breeding of this *Carp*,

§ * §



or of any more Circumstances concerning him; but yet I shall remember you of what I told you before, that he is a very subtle Fish, and hard to be caught.

And my first Direction is, if you will fish for a *Carp*, you must put on a very large Measure of Patience, especially for a River *Carp*: I have known a very good Fisher angle diligently four or six Hours in a Day, for three or four Days together, for one of them, and not have a Bite. And you are to note, that in some Ponds it is as hard to catch a *Carp*, as in a River; that is to say, where they have Store of Feed, and the Water is of a clayish Colour. But you are to remember I have told you, there is no Rule without an Exception; and therefore being possessed with that Hope and Patience which I wish to all Fishers, especially the *Carp* Angler, I shall tell you with what Bait to fish

for him. But first, it must be either early or la
and in hot Weather * (for he will seldom bite
cold) you cannot be too early or too late at
and some have been so curious to say, *The Tent*
April *is a fatal Day for* Carps †. He bites either
Worms or Paste: Of Worms, I think the
Marsh or Meadow worm, is best; but poss
another Worm, not too big, may do as well,
so may a green *Gentle*. And, for Pastes, there
almost as many sorts as there are Medicines for
Tooth-ach; but, doubtless, sweet Pastes are be
I mean, made with Honey or with Sugar; wh
should be thrown into the Pond or Place in wh
you fish for him, some Hours or longer, before
undertake your Trial of Skill with the Angle-roo
and, doubtless, if it be thrown into the Water a D
or two before, at several Times, in small Pellets,
are the likelier to obtain your desired Sport.
in a large Pond, to draw them to any cert
Place, that they may the better, and with m
Hope, be fished for, you are to throw in ei
Grains or Blood mixed with Cow dung, or w
Bran, or any Garbage, as Chickens-guts, or
like, and then some of your small sweet Pellets w
which you purpose to angle; these Pellets being
few of them also, thrown in as you are angl
your Sport will be the better.

Y

* About the Noon of such a Day he will take a *Lob-worm*
Top, as a *Trout* does a *Fly*: Or, between the Weeds, in a
Place, sink it without a Float, about eight Inches in the W
with only one large Shot on the Line, which is to be loop
the Leaf of some Weed: Then retire, keeping your Eye upon
Shot, till you see it taken away, with about a Foot of the L
and then you may venture to strike; but keep him tight, and
of the Weeds. Great Numbers of *Carp* have been taken
Way.

† Allowing for Alteration (now) of *Stile*.

‡ Plumb at that Time also the Depth of the Water.

Your Paste must be thus made: Take the Flesh of a Rabbet, or Veal, cut small, and Bean-flour, and, if that may not be easily got, other Flour; mix these together, and put to them either Sugar, or *Honey*, which I think *better*, and beat these in a Mortar, or work them some Time in your hands, they being very clean; then make it into balls, one or two or three, as you like best, for your use; but you must pound or work it so long, as to make it tough enough to hang upon your Hook without washing from it, yet not too hard: Or, that you may the better keep it on your Hook, you may knead with your Paste a little, and not much, white or yellowish Wool *.

And, if you would have this Paste keep all the Year for any other Fish, mix with it Virgin's-wax, and clarified Honey, work them with your Hands before the Fire into Balls, and they will keep that whole Time.

And if you fish for a *Carp* with *Gentles*, then put upon your Hook a small Piece of Scarlet, about this Bigness [illegible] soaked in, or anointed with *Oil of Peter*, called by some Oil of the Rock; and if your *Gentles* be put two or three Days before into a Box or Horn anointed with Honey, and so put upon your Hook as to preserve them to be living, you are as like to kill this crafty Fish this Way, as any other: But still, as you are fishing, chew a little white or brown Bread in your Mouth, and cast it into the Pond, about the Place where your Float swims. Other Baits there are, but these, with Diligence and patient Watchfulness, will do better than any I have ever practised, or heard of. Also yet I shall tell you, that the Crumbs of white

* Mix *this* in all Pastes, to prevent their washing off the Hook.

Bread and Honey, made into a Paſte, is a
Bait for a *Carp*, and is more eaſily made.
having ſaid thus much of this Fiſh, my next
courſe ſhall be of the *Bream*, which ſhall not
ſo tedious, and therefore I deſire the Continua
of your Attention.

But, firſt, I will tell you how to make this
that is ſo cautious to be caught, ſo curious a Diſh
Meat, as ſhall make him worth all your Labour
Patience, and though it is not without ſome Tro
and Charge, yet it will recompenſe both.

Take a Carp, *alive if poſſible, ſcour him,*
rub him clean with Water and Salt, but ſcale
not; then open him, and put him, with his Blood
Liver, into a ſmall Kettle; then take Sweet-marjor
Thyme, and Parſley, of each Half an Handful,
Sprig of Roſemary, and another of Savoury,
them into two or three ſmall Bundles, and put th
to your Carp, *with four or five whole Onions,*
peckled Oyſters, and three Anchovies. Then
upon your Fiſh *as much Claret Wine as will*
cover him, and ſeaſon your Claret well with S
Cloves, Mace, and the Rinds of Oranges and
mons; cover your Pot, and ſet it on a quick F
till it be ſufficiently boiled; then take out the C
and lay it with the Broth into the Diſh, and
upon it a Quarter of a Pound of freſh Butter
and beaten with Half a Dozen Spoonfuls of
Broth, the Yolks of two or three Eggs, and ſom
the Herbs ſhred: Garniſh your Diſh with L
and ſo ſerve it up. And much Good do you.

Dr.

CHA

CHAP. X.

Observations on the Bream, *and Directions to catch him.*

Pisc. THE *Bream*, being at full Growth, is a large and ſtately Fiſh; he will breed both in Rivers and Ponds; but loves beſt to live in Ponds, where, if he likes the Water and Air, he will not only grow to be very large, but as fat as a Hog. He is by *Geſner* taken to be more pleaſant or ſweet, than wholeſome. This Fiſh is long in growing, but breeds exceedingly in a Water that pleaſes him; yea, in many Ponds ſo faſt, as to over-ſtore them, and ſtarve the other Fiſh.

He is very broad, with a forked Tail, and his Scales ſet in excellent Order; he hath large Eyes, a narrow ſucking Mouth, two ſets of Teeth, and a lozing-like Bone, to help his grinding. The Melter is obſerved to have two large Melts, and the Female two large Bags of Eggs or Spawn.

Geſner reports, that, in *Poland*, a great Number of large *Breams* were put into a Pond, which, in the next following Winter, were frozen up into one intire Ice, and not one Drop of Water remaining, nor one of theſe Fiſh to be found, though they were diligently ſearched for; yet the next Spring, when the Ice was thawed, and the Weather warm and freſh Water got into the Pond, they all appeared again. This *Geſner* affirms, and I quote my Author, becauſe it ſeems almoſt as incredible as the *Reſurrection* to an *Atheiſt*. But it may win ſomething in Point of believing it, to him that conſiders the Breeding or Renovation of the Silk-worm, and of many Inſects. And that is

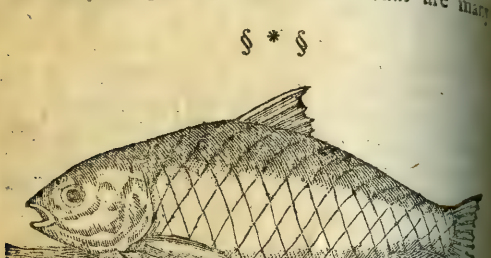
conſiderable which Sir *Francis Bacon* * obſerves that there are ſome Herbs that die and ſpring every Year, and others endure longer.

But though ſome do not, yet the *French* eſteem this Fiſh highly; and, to that End, have this Proverb, *He that hath* Breams *in his Pond, is able to bid his Friend welcome.* And it is noted, that the beſt Parts of a *Bream* are his Belly and Head †.

Some ſay, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their Eggs and Melt together; and ſo there is in many Places a baſtard Breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous.

The Baits good to catch this *Bream* are many.

§ * §



Firſt, *Paſte* made of brown Bread and Honey. *Gentles*, or the Brood of *Waſps* that are young, and then not unlike *Gentles*, and ſhould be hardened in an Oven, or dried on a Tile before the Fire, to make them tough. Or there is at the Red-

* Hiſt. of Life and Death, *p.* 20.

† The Connoiſſeurs in eating, commend the Head of a *Carp*, the Back of a *Tench*, the Middle of a *Bream*, and the Tail of a *Pike*.

Root of Docks, Flags, or Rushes, in watry Places, a Worm not unlike a Maggot (at which *Tench* will bite freely); or he will bite at a Grashopper, with his Legs nipped off, in *June* and *July*; or at several Flies under Water, which may be found on Sedges that grow near the Water-side. I doubt not, but there are many other Baits that are good *, but I will turn them all into this most excellent Bait, either for a *Carp* or *Bream*, in any River or Mere: It was given me by a most honest and excellent Angler, and hoping you will prove both, I will impart it to you.

1. Let your Bait be as big a red Worm as you can find, without a Knot. Get a Pint or Quart of them in an Evening, in Garden-walks, or chalky Commons, after a Shower of Rain; put them with Moss, well washed and picked, the Water squeezed out of it as dry as you can, into an earthen Pot set dry, and change the Moss fresh every three or four Days for three Weeks, or a Month together, then your Bait will be at the best, for it will be clear and lively.

* In a shallow, sandy Bottom of a River, which leads into any deep Hole, throw four or five Handfuls of *Marsh-worms* cut in pieces, which will soon drive down into the Hole. Use a long rod of good Strength, a proportionable Line, a small Hook tied to Indian Grass, and no Float; fix a cut Shot six Inches above the Hook, and next it a small bored Bullet. The Use of the Shot is, to prevent the Bullet slipping lower. Fish with a short, well-scoured *Marsh-worm*, throw into the Shallow, and the Stream will carry it into the Hole. By this Method, an experienced Angler can *take more* Breams *in two Hours, than he could carry away.*

When you find a deep, quiet Hole, near the Bank, plumb it over Night, and Ground-bait it with Grains well squeezed. Next morning early chuse a Stand, out of Sight; bait your Hook with a large red Worm, and drop it gently into the Hole: Observe whether the Water be risen or fallen since you plumbed it, and make an Allowance accordingly.

2. Having thus prepared your Baits, get your Tackle ready and fitted after this fort. Take three long angling Rods, and as many more Silk, or Silk and Hair-lines, and as many large Swan or Goose quill Floats: Then take a Piece of Lead, made after this Manner, and faſten them to the lower Ends of your Lines: Then faſten your Link-hook alſo to the Lead, and let there be about a Foot or ten Inches between the Lead and the Hook, but be ſure the Lead be heavy enough to ſink the Float a little under Water, and not the Float to bear up the Lead, for the Lead muſt lie on the Ground.

Note, that your Link next the Hook may be ſmaller than the reſt of your Line, if you dare adventure, for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Pearch*, who will aſſuredly viſit your Hooks, till they be taken out (as I will ſhew you afterwards) before either *Carp* or *Bream* will come near to bite. *Note* alſo, that when the Worm is well baited, it will creep up and down, as far as the Lead will give Leave, which much inticeth the Fiſh to bite without Suſpicion.

3. Having thus prepared your Baits, and fitted your Tackling, repair to the River, where you have ſeen them ſwim in Sculs or Shoals, in the Summer-time, in a hot Afternoon, about three or four of the Clock; and watch their going forth to their deep Holes, and returning (which you may well diſcern) for they return about Four of the Clock, moſt of them ſeeking Food at the Bottom, yet one or two will lie at Top of the Water, rolling and tumbling themſelves, whilſt the reſt are under him at the Bottom, and ſo you ſhall perceive him to keep Centinel; then mark where he plays moſt, and ſtays longeſt (which commonly is in the broadeſt

broadeſt and deepeſt Place of the River, and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear Bottom, and a convenient Landing-place, take one of your Angles, ready fitted as aforeſaid, and ſound the Bottom, which ſhould be about eight or ten Feet deep, two Yards from the Bank is beſt. Then conſider with yourſelf, whether that Water will riſe or fall by the next Morning, by Reaſon of any Water-mills near; and, according to your Diſcretion, take the Depth of the Place where you mean after to caſt your Gronnd-bait and to fiſh, to Half an Inch; that the Lead lying on or near the Ground-bait, the Top of the Float may only appear upright, Half an Inch above the Water.

Thus you having found, and fitted for the Place and Depth thereof, go home and prepare your Ground-bait, which is, next to the Fruit of your Labours, to be regarded.

The Ground bait.

Take a Peck, or a Peck and Half (according to the Greatneſs and Deepneſs of the Stream, where you mean to angle) of ſweet groſs-ground Barly-malt, and boil it in a Kettle, one or two Walms enough, then ſtrain it through a Bag into a Tub (*the Liquor whereof hath often done my Horſe much good*) and, when the Bag and Malt is near cold, take it down to the Water-ſide, about Eight or Nine of the Clock in the Evening, and not before; put in two Parts of your Ground-bait, ſqueezed hard between both your Hands; it will ſink preſently to the Bottom, and be ſure it may reſt in the very Place where you mean to angle. If the Stream run hard, or move a little, caſt your Malt in Handfuls ſomewhat the higher *up* the Stream:

You

You may, between your Hands, close the M... so fast, that the Water will hardly part it with ... Fall.*

Your Ground thus baited, and Tackling fitted, leave your Bag, with the rest of your Tackling and Ground-bait, near the Sporting place all Night, and in the Morning, about Three or Four o'Clock, visit the Water-side, but not too near, for ... have a Watchman, and are watchful themselves too.

Then gently take one of your three Rods, and bait your Hook, casting it over your Ground-bait, and gently and secretly draw it to you, till the Lead rests about the Middle of the Ground-bait.

Take then a second Rod, and cast in about a Yard above, and your third a Yard below the first Rod, and fix the Rods in the Ground; but go yourself so far from the Water-side, that you perceive nothing but the Top of the Floats, which you must watch most diligently; then, when you have a Bite, you shall perceive the Top of your Float to sink suddenly into the Water; yet, nevertheless, be not too hasty to run to your Rods, until you see *that* Line goes clear away; then creep to the Water-side, and give as much Line as you possibly can: If it be a good *Carp* or *Bream*, then go to the farther Side of the River; then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a Bent a little while; for, if you both pull, you are sure to lose your Game; for either your Line, or Hook, or Hook will break; and, after you have overcome them, they will make noble Sport, and are very shy to be landed: The *Carp* is far stronger and mettlesome than the *Bream*.

Ma...

* The best Way is to put a Pebble proportioned to your Bait within the middle, closing it well.

Much more is to be obferved of this Kind of Fifh and fifhing; but it is far fitter for Experience and Difcourfe, than Paper. Only thus much is neceffary for you to know, and to be mindful and careful of, that if the *Pike* or *Pearch* breed in that River, they will be fure to bite firft, and muft firft be taken; and, for the moft Part, they are very Large, and will repair to your Ground-bait; not that they will eat of it, but will feed and fport themfelves amongft the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The Way to difcern the *Pike*, and take him, if you miftruft your *Bream*-Hook (for I have taken a *Pike* a Yard long feveral Times at my *Bream*-Hooks, and fometimes he hath had the Luck to fhare my Line) may be thus,

Take a fmall *Bleak*, *Roach*, or *Gudgeon*, bait it, and fet it alive among your Rods, two Feet deep from the Cork, with a little red Worm on the Point of the Hook; then take a few Crumbs of white Bread, or fome of the Ground-bait, and fprinkle it gently amongft your Rods. If Mr. *Pike* be there, then the little Fifh will fkip out of the Water at his Appearance, but the live-fet Bait is fure to be taken.

Thus continue your Sport from Four in the Morning till Eight; and, if it be a gloomy, windy Day, they will bite all Day long. But this is too long to ftand to your Rods at one Place, and it will fpoil your Evening Sport that Day, which is this:

About Four of the Clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited Place, and, as foon as you come to the Water-fide, caft in one Half of the reft of your Ground-bait, and ftand off; then, whilft the Fifh are gathering together (for there they will moft certainly come for their Supper) you may take a Pipe

of

of Tobacco, and then *in* with your three Rod as in the Morning. You will find excellent Sport that Evening till Eight of the Clock; then cast the Residue of your Ground-bait, and next Morning, by Four of the Clock, visit them again for four Hours, which is the best Sport of all; and after that, let them rest till you and your Friends have a Mind for more Sport.

From St. *James-tide* unto *Bartholomew-tide* is the best; when they have had all the Summer's Food, they are the fattest.

Observe lastly, that, after three or four Days fishing together, your Game will be very shy and wary, and you shall hardly get above a Bite or two at a Baiting; then your only Way is to desist from your Sport about two or three Days; and, in the mean Time, on the Place you late baited, and again intend to bait, you shall take a Turf of green, but short Grass, as big, or bigger, than a round Trencher; to the Top of this Turf, on the green Side, with a Needle and green Thread, fasten, one by one, as many little red Worms as will near cover all the Turf: Then take a round Board or Trencher, make a Hole in the Middle thereof, and through the Turf, placed on the Board or Trencher, with a String or Cord as long as is fitting, tied to a Pole, let it down to the Bottom of the Water, for the Fish to feed upon without Disturbance, about two or three Days*; and after you have drawn it away, you may fall to, and enjoy your former Recreation.

B. A.

* Some use a Tin or Wooden Box, made full of Holes, filled with Worms, which they sink in the abovesaid Manner.

CHAP. XI.

Observations of the Tench, *and Advice how to angle for him.*

THE *Tench*, the Physician of Fishes, is observed to love Ponds better than Rivers, and Pits better than either: Yet *Camden* observes, there is a River in *Dorsetshire* * that abounds with *Tenches*; but, doubtless, they retire to the most deep and quiet Places in it.

This Fish hath very large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red Circle about his Eyes, which are big, and of a Gold Colour, and from either Angle of his Mouth there hangs down a little Barb: In every *Tench*'s Head are two small Stones, which foreign Physicians make great Use of; but he is not commended for wholsome Meat, though there is very much Use made of them for outward Applications. *Rondeletius* says, *That*, at his being at *Rome*, *he saw a great Cure done by applying a Tench to the Feet of a very sick Man.* This was done after an unusual Manner, by certain *Jews*. And it is observed, that many of those People have various Secrets, yet unknown to Christians; Secrets that have never yet been written, but have been since the Days of their *Solomon* (who knew the Nature of all things, even from the Cedar to the Shrub) delivered by Tradition from Father to Son, and so from Generation to Generation, without Writing, or unless it were casually, without the least communicating them to any other Nation or Tribe; for,

* The River *Stower*.

for, to do that, they account a Profanation. It is thought that they, or some Spirit worse, told us that Lice, swallowed alive, were a Cure for the Jaundice. This, and other Medicines, were discovered by them or Revelation, doubtless we attained them not by Study.

Well, this Fish, besides his eating, is very useful, both dead and alive, for the Good of Mankind: But I meddle no more with that, my humble Art teaches no such Boldness; there are too many foolish Pretenders to Physick and Divinity that think themselves fit to tamper with hidden Secrets, and so bring Destruction to their Followers. I will not meddle with them farther, than to wish them wiser; and shall tell you next, for I hope I may be so bold, that the *Tench* is the Physician of Fishes, for the *Pike** especially; and that the *Pike* being either sick or hurt, is cured by the Touch of the *Tench*:

Close to his Scales the kind Physician *glides,*
And drops a healing Balsam from his Sides.
Piscatory Eclogues, *Eccl.*

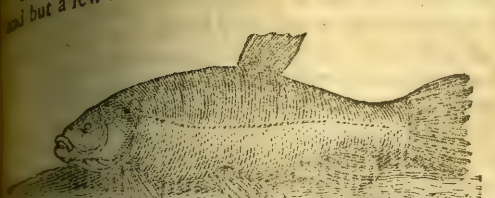
And it is observed, that the *Tyrant Pike* will not be a Wolf to his Physician, but forbears to devour him, though he be never so hungry.

This Fish, that carries a natural Balsam in him to cure both himself and others, loves yet to live in very foul Water, and amongst Weeds: And yet I am sure he eats pleasantly, and, doubtless you will think so too, if you taste him.

§ * §

* *Camden* confirms this. I have seen, *says he*, the Bellies of Pikes opened to shew their Fatness, and their gaping Wounds presently closed by the Touch of *Tenches*, and, by their glutinous Slime, perfectly healed up. *Britan.* p. 322.

I shall therefore proceed to give you some few, and but a few Directions, how to catch this *Tench*,



of which I have given you these Observations.

He will bite at a Paste made of brown Bread and Honey, or at a *Marsh* or a *Lob-worm*; he inclines very much to any Paste with which Tar * is mixed, he will bite also at a smaller Worm, with his Head nipped off, and a *Cod-worm* put on the Hook before that Worm; and, I doubt not, but that he will bite also in the three hot Months (for in the nine cooler he stirs not much) bite at a *Flag-worm*, or a green *Gentle*.

I can positively say no more of this *Tench*, he being a Fish that I have not often angled for; but I wish my honest Scholar may, and be ever fortunate when he fishes.

Chap. XII.

Observations of the Pearch, *and Directions how to fish for him.*

THE *Pearch* is a very good, and a very bold-biting Fish: He is one of the Fishes of Prey, that, like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his Teeth

* The clotted black Blood in a Sheep's Heart, made, with fine Honey, into the Consistence of an Unguent, and your Worm is a red Worm) anointed with this, is by others preferred to the Tar.

Teeth in his Mouth, which is very large; and dares venture to kill and devour several other of Fish. He has a hooked or Hog-back, armed with sharp and stiff Bristles, and all his cover'd over with thick, dry, hard Scales; hath, which few other Fish have, two Fins Back. He is so bold, that he will invade his own Kind, which the *Pike* will not do lingly; and you may therefore easily believe to be a bold Biter.

The *Pearch* is of great Esteem in *Italy*, *Aldrovandus*, and especially the least are esteemed a dainty Dish. And *Gesner* prefers *Pearch* and *Pike* above the *Trout*, or any water Fish. He says, the *Germans* have this verb, "*More wholsome than a* Pearch *of* Rhine." And he says, the River *Pearch* is so wholsome, Physicians allow him to be eaten by wounded or Men in Fevers, or Women in Child-bed*.

He spawns but once a Year, and is by Phy held very nutritive; yet, by many, to be hard Digestion. They abound more in the River and in *England*, says *Rondeletius*, than other Pa and have in their Brain a Stone, which is in for Parts sold by Apothecaries, being there noted very medicinal against the Stone in the Bl These are a Part of the Commendations w some philosophical Brains have bestowed upon Fresh-water *Pearch*: Yet they commend the *Pearch*, which is known by having but one Fi his Back (of which they say, we *English* see few) to be a much better Fish.

The *Pearch* thrives slowly, yet will grow, have been credibly informed, to be almost two

* His Liver is usually thrown away, being apt to be mu

long; for an honest Informer told me, such an one was taken by Sir *Abraham Williams*, a Gentleman of worth, and Brother of the Angle. This was a deep-bodied Fish; and, doubtless, durst have devoured a *Pike* of Half his own Length; for I have told you, he is a bold Fish, such an one, as but for extreme Hunger, the *Pike* will not devour; for, to affright him, and save himself, he will set up his Fins as a Turky-cock will sometimes set up his Tail.

But, my Scholar, the *Pearch* is not only valiant to defend himself, but he is, as I said, a bold-biting Fish: Yet he will not bite at all Seasons of the Year. He is very abstemious in Winter, yet will bite then in the Midst of the Day, if it be warm. And note, *that all Fish will bite best about the Middle of a warm Day in Winter*; and he hath been observed by some, not usually to bite till the Mulberry-tree buds, that is to say, till extreme Frosts be past *that* Spring: For, when the Mulberry-tree puts forth, many Gardners observe their forward Fruit to be past the Danger of Frosts; and some have made the like Observation of the *Pearch*'s being.

But bite the *Pearch* will, and that very boldly *; and as one has wittily observed, if there be twenty or forty in a Hole, they may be, at one Standing, all catched one after another; they being, as he says, like the Wicked of the World, not afraid, though their Fellows and Companions perish in their Sight. And

* As the *Pearch* swallows the Bait so voraciously as makes it difficult to dislodge your Hook, it is advised to keep about you a Piece of small hollow Iron (or strong Reed) of six Inches long; thrust this down his Throat, till you feel the Hook (keeping your Line straight, lest it catch again) and draw your Hook and Instrument out, carefully, together.

And you may obſerve, that they are not like the ſolitary *Pike*, but love to accompany one another and march together in Troops.

§ * §

And the Baits for this bold Fiſh

are not many; I mean, he will bite as well at ſome, or at any of theſe three, as at any or all others whatſoever, *viz.* A * *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog*, of which you may find many in the time; and of *Worms*, the Dunghill-worm, called a *Brandling*, I take to be beſt, being well ſcoured in Moſs or Fennel; or at a Worm that lies under Cow dung, with a bluiſh Head. And if you rove for a *Pearch* with a *Minnow*, then it is beſt to be alive; you ſticking your Hook through his Back-Fin; or a *Minnow*, with the Hook in his upper Lip, and letting him ſwim up and down about Mid-water, or a little lower, and you ſtill keeping him to about that Depth by a Cork, which muſt not to be a very little one: And the like Way you are to fiſh for the *Pearch*, with a ſmall Frog, the Hook being faſtened through the Skin of his Leg towards

* This, rubbed with the Fat of a *Water-Rat*, is much commended

† That is, fiſh about, here and there.

wards the upper Part of it *. And, lastly, I will give you but this Advice, that you allow the *Pearch* Time enough when he bites, for there was scarce any Angler that has given him too much.

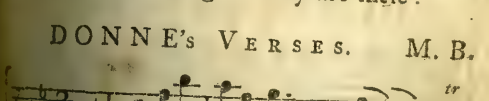
And now I think best to rest myself, for I have almost spent my Spirits with talking so long.

Vina. Nay, good Master, one Fish more, for you see it rains still; and you know our Angles are like Money put to Usury, they may thrive, though we sit still, and do nothing but talk and enjoy one another. Come, come, the other Fish, good Master.

Pisc. But, Scholar, have you nothing to mix with this Discourse, which now grows both tedious and troublesome? Shall I have nothing from you, that seems to have both a good Memory and a chearful Spirit?

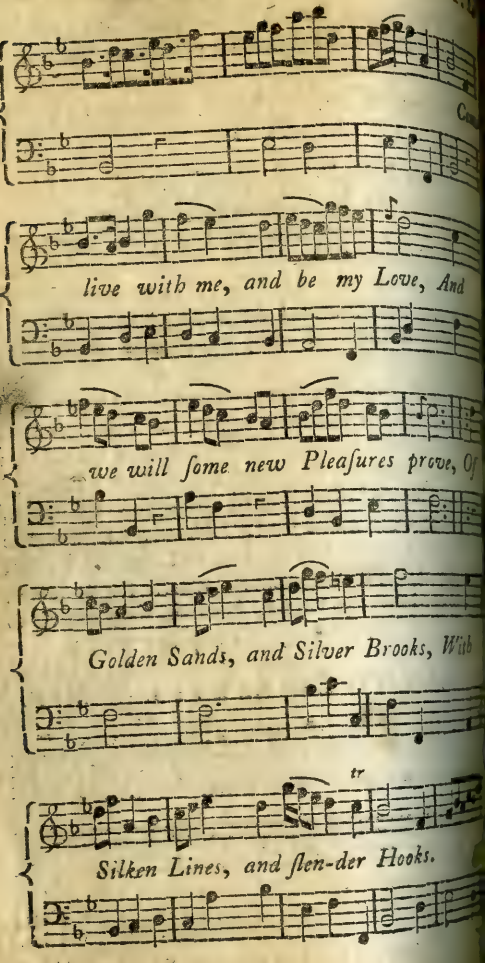
Vina. Yes, Master, I will speak you a Copy of Verses that were made by Dr. *Donne*, to shew the World that he could make soft and smooth Verses, when he thought Smoothness worth his Labour; and I love them the better, because they allude to Rivers, Fish, and fishing. They are these:

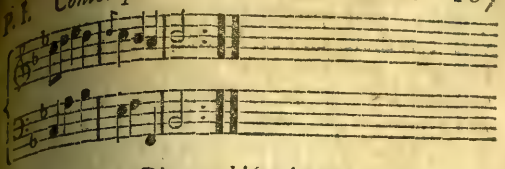
DONNE's VERSES. M. B.



Come

* Observe to keep this Bait from making to the Shore, which it will be always attempting.


live with me, and be my Love, And
we will some new Pleasures prove,
Golden Sands, and Silver Brooks,
tr
Silken Lines, and slen-der Hooks.



There will the River whispering run,
Warm'd by thy Eyes more than the Sun;
And there th' enamour'd Fish will stay,
Begging themselves they may betray.

When thou wilt sport in that live Bath,
Each Native which the Current hath,
Most amorously to thee will swim,
To catch thee gladder, than thou him.

If thou to be so seen, art loth,
By Sun or Moon, thou darkn'st both:
And if my Eyes have leave to see,
Their Light I need not, having thee.

Let others freeze with angling Reeds,
And cut their Legs with Shells and Weeds,
Or treach'rously poor Fish beset
With strangling Snares, or windowy Net:

Let coarse bold Hands from slimy Nest,
The bedded Trout in Banks out-wrest;
Let curious Traytors mimick Flies,
To witch poor wand'ring Fishes Eyes:

For thee, thou need'st no such Deceit,
For thou thyself art thine own Bait:
That Fish that is not caught thereby,
Alas! is wiser far than I.

Pise,

Pisc. Well remembered, honeſt Scholar, I thank you for theſe choice Verſes, which I have formerly, but had quite forgot, till they were covered by your happy Memory. Well, ſeeing I have now reſted myſelf a little, I will make ſome Requital, by telling you ſome Obſervations of the *Eel*, for it rains ſtill, and becauſe, as I ſay, our Angles are as Money put to uſe, they thrive when we play; therefore we will ſit ſtill and enjoy ourſelves a little longer under this Honeyſuckle-hedge.

CHAP. XIII.

Obſervations of the Eel, *and other Fiſh that have no Scales, and how to fiſh for them.*

Pisc. IT is agreed by moſt Men, that the *Eel* is a moſt dainty Fiſh; the *Romans* have eſteemed her the *Helena* of their Feaſts, and ſtyled her *the Queen of Pleaſure.* But Men differ about the Breeding: Some ſay they breed by Generation, as other Fiſh; others, that they breed as ſome Worms do, of Mud; as Rats and Mice, and many other living Creatures are bred in *Egypt*, by the Sun's Heat on the overflowing of the River *Nile*; or both of the Putrefaction of the Earth, and divers other Ways. Thoſe that deny them to breed by Generation, aſk, If any Man ever ſaw an *Eel* to have Spawn or Melt? And they are anſwered, That they may be as aſſured of their breeding, as if they had ſeen Spawn: For they ſay, they are certain that *Eels* have all Parts fit for Generation, like other Fiſh, but ſo ſmall as not to be eaſily diſcerned, by reaſon of their Fatneſs, but that diſcerned they will be; and that the *he* and the *ſhe Eel* may be eaſily

guished by their Fins. *Rondeletius* says, he has seen *Eels* cling together like Dew-worms: and some, that *Eels*, growing old, breed other *Eels* out of the Corruption of their Age, which Sir *Francis Bacon* says, exceeds not ten Years. Others say, that as Pearls are made of glutinous Dew-drops which are condensed by the Sun's Heat in those Countries, so *Eels* are bred of a prolific Dew, falling in the Months of *May* or *June*, on the Banks of some particular Ponds or Rivers, opted by Nature for that End, which in a few Days is, by the Sun's Heat, turned into *Eels*; and some of the Antients have called the *Eels* thus bred, *The Offspring of* Jove. I have seen in the Beginning of *July*, in a River not far from *Canterbury*, some Parts of it covered over with young *Eels*, about the Thickness of a Straw, lying on the Top of the Water, as thick as Motes are seen in the Sun-Beams. And I have heard the like of other Rivers; as namely, in *Severn*, where they are called *Yelvers*; and in a Pond or Mere near *Bedfordshire*, where, about a set Time in Summer, such small *Eels* abound so much, that many of the poorer sort of People that inhabit near to it, take them out of this Mere with Sieves or Sheets, and make a Kind of Eel-cake of them, and eat it as bread. And *Gesner* quotes venerable *Bede* to say, that, in *England*, there is an Island called *Ely*, by reason of the innumerable Multitude of *Eels* that breed in it. But that *Eels* may be bred as some Worms, and some Kind of Bees and Wasps are, either of Dew, or out of the Corruption of the Earth, seems to be made probable by the *Barnacles* and young *Goslings* * bred by the Sun's Heat, and the rotten Planks of an old Ship, and

H hatched

* See Page 87.

hatched of Trees; both which are related
Truths by *Dubartus* and *Lobel*, and also by
learned *Camden*, and laborious *Gerhard*, in
Herbal.

It is said by *Rondeletius*, that those *Eels*
are bred in Rivers that relate to, or are
the Sea, never return to the fresh Waters, as
Salmon always desires to do, when once they
tasted the salt Water. And I the more easily
this, because I am certain that powdered Beef
most excellent Bait to catch an *Eel*: And
Sir *Francis Bacon* will allow the *Eel*'s Life to
but ten Years *, yet he mentions a *Lamprey*,
longing to the *Roman* Emperor, to be made
and so kept for almost threescore Years; and
such useful and pleasant Observations were made
this *Lamprey*, that *Crassus* the Orator, who
her, lamented her Death. And we read in
Hakewell †, that *Hortensius* was seen to weep
the Death of a *Lamprey* that he had kept
and loved exceedingly.

It is granted by all, or most Men, that *E*
for about six Months, that is to say, the six
Months of the Year, stir not up and down, neither
in the Rivers nor Pools in which they usually
but get into the soft Earth or Mud, and there
many of them together, bed themselves, and
without feeding upon any thing, as I have told
some *Swallows* have been observed to do, in hollow
Trees for those six Months; and this the *Eel*
Swallow do, as not being able to endure Winter
weather: For *Gesner* quotes *Albertus* to say,
in the Year 1125, that Year's Winter being more
cold than usual, *Eels* did, by Nature's Instinct

* *History of Life and Death.*
† Apolog. *for God's Power and Providence.*

get out of the Water into a Stack of Hay, in a Meadow, upon dry Ground, and there bedded themselves; but yet at last, a Frost killed them. And our *Camden* relates, that, in *Lancashire*, Fishes are digged out of the Earth with Spades, where no Water is near to the Place. I shall say little more of the *Eel*, but that, as it is observed, he is impatient of cold, so, in warm Weather, he has been known to live five Days out of the Water.

And lastly, let me tell you, that some curious Searchers into the Nature of Fishes observe, there are several Kinds of *Eels*, as the silver and green, or greenish *Eel* (with which the River *Thames* abounds, and are called *Gregs*) and a blackish *Eel*, whose Head is more flat and big than the ordinary ones; and also an *Eel*, whose Fins are reddish, and but seldom taken in this Nation, yet taken sometimes. These several Kinds are, say some, diversly bred; as, out of the Corruption of the Earth, by Dew, or otherways, as I have said to you; and yet it is affirmed by some for certain, the silver *Eel* by Generation, but not by spawning, as other Fish do, but her Brood come alive from her, little live *Eels*, no bigger nor longer than a Pin: I have had too many Testimonies of this, to doubt the Truth of it myself; and, if I thought it needful, I might prove it, but I think it needless.

§ * §

This *Eel*, of which I have said so much to you, may be caught with divers Kinds of Baits; as with powdered *Beef*, with a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, with a *Minnow*, or Gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken*, or of any Fish, or with almost any thing, for he is a greedy Fish; but the *Eel* may be caught especially

with a little, a very little *Lamprey*, which I call a *Pride*, and may in the hot Months be found Plenty of them in the River *Thames*, and in many Mud-heaps in other Rivers, yea, almoſt as often as one finds Worms in a Dunghill.

Next note, that the *Eel* ſeldom ſtirs in the Day but then hides himſelf; and therefore he is often caught by Night, with one of theſe Baits of which I have ſpoken, by laying Hooks, which you are to faſten to the Bank, or Twigs of a Tree; or by throwing a String croſs the Stream, with many Hooks at it, and baited with the aforeſaid Bait and a Plummet, or Stone, thrown into the River with this Line, that ſo you may in the Morning find it near ſome marked Place, and then take it up with a Drag-hook, or otherwiſe: But theſe things are indeed too common to be ſpoken of; and an Hour's fiſhing with any Angler will teach you better, both for theſe and many other common things in the practical Part of Angling, than a Week's Diſcourſe. I ſhall therefore conclude this Direction for taking the *Eel*, by telling you, that in a warm Day in Summer, I have taken many a good *Eel* by ſniggling *, and have been much pleaſed with that Sport.

* The beſt Method of *Sniggling* which I have ſeen, is this: Take an ordinary-ſized Needle, whip it only about the middle Part to three Inches of the ſtrongeſt fine Twine, waxed, and reſerve above to ſeveral Yards of Whip-cord, or Pack-thread; thruſt the End of your Needle into the Head-end of a large *Lob-worm*, and draw him on (which with Care you may eaſily do, the Needle being ſtrait) till you have got it up to the Middle of the Worm: then in the End of a ſmall long Stick, which you may fix in a Joint more of your Rod, let there be ſtuck another Needle, ſaltered from ſlipping out, with about half an Inch of the Point appearing. Put this alſo into the Head of the baited Worm, and holding the whole Length of the Cord in your Hand, together with the Stick, thruſt your Worm between the Cleft of any Clods or Piles in a

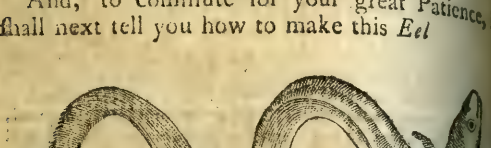
And becauſe you, that are but a young Angler, know not what ſniggling is, I will now teach it you. You remember I told you, *Eels* do not uſually ſtir in the Day-time, for then they hide themſelves under ſome Covert, or Boards or Planks, or about Flood-gates, Weirs, or Mills, or in Holes in the Rivers Banks; and you obſerving your Time in a warm Day, when the Water is loweſt, may take a ſtrong ſmall Hook, tied to a Line or String, about a Yard long, and then into one of theſe Holes, or between any Boards about a Mill, or under any great Stone or Plank, or any Place where you think an *Eel* may hide or ſhelter

Water, till you have loſt Sight of it; then ſoftly draw your Stick away, laying it aſide, keeping the Line ſtill in your Hand, till you perceive it to draw, and, after ſome Time, ſtrike, as has been directed. The Needle, which before this lay buried ſtrait in the Worm, will, by your Stroke, be pulled quite croſs the Throat of the *Eel*, and hold him faſt. When he is landed, you may, by ſqueezing one of the Gills through his Skin, draw that and the whole Line after it, without the Inconveniency and Trouble that is found in diſlodging a Pike.

There is beſides this, about *London*, a Way of fiſhing for *Eels*, which Mr. *Walton* has not ſpoken of, called *Bobbing*: Which is, by chuſing a large Number of Worms, with a Needle, on a fine but ſtrong Packthread, running them from Head to Tail, till you have ſtrung about a Pound; then wrapping them about a dozen Times round your Hand, tie them faſt with the two Ends of the Thread, that they may hang in Hanks or Links: Faſten theſe to a ſtrong Cord, about two Yards long, and about eight Inches above the Worm tie a Knot; upon this, let a Plummet of Lead (bought at any of the Shops) reſt, being bored through, that it may eaſily ſlip to and fro: It is made in Shape of a Pyramid, of about Half a Pound Weight; let the broad End hang downward. Tie this Cord to a ſtrong taper Pole, about three Yards long: Angle with this in a muddy Water, in the Deeps or Sides of Streams. You will find the Fiſh tug at it eagerly; then draw up Worms and *Eels*, not with a quick, but a ſteady, ſwift, and even Hand, and, giving it a ſmart Stretch, ſhake them ſuddenly off on Land, or into your Boat, which is the uſual Way of going upon this Exerciſe, and turn your Baits gently over into the Water again. You may take *this Way*, three or four uſually at a Time. *This*, and the *other Method*, are only uſed in Eel-fiſhing.

herſelf; there, with the Help of a ſhort Stick, put in your Bait, but leiſurely, and as far as you can conveniently, and, if there be an *Eel* within Sight of it, he will bite inſtantly, and as certainly gorge it; and you need not doubt to have him, if you pull him not out too quickly, but by Degrees, for he lying folded double in his Hole, will, with the Help of his Tail, break all, unleſs you give him Time to be wearied with pulling, and ſo get him out leiſurely, not pulling too hard.

And, to commute for your great Patience, I ſhall next tell you how to make this *Eel*



a moſt excellent Diſh of Meat.

Firſt, waſh him in Water and Salt, then pull off his Skin below his Vent or Navel, and not much further: Having done that, take out his Guts as clean as you can, but waſh him not; then give him three or four Scotches with a Knife, and put into his Belly, and thoſe Scotches, ſweet Herbs, an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated, or cut very ſmall; your Herbs and Anchovies muſt alſo be cut very ſmall, and mixed with good Butter and Salt. Having done this, pull his Skin over him and his Head, which you are to cut off, to the End that may tie his Skin about that Part where his Head

grow; and it must be so tied as to keep all his Moisture within his Skin: Having done this, bind him with Tape or Packthread to a Spit, and roast him leisurely; baste him with Water and Salt till his Skin breaks, and then with Butter: And having roasted him enough, let what was put into his Belly, and what he drips, be his Sauce.

S. F.

When I go to dress an *Eel* thus, I wish he were as long and big as that which was caught in *Peterborough River*, in the Year 1667, which was a Yard and three Quarters long *.

But now, let me tell you, that though the *Eel* thus dressed be not only excellently good, but more harmless than any other Way, yet, it is certain, that Physicians account the *Eel* dangerous Meat. I will advise you, therefore, as *Solomon* † says of Honey, *Hast thou found it? Eat no more than is sufficient, lest thou surfeit:* For it is not good to eat much Honey. And let me add this, that the uncharitable *Italian* bids us, *Give Eels, and no Wine, to our Enemies.*

Aldrovandus, and divers Physicians, commend the *Eel* very much for Medicine, though not for Meat. But let me tell you one Observation, that the *Eel* is never out of Season, as *Trouts*, and most other Fish are, at set Times; at least, *most Eels* are not.

I might here speak of many other Fish, whose Shape and Nature are much like the *Eel*, and frequent both the Sea and fresh Rivers; as the *Lamprey*, the *Lamprey*, and *Lamperne*; as also of the mighty *Conger*, taken often in *Severn*, about *Glou-*

* *He has added*, If you will not believe me then go and see, at one of the Coffee-Houses in *King-street* in *Westminster*. *It is supposed that the Picture or Skin was kept there to be shewn.*

† *Prov.* xxv. 16.

ceſter; and in what high Eſteem many of them are for the Curioſity of their Taſte: But theſe are now ſo proper to be talked of by me, becauſe they make us Anglers no Sport; therefore I will let them alone, as the *Jews* do, to whom they are forbidden by their Law.

And, Scholar, there is alſo a *Flounder*, a Sea-fiſh, which will wander very far into freſh Rivers, and there loſe himſelf, and dwell and thrive to a Hand's Breadth, and almoſt twice ſo long; a Fiſh without Scales, and moſt excellent Meat, and that affords much Sport to the Angler with any ſmall Worm, but eſpecially a little bluiſh Worm, gotten out of Marſh-ground or Meadows, which ſhould be well ſcoured. But this, though it be moſt excellent Meat, yet it wants Scales; and is, as I therefore told you, an Abomination to the *Jews*.

But, Scholar, there is a Fiſh that they in *Lancaſhire* boaſt very much of, called a *Char*, taken there, and I think there only *, in a Meer called *Winander Meer*; a Meer, ſays *Camden*, that is the largeſt in this Nation, being ten Miles in Length, and as ſmooth in the Bottom as if it were paved with poliſhed Marble, This Fiſh never exceeds fifteen or ſixteen Inches in Length; it is ſpotted like a *Trout*, and has ſcarce a Bone, but on the Back: But this, though I do not know whether it make the Angler Sport, yet I would have you take Notice of it, becauſe it is a Rarity, and of high Eſteem with Perſons of great Note.

Nor would I have you ignorant of a rare Fiſh, called a *Guiniad* †, of which I ſhall tell you what *Camden*

* Dr. *Leigh* writes, this Fiſh is likewiſe found in *Coringſton Mere*. In *Wales* they have it in five different Places.

† This is a Kind of *Alpine Trout*. It is pretty common in the Lake *Leman*, among the *Alps*, near *Geneva*.

Camden and others speak. The River *Dee*, which runs by *Chester*, springs in *Merionethshire*, and, as it runs towards *Chester*, it passes through *Pemble Meer*, which is a large Water: And it is observed, that though the River *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemble Meer* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the *Meer*, nor a *Guiniad* in the River. And now my next Observation shall be of the *Barbel*.

CHAP. XIV.

Observations of the Barbel, *with Directions how to fish for him.*

Pisc. THE *Barbel* is so called, says *Gesner*, by reason of his Barbs, or Wattles, at his Mouth, which are under his Nose or Chaps. He is one of those leather-mouthed-Fish that I told you of, that very seldom breaks his Hold if he be once hooked; but he will often break both Rod and Line, if he proves to be a big one *.

But the *Barbel*, though he be of a fine Shape, and looks big, yet is not accounted the best Fish to eat, neither for his Wholsomeness nor his Taste. But the Male is reputed much better than the Female, whose Spawn is very hurtful, as I will presently declare to you.

They flock together like Sheep, and are at worst in *April*, about which Time they spawn †, but quickly grow to be in Season. He is able to live in

* A Person, it is said, of *Staines*, caught on one Event, three of Weight. His Bait was a Bit of rusty Bacon.

† Later Writers say it is in *August*.

the ſtrongeſt Swifts of the Water, and, in Sum-
mer, loves the ſhalloweſt and ſharpeſt Streams,
and to lurk under Weeds, and feed on Gravel
againſt a riſing Ground, and will root and dig
the Sands with his Noſe like a Hog, and there
himſelf; yet ſometimes he retires to deep and
Bridges, or Flood-gates, or Weirs, where he
houſe himſelf amongſt Piles, or in hollow Place
and take ſuch Hold of Moſs or Weeds, that
the Water never ſo ſwift, it is not able to
him from the Place he contends for. This
his conſtant Cuſtom in Summer, when he,
moſt living Creatures, ſport themſelves in the
But, at the Approach of Winter, then he forſakes
the ſwift Streams and ſhallow Waters, and by De-
grees retires to thoſe Parts of the River that
quiet and deeper; in which Places, and I think
about that Time, they ſpawn; and, as I have for-
merly told you, with the Help of the *Melter*, hide
her Spawn or Eggs in Holes, which they both
in the Gravel, and then they mutually labour to
cover it with the ſame, to prevent it from being
devoured by other Fiſh.

There are ſuch Store of this Fiſh in the River
Danube, that *Rondeletius* ſays they may, in ſome
Places of it, and ſome Months of the Year, be
taken with their Hands, eight or ten Load at a
Time: He ſays, they begin to be good in *May*,
and ceaſe to be ſo in *Auguſt*; but it is found to be
otherwiſe in this Nation: But thus far we agree
with him, that the Spawn of a *Barbel*, if it be not
Poiſon, as he ſays, yet it is dangerous Meat*,
eſpecially in the Month of *May*; which is ſo cer-
tainly

* His Liver is alſo reckoned unwholſome.

vain, that *Gesner* and *Gasius* declare it had an ill Influence upon them, even to the endangering their Lives.

This Fish

is of a fine Cast and handsome Shape, small Scales, and placed after a most exact and curious Manner, and, as I told you, may rather be said not to be ill, than to be good Meat; the *Chub* and he have, I think, both lost a Part of their Credit by ill Cookery, they being reputed the worst or coarsest of Fresh-Water-Fish. But the *Barbel* affords an Angler choice Sport, being a lusty and cunning Fish; a lusty and cunning, as to endanger the breaking of the Line, by running his Head forcibly towards any Covert, Hole, or Bank, and then striking at the Line, to break it off with his Tail, as is observed by *Plutarch* *; and also so cunning, to nibble and suck off your Worm close to the Hook, and yet avoid letting the Hook come into his Mouth.

§ * §

The *Barbel* is also curious for his Baits, that they be clean and sweet; that is to say, to have your Worms well scoured, and not kept in four musty Moss, for he is a curious Feeder. At a well-scoured

Lob-

* *De industria animalium.*

Lob-worm he will bite as boldly as at any B... especially, if the Night or two before you fish ... him, you bait the Places where you intend to fish ... with big Worms cut into Pieces. And note, ... none did ever over-bait the Place, nor fish ... early or late for a *Barbel*. He will bite also ... *Gentles*, which (not being too much scoured, ... green) are a choice Bait for him; and so ... Cheese, which is not to be too hard, but kept ... Day or two in a wet Linnen Cloth, to make ... tough: With this you may also bait the Wate... Day or two before you fish, and be much ... likelier to catch Store; and if the Cheese were ... in clarified Honey a short Time before (as named ... an Hour or two) you were still the likelier to catch ... Fish. Some have directed to cut the Cheese into ... thin Pieces, and toast it, and then tie it on the ... Hook with fine Silk; and some advise to fish for ... the *Barbel* with Sheep's-tallow and soft Cheese ... beaten or worked into a Paste, and that it is ... choicely good in *August*, and I believe it: But ... doubtless, the *Lob-worm* well scoured, the *Gentle* ... not too much scoured, and Cheese ordered as ... have directed, are Baits enough, and I think will ... serve in any Month; though I shall commend any ... Angler that tries Conclusions, and is industrious to ... improve the Art.

And now, my honest Scholar, the long Shower ... and my tedious Discourse, are both ended together; and I shall give you but this Observation ... that when you fish for a *Barbel*, your Rod ... Line be both long, and of good Strength, for ... I told you) you will find him a heavy and a dogged ... Fish to be dealt withal, yet he seldom or never ...

breaks his Hold if he be once ſtruck. And if you would know more of fiſhing for the *Umber* and for *Barbel*, get into Favour with Doctor * *Sheldon*, whoſe Skill is above others, and of that the Poor that dwell about him have a comfortable Experience.

And now let us go and ſee what Intereſt the *Trouts* will pay us for letting our Angle rods lie ſo long, and ſo quietly in the Water, for their Uſe. Come, Scholar, which will you take up?

Vena. Which you think fit, Maſter.

Piſc. Why, you ſhall take up *that*; for I am certain, by viewing the Line, it has a Fiſh at it — Look you, Scholar: Well done — Come now, take up the other too — Well; now you may tell my Brother *Peter* at Night, that you have caught a Leaſh of *Trouts* this Day. And now let us move toward our Lodging, and drink a Draught of red Cow's Milk as we go, and give pretty *Maudlin*, and her honeſt Mother, a Brace of *Trouts* for their Supper.

Vena. Maſter, I like your Motion very well, and I think it is now about Milking-time, and yonder they be at it.

Piſc. God ſpeed you, good Woman, I thank you both for our Songs laſt Night; I and my Companion have had ſuch Fortune a fiſhing this Day, that we reſolve to give you and *Maudlin* a Brace of *Trouts* for Supper, and we will now taſte a Draught of your red Cow's Milk.

Milkw. Marry, and that you ſhall with all my Heart, and I will be ſtill your Debtor when you come this Way; if you will but ſpeak the Word, I will make you a good *Syllabub* of new Verjuice, and

* Afterwards Arch-Biſhop; Founder of the Theatre at *Oxford*.

and you may sit down in a Haycock and eat it, and *Maudlin* shall sit by and sing you the good old Song of the Hunting in *Chevy-Chace*, or some other good Ballad, for she hath good Store of them. *Maudlin*, my honest *Maudlin*, hath a notable Memory; and she thinks nothing too good for you, because you are such honest Men.

Vena. We thank you, and intend once in a Month to call upon you again, and give you a little Warning, and so good Night: Good Night, *Maudlin*. And now, good Master, let us lose no Time, but tell me somewhat more of fishing; and, if you please, first something of fishing for a *Gudgeon*.

Pisc. I will, honest Scholar.

CHAP. XV.

Observations of the Gudgeon, *the* Ruff, *and the* Bleak, *and how to fish for them.*

Pisc. THE *Gudgeon* is reputed a Fish of exquisite Taste, and to be very wholsome: He is of a fine Shape, of a Silver Colour, and beautiful with black Spots both on his Body and Tail. He breeds two or three Times in the Year, and always in Summer. He is commended for a Fish of excellent Nourishment: The *Germans* call him *Groundling*, by reason of his feeding on the Ground; and he there feasts himself in sharp Streams, and on the Gravel: He and the *Barbel* both feed so, and do not hunt for Flies at any Time, as most other Fish do. He is an excellent Fish to entice a young Angler, being easy to be taken with a small red Worm, on, or very near the Ground. He

He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſhes that has his Teeth in his Throat, and will hardly be loſt off from the Hook if he be once ſtruck.

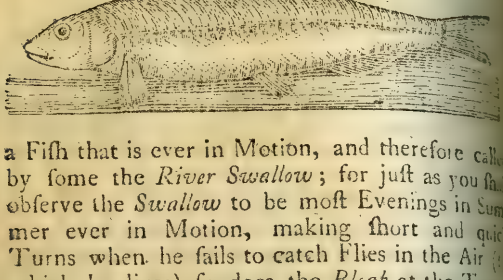
They are uſually ſcattered up and down every River, in the Shallows in the Heat of Summer; but in Autumn, when the Weeds begin to grow sour or rot, and the Weather colder, then they gather together, and get into the deeper Parts of the Water; and are to fiſhed for *there* with your Hook always touching the Ground, if you fiſh for him with a Float, or with a Cork: But many will fiſh for the *Gudgeon* by hand, with a running Line upon the Ground, without a Cork, as a *Trout* is fiſhed for; and it is an excellent Way, if you have a gentle Rod, and as gentle a Hand.

There is alſo another Fiſh, called a *Pope*, and by ſome a *Ruff*, a Fiſh that is not known to be in ſome Rivers; it is much like the *Pearch* for his Shape, and taken to be better, but will not grow to be bigger than a *Gudgeon*: He is an excellent Fiſh; no Fiſh that ſwims is of a pleaſanter Taſte, and he is alſo excellent to enter a young Angler, for he is a greedy Biter, and they do uſually lie Abundance of them together in one obſerved Place where the Water is deep, and runs ſwiftly; and an eaſy Angler, if he has found where they

they lie, may catch forty or fifty, or sometimes twice so many, at a Standing.

You must fish for him with a small red Worm; and if you bait the Ground with Earth, it is excellent.

There is also a *Bleak*, or fresh-water *Sprat*,



a Fish that is ever in Motion, and therefore called by some the *River Swallow*; for just as you shall observe the *Swallow* to be most Evenings in Summer ever in Motion, making short and quick Turns when he fails to catch Flies in the Air (by which he lives) so does the *Bleak* at the Top of the Water. *Ausonius* would have him called *Bleak* from his whitish Colour: His Back is of a pleasant sad sea-water Green, his Belly white and shining as the Mountain Snow; and, doubtless, though he have the Fortune (which Virtue has in poor People, to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want *Allamot* Salt, and the Skill that the Italians have to turn them into *Anchovies*. This Fish may be caught with a Pater-noster Line; that is, six or eight very small Hooks tied along the Line one half a Foot above the other: I have seen five caught thus at one time, and the Bait has been *Gentles*, than which none is better.

Or this Fish may be caught with a fine small artificial Fly, which is to be a very sad-[illegible] Colour

Colour, and very small *, and the Hook answerable. There is no better Sport than whipping † for *Bleaks* in a Boat, or on a Bank, in the swift Water, in a Summer's Evening, with a Hazle-top about five or six Feet long, and a Line twice the Length of the Rod. I have heard Sir *Henry Wotton* say, there are many in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* so, or especially *Martins*; the Bird-angler standing on the top of a Steeple with a Line twice so long as I have spoken of. And, let me tell you, Scholar, that both *Martins* and *Bleaks* are most excellent Meat.

And I have known a *Hern*, that did constantly frequent one Place, caught with a Hook baited with a big *Minnow*, or a small *Gudgeon*. The Line and Hook must be strong, and tied to some loose Staff, so big as she cannot fly away with it; the Line not exceeding two Yards.

CHAP. XVI.

Is of nothing, or that which is of nothing worth.

MY Purpose was to give you some Direction concerning *Roach* and *Dace*, and some other inferior Fish, which make the Angler excellent Sport; for you know there is more Pleasure in hunting the Hare, than in eating her: But I will forbear at this Time to say any more, because you see yonder comes our Brother *Peter*, and honest *Coridon*: But, I promise you, that as you and I fish and walk To-morrow towards *London*, if I have forgotten any thing that I can then remember, I will not keep it from you.

Well

* The common House Fly (of natural ones) succeeds as well as any.

† That is, throwing your Line out before you over your Head, in the Manner a *Coach-whip* is done.

Well met, Gentlemen, this is lucky that we meet, so just together, at this very Door. Come, Hostess, where are you? Is Supper ready? Come, first give us Drink, and be as quick as you can, for I believe we are all very hungry. Well! Brother *Peter* and *Coridon!* —To you both. — Come, drink, and tell me *what Luck of Fish:* We have caught but ten *Trouts*, of which my Scholar caught three; look, here's eight, and a Brace we gave away. We have had a most pleasant Day for fishing and talking, and are returned home both weary and hungry, and now Meat and Rest will be pleasant.

Pet. And *Coridon* and I have not had an unpleasant Day, and yet I have caught but five *Trouts*; for indeed we went to a good honest Ale-house, and there played at Shuffleboard — all the Time it rained we were there, and as merry as they that fished; and I am glad we are now with a dry House over our Heads, for hark how it rains, and blows! Come, Hostess, give us more Ale, and our Supper, with what Haste you may; and, when we have supped, let us have your Song, *Piscator*, and the Catch that your Scholar promised us, or else *Coridon* will be dogged.

Pisc. Nay, I will not be worse than my Word, you shall not want my Song, and I hope I shall be perfect in it.

Vena. And I hope the like for my Catch, which I have ready too; and therefore let us go merrily to Supper, and then have a gentle Touch at singing and Drinking; but the last with Moderation.

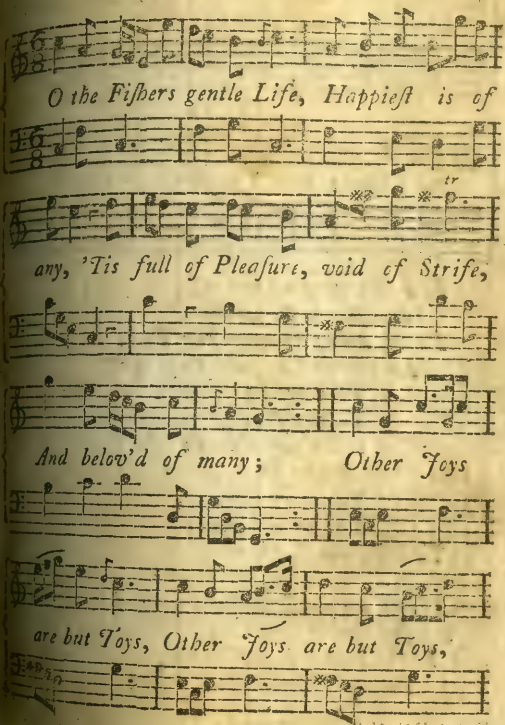
Co-

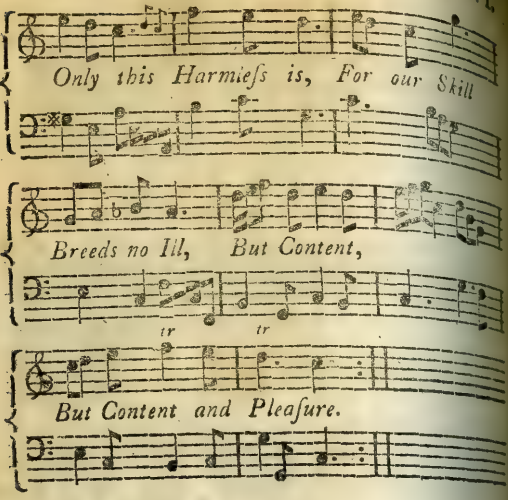
TROUT
H.Burgh

Cor. Come, now for your Song, for we have fed heartily. — Come, Hoſteſs, lay a few more Sticks on the Fire, and now ſing when you will.

Piſc. Well then, here's to you, *Coridon* — and now for my Song.

PISCATOR's *SONG.*


O the Fiſhers gentle Life, Happieſt is of
any, 'Tis full of Pleaſure, void of Strife,
And belov'd of many; Other Joys
are but Toys, Other Joys are but Toys,
Only



In a Morning up we rife,
'Ere Aurora's *peeping,*
Drink a Cup to wafh our Eyes,
Leave the Sluggard fleeping:
Then we go
To and fro,
With our Knacks
At our Backs,
To fweet Streams,
Lea *or* Thames,
To enjoy our Leifure.

When we pleafe to walk abroad
For our Recreation,
In the Fields is our Abode,
Full of Delectation:

With

With a Book,
By a Brook,
Or a Lake,
Sitting take,
With Delight
Wait the Bite,
Till we Fish intangle.

We have Gentles in a Horn,
Flies and Paste, and Worms too;
We can watch both Night and Morn,
Suffer Rain and Storms too:
None are here
Us'd to swear,
Oaths will fray
Fish away;
We sit still,
Watch our Quill,
Fishers must not wrangle.

If the Sun's excessive Heat
Make our Bodies swelter,
To a fragrant Hedge we get,
For a friendly Shelter;
Where in a Creek,
Gudgeon, Bleak,
As we like,
Pearch *or* Pike,
Roach *or* Dace,
Pleas'd we chace,
With our Sport contented.

Or we sometimes muse an Hour
'Neath a trembling Willow,
That repels the soft sweet Shower,
Making Earth our Pillow;

There

There we may
Think and pray,
E're cold Death
Seize our Breath:
Other Joys
Are but Toys,
And to be lamented. Jo. Chalkhill.

Vena. Well sung, Master; this Day's Fortune and Pleasure, and this Night's Company and Song, do all make me more and more in love with Angling. Gentlemen, my Master left me alone for an Hour this Day, and I verily believe he retired himself from talking with me, that he might be so perfect in this Song — was it not, Master?

Pisc. Yes, indeed, for it is many Years since I learned it; and, having forgotten a Part of it, I was forced to patch it up by the Help of mine own Invention, who am not excellent at Poetry, as my Part of the Song may testify. But of that I will say no more, lest you should think I mean, by discommending it, to beg your Commendations of it: and therefore, without Reply, let us hear your *Catch*, Scholar, which I hope will be a good one, for you are both musical, and have a good Fancy to boot.

Vena. Marry, that you shall; as freely as I would have my honest Master tell me some more Secrets of Fish and fishing, as we walk and fish towards *London* To-morrow. But, Master, first let me tell you, that very Hour which you were absent from me, I sat down under a Willow-tree by the Water-side, and considered what you had told me of the Owner of that pleasant Meadow in which you then left me; that he had a plentiful Estate, and not a Heart to think so; that he had

at this Time many Law-suits depending, that both amped his Mirth, and took up so much of his me and Thoughts, that he himself had not Lei- e to take the sweet Content that I (who pre- ended no Title to them) took in his Fields; for I ould there sit quietly, and, looking on the Wa- er, see some Fishes sporting themselves in the sil- er Streams, others leaping at Flies of several Shapes nd Colours; looking on the Hills, could behold em spotted with Woods and Groves; looking on the Meadows, could see here a Boy gather- g *Lillies* and *Lady-smocks*, and there a Girl crop- *Culver-keys* and *Cowslips*, all to make Garlands ecible to this present Month of *May*. These, nd many other Field-flowers, so perfumed the r, that I thought that very Meadow like the d in *Sicily* (of which *Diodorus* speaks) where Perfumes arising from the Place, make all Dogs ot hunt in it to fall off, and lose their hottest cent. I say, as I thus sat joying in my own happy ondition, and pitying this *poor rich* Man that ned this, and many other pleasant Groves and eadows about me, I did thankfully remember at my Saviour said, that "*the Meek possess the Earth* †;" or rather, they enjoy what the other ches, and enjoy not; for Anglers, and meek, et-spirited Men, are free from those high, those ankes Thoughts, which corrode the Sweets of ife; and they, and they only can say, as the Poet as happily expressed it.

Hail! bless'd Estate of Lowliness!
Happy Enjoyment of such Minds,
As rich in Self-contentedness,
Can, like the Reeds in roughest Winds,
By yielding, make that blow but small,
At which proud Oaks and Cedars fall.

There

† Matth. v. 5.

There came also into my Mind at that Time, certain Verses in Praise of a mean Estate and an humble Mind; they were written by *Phineas Fletcher*, *, an excellent Divine and Angler, and the Author of excellent *Piscatory Eclogues*, in which you shall see the Picture of this good Man's Mind, and I wish mine to be like it.

His certain Life, that never can deceive him,
Is full of thousand Sweets, and rich Content;
The smooth-leav'd Beeches in the Field receive him
With coolest Shade, till Noon-tide Heats be spent.
His Life is neither tos'd in boist'rous Seas,
Or the vexatious World, or lost in slothful Ease;
Pleas'd and full blest he lives, when he his God
can please.

His Bed, more safe than soft, yields quiet Sleeps,
While by his Side his faithful Spouse has Place;
His little Son into his Bosom creeps,
The lively Picture of his Father's Face:
Never his humble House or State torment him,
Less he could like, if less his God had lent him;
And, when he dies, green Turfs with a Tomb con-
tent him.

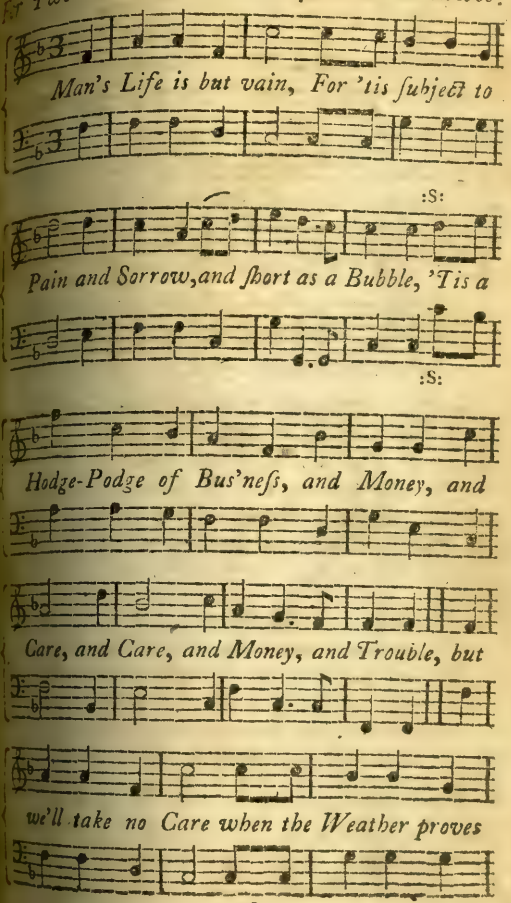
Gentlemen, these were a Part of the Thoughts that then possessed me; and I there made a Conversion of a Piece of an old Catch, and added more to it, fitting them to be sung by us Anglers. Come Master, you can sing well, you must sing a Part of it as it is in this Paper.

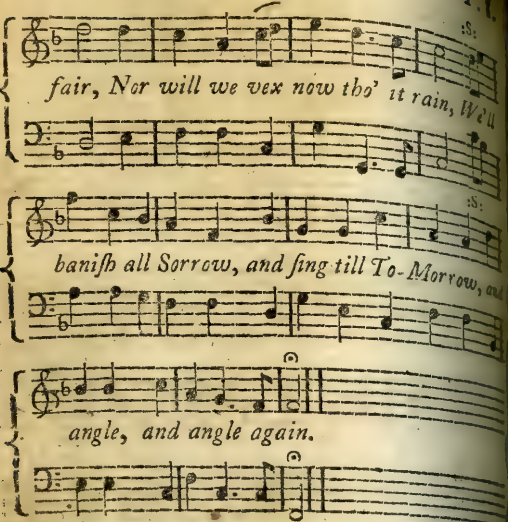
The

* I have given some Account of this *Work*, and its *Author*, in the Essay before my *Piscatory Eclogues*.

The ANGLER's CATCH.

For Two Voices. Set by Mr. *H. Lawes.*


Man's Life is but vain, For 'tis subject to
:S:
Pain and Sorrow, and short as a Bubble, 'Tis a
:S:
Hodge-Podge of Bus'ness, and Money, and
Care, and Care, and Money, and Trouble, but
we'll take no Care when the Weather proves
I
:S:



Pet. Ay marry, Sir, this is Muſic indeed; this has cheered my Heart, and made me remember ſix Verſes in Praiſe of Muſic, which I will ſpeak to you inſtantly.

Muſic, miraculous Rhetoric! ſpeaking Senſe,
Without a Tongue, excelling Eloquence!
With what Eaſe might thy Errors be excus'd,
Wert thou as truly lov'd as thou'rt abus'd?
But though dull Souls neglect and ſome reprove thee,
I cannot hate, becauſe the Angels love thee.

And the Repitition of theſe Verſes have called to my Memory what Mr. *Edward Waller*, a Lover of the Angle, ſays of Love and Muſic.

Whilst I listen to thy Voice
Chloris, *I feel my Heart decay:*
That powerful Voice!
Calls my fleeting Soul away.
O suppress that magic sound
Which destroys—without a wound.

Peace, Chloris, *peace, or singing die;*
That together you and I
To Heav'n may go:
For all we know
Of what the Happy do above,
Is, that they sing, *and that they* love.

Pisc. Well remembered, Brother *Peter*, these Verses came seasonably, and we thank you heartily. Come, we will all join together—mine Host and all, and sing my Scholar's Catch over again, and then each Man drink the other Cup, and to Bed, and thank God we have a dry House over our Heads.

Pisc. Well, now good Night to every body.

Pet. And so say I.

Vena. And so say I.

Cor. God Night to you all, and I thank you.

Pisc. Good-morrow, Brother *Peter*, and the like to you, honest *Coridon*. Come, my Hostess says there is seven Shillings to pay; let us each Man drink a Pot for his Morning's Draught, and lay down his two Shillings, that so my Hostess may not have Occasion to repent herself of being so diligent, and using us kindly.

Pet. The Motion is liked by every body; and so, Hostess, here's your Money; we Anglers are all beholden to you, it will not be long ere I will see you again. And now, Brother *Piscator*, I wish you

and my Brother, your Scholar, a fair Day, and good Fortune—Come, *Coridon*, this is our Way.

Chap. XVII.

Of Roach *and* Dace, *and how to fish for them; and of* Cadis.

Vena. GOOD Master, as we go now towards *London*, be still so courteous as to give me more Instructions; for I have several Boxes in my Memory, in which I will keep them all very safe, and there shall not one of them be lost.

Pisc. Well, Scholar, that I will, and will hide nothing from you that I can remember, and may help you forward towards a Perfection in this Art. And because we have so much Time, and I have said so little of *Roach* and *Dace*, I will give you some Directions concerning them.

Some say the *Roach* is so called from *Rutilus*, which signifies red Fins: He is a Fish of no great Reputation for his dainty Taste, his Spawn is much better than any other Part of him. You may take Notice, that as the *Carp* is accounted the *Water-Fox* for his Cunning,, so the *Roach* is stiled the *Water-Sheep* for his Simplicity or Foolishness. It is noted, that the *Roach* and *Dace* recover Strength, and grow in Season, in a Fortnight after spawning; the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a Month; the *Trout* in four Months; and the *Salmon* in like Time, if he gets into the Sea, and after into fresh Water.

Roaches are accounted much better in the River than in a Pond, though Ponds usually breed the biggest. But there is a Kind of Bastard, small *Roach*, that breeds in Ponds, with a very forked Tail, and of a very small Size, which some say is bred

bred by the *Bream* and right *Roach*; some Ponds are ſtored with theſe beyond Belief; and ſkilful Men that know their Difference, call them *Ruds* *; they differ from the true *Roach*, as much as a *Herring* from a *Pilchard*; and theſe baſtard Breed of *Roach* are now ſcattered in many Rivers, but I think not the *Thames*, which I believe affords the largeſt and fatteſt in this Nation, eſpecially below *London Bridge*. The *Roach* is a leather-mouthed Fiſh, and has a Kind of Saw-like Teeth in his Throat. And, laſtly, let me tell you, the *Roach* makes an Angler excellent Sport, eſpecially the great *Roaches* about † *London*, where I think

* The Fiſh named ſo *now by us*, differs very much from this Deſcription; is reckoned preferable to the *Roach*, and inferior to none of the firſt Rank. He is of a golden Colour, like a *Carp*, with Scales as large, his Tail a *light*, and Belly Fins a *dark Red*; is from twelve to ſixteen Inches long; the biggeſt weigh *two Pounds*; is broad, thick, ſtrong made, ſtruggles hard, feeds uſually near the Top of the Water, and is therefore taken with a *Fly*, or ſmall *Red-worm*, and is always in Seaſon, only worſt in *April*, at ſpawning. It has been ſaid this Fiſh is peculiar to the *Yare*, *Norfolk*; but other Streams have them; as the *Roddon*, *Eſſex*, above *Ilford-Bridge*, and the *Ouſe Buckinghamſhire*, in Plenty, where he is called a *Shalley*;—*Witham Lincolnſhire*, and the *Thames* upwards. In ſome Places he is named a *Finſcale*.

The *Red-Eye* is alſo another Species of *Roach*; made very like a *Bream*, but thicker, and meaſures about ten Inches. The Fins and Eyes are all of a full red (from which laſt he has his Name) and his whole Body has a *reddiſh* Caſt; is in all the former-mentioned Rivers, and many others; yields fine Sport, and is angled for as the *Roach*, *Rud*, and *Dace*: About the Roots of Trees is his chief Harbour; where, in *May*, they ſpawn.

† As Mr. *Walton* has ſaid nothing of the Methods of *Thames* angling for *Roach* and *Dace*, it may not be improper to ſubjoin this little Account how it is practiſed about *London*. Any Waterman at the Stairs will provide you a Boat, with Rip-hooks, to fix it in the Middle of the Stream; and prepare your Ground-bait, which is of Bran and ſtale Bread, mix'd in Balls, and thrown in, up the Stream, with Clay or ſmall Stones within, ſufficient to ſink it ſpeedily, and lodge it at the Bottom. Not more than three can con-

there are the beſt *Roach*-Anglers; and I think the beſt *Trout* Anglers are in *Derbyſhire*, for the Waters there are clear to an Extremity.

You

conveniently fiſh in one Boat, which is uſually hired at the Rate of Three-pence *per* Hour. Your Tackle muſt be ſtrong, your Float large, and heavy leaded, to ſink the quicker. The conſtant Bait is a well-ſcoured *Gentle*, three at leaſt on your Hook, which muſt ſwim ten or twelve Inches at moſt, from the Bottom. The beſt Times are, from Half-ebb Tide, to within two Hours of High-Water: And the beſt Places are, the whole Sand-bank in the Middle, facing the *Tower*; *that* oppoſite the *Temple*; before *Whitehall*; and againſt *Chelſea* Church. At theſe Places you will find Plenty of Sport. Some, with very good Succeſs, pick out ſome Stand upon the Shore, among the Chalk-ſtones at the Banks of the *Iſle of Dogs*, near *Limehouſe*, under the Windmills, and fiſh there in the ſame Manner, from Dead-ebb, till within an Hour or more of High-water, retiring backward as the Flood comes in. As the Soil is oozy and ſlippery, Care muſt be taken to chooſe ſuch a Place as you may ſecurely retreat as the Tide advances.

There is alſo another highly approved Method of this Diverſion Below-bridge, called *Stern-fiſhing*; by faſtening a Boat at the Stern of any Collier or Veſſel that has lately been a Voyage, and has her Bottom foul, which contains Inſects and Food for the Fiſh; uſe about two Joints of your Rod at moſt, and a Line not longer than four Feet, your Float fixed within twelve Inches of the Top of it. Angle there with three or four *Gentles* on your Hook at a Time, and lay it in as cloſe to the Ship's Stern as you can, letting it ſwim about three Yards. In this uſe no Ground-bait. You muſt begin when the Tide firſt ebbs, and for two Hours, at leaſt, you will not fail of catching many Fiſh (*Roach* and *Dace*) and thoſe very large ones.

In *Thames* Angling, you muſt beware that you make not your Attempt when there is a cold and raw Air, high Wind, rough Water, or wet Weather, or when there are Spring-tides, or the Land-floods come down. At the Chalk-hill, and about the Piles of *London-Bridge*, there is excellent Sport when the Tide is low. Be always careful to pitch your Boat on that Side of the River that is moſt under the Wind.

§ * §

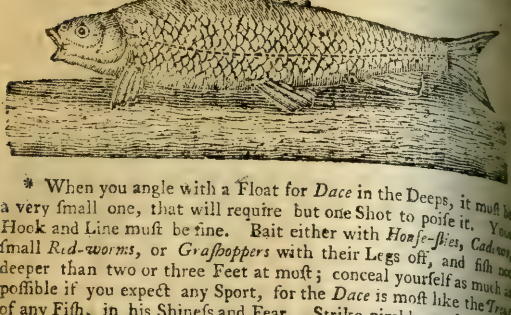
You ſhall fiſh for this *Roach*,

in Winter, with *Paſte*, or *Gentles*; in *April*, with *Worms* or *Cadis*; in the very hot Months, with little white *Snails*, or with *Flies* under Water, for he ſeldom takes them at the Top, though the *Dace* will. In many of the hot Months, *Roaches* may alſo be caught thus: Take a *May* or an *Ant-fly*, ſink him with a little Lead to the Bottom, near to the Piles or Poſts of a Bridge, or near any Poſts of a Wier; I mean any deep Place where *Roaches* lie quietly, and uſually a *Roach* will follow your Bait to the very Top of the Water, and gaze on it there, and run at it and take it, leſt the Fly ſhould get away from him.

I have ſeen this done at *Windſor* and *Henly* Bridges, and great Store of *Roach* taken, and ſometimes a *Dace* or *Chub*. In *Auguſt*, you may fiſh for them with a Paſte made only of the Crumbs of Bread *, and tempered betwixt your Hands till it be both ſoft and tough too; a very little Water, Time and Labour, and clean Hands, will make it a moſt excellent Paſte; but, when you fiſh with it you muſt have a ſmall Hook, a quick Eye, and a nimble Hand, or the Bait is loſt, and the Fiſh too,

* It ſhould be the fineſt and whiteſt, and not too new.—The finer you can angle for this Fiſh—if with a ſingle Hair—it will requite you by having *much more* Sport.

if one may lose that which he never had. With this Paste you may, as I said, take both the *Roach* and the *Dace*, or *Dare* *,



* When you angle with a Float for *Dace* in the Deeps, it must be a very small one, that will require but one Shot to poise it. Your Hook and Line must be fine. Bait either with *House-flies*, *Cadworms*, small *Red-worms*, or *Grashoppers* with their Legs off, and fish not deeper than two or three Feet at most; conceal yourself as much as possible if you expect any Sport, for the *Dace* is most like the *Trout* of any Fish, in his Shiness and Fear. Strike nimbly as soon as he bites. In the *Thames*, you fish for him eight Inches from the Bottom, and use a Ground-bait, as in the Directions for the *Roach*. On a shallow gravelly Scour, use the Running-line, with Paste, Worms, or Gentles.

If you angle in a River, where two Mill-streams are going at the same Time, let it be in the Eddy between them. If the Water proves deep, put within a Foot of the Bottom; but if shallow, which is best (of two, not exceeding three Feet Depth) then bait with three large *Gentles*, use a Cork Float, and place it a Foot and an Half at most from the Hook: Have a quick Eye, and strike at the very first Bite. If any large *Dace* are in the Mill-pool, you will be sure to meet with them here.

At Top-water use the *Flesh-fly* (none equals *this*) or the small *House-fly*. Have a Cane Rod, of seventeen Feet in Length, your Line somewhat longer, to which fasten three or four Hooks, with single Hair-links, not above four Inches long. In a Summer's Evening, go to the smoothest Part at the End of a Mill-stream, where they will rise freely, especially in that Part where the Sun does not shine. This Sport will continue as long as you have Light to see your Flies; and you may take two or three at a Time. The *Ant-fly* is advised *here* in a Morning, or on a Scour, before the Sun comes on the Water.

When the Stream is high, and rises almost to the Bank of the River, put on an *artificial Fly*, called the *Caterpillar fly*, with the yellowest

for they be much of a Kind in Matter of Feeding, Cunning, Goodneſs, and uſually in Size; and, therefore *take this general Direction for ſome other Baits which may concern you to take Notice of.* They will bite almoſt at any Fly, but eſpecially at *Ant-flies*; concerning which take this Direction, for it is very good:

Get the blackiſh *Ant-fly* out of the Mole-hill, or Ant-hill, in which Place you ſhall find them in the Month of *June*; or, if that be too early in the Year, then doubtleſs you may find them in *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt of *September*; gather them alive with both their Wings, and then put them into a Glaſs that will hold a Quart; but firſt put into the Glaſs a Handful or more of the moiſt Earth out of which you gather them, and as much of the Roots of the Graſs of the ſaid Hillock, and then put in the Flies gently; that they loſe not their Wings: Lay a Clod of Earth over it, and then ſo many as are put into the Glaſs without bruiſing, will live there a Month or more, and be always in Readineſs for you to fiſh with; but, if you will have them keep longer, then get any great earthen

yelloweſt *Gentle* you can get, drawn on your Hook up to the Tail of your Fly; whip with it (as for *Bleak*, p. 185) on the Surface; and, if you are expert, you may ſatisfy yourſelf you will have good Sport. *Theſe ſeveral Methods of* Dace-fiſhing, *are reckoned valuable Diſcoveries with modern Anglers, and are thought neceſſary as a Supplement to this Part of Mr.* Walton, *where he has been leaſt particular.* A *Dace* freſh taken, ſcotched and broiled, eats ſweeter, and is more palatable (ſay ſome) than a freſh *Herring*. The *Italians* make a great Dainty of them (pickled as they do *Anchovies*): Some pickle them here alſo, juſt as *Herrings*, and they eat much better; or bake (which diſſolves the Bones) then beat, and pot them down as you do Beef. Some do ſo by any Fiſh, or a Mixture together, and much commend it. They are largeſt, fatteſt, and beſt in *February* or *March*, which is a little before they ſpawn. The Spawn of a *Dace* is counted but indifferent, whereas that of a *Roach* (found about *May*) is eſteemed an excellent Diſh.

Pot, or Barrel of three or four Gallons, which is better; wash your Barrel with Water and Honey, and having put into it a Quantity of Earth and Grass-roots, put in your Flies, and cover it, and they will live a Quarter of a Year. These, in any Stream and clear Water, are a deadly Bait for *Roach* or *Dace*, or for a *Chub*; and your Rule is, to fish not less than a Hand depth from the Bottom.

I shall next tell you a Winter-bait for a *Roach*, *Dace*, or *Chub*, and it is choicely good. About *All-hollantide* (and so till Frost comes) when you see Men plowing up Heath or sandy Ground, or Green-sward, then follow the Plough, and you shall find a white Worm, as big as two Maggots; it hath a red Head; (you may observe in what Ground most are, for there the Crows will be very watchful, and follow the Plough very close) it is all soft, and full of whitish Guts; a Worm that is in *Norfolk*, and some other Counties, called a *Grub*, and is bred of the Spawn or Eggs of a *Beetle*, which she leaves in Holes that she digs in the Ground under Cow or Horse-dung, and there rests all Winter, and in *March* or *April* comes to be first a red, and then a black *Beetle*. Gather a thousand or two of these, and put them, with a Peck or two of their own Earth, into some Tub or Firkin, and cover them so warm, that the Frost or cold Winds kill them not; you may keep them all Winter, and kill Fish with them at any time; and if you put some of them into a little Earth and Honey a Day before you use them, you will find them an excellent Bait for *Bream*, *Carp*, or indeed for almost any Fish.

After this Manner you may also keep *Gentles* all Winter, which is a good Bait then, and much the better for being lively and tough; or you may breed

breed and keep *Gentles* thus. Take a Piece of Beaft's Liver, and with a croſs Stick hang it in ſome Corner, over a Pot or Barrel half full of dry Clay, and, as the *Gentles* grow big, they will fall into the Barrel and ſcour themſelves, and be always ready for uſe whenever you incline to fiſh; Theſe *Gentles* may be thus made till after *Michaelmas*. But if you deſire to keep them to fiſh with all the Year, then get a dead Cat or Kite, let it be Fly-blown, and when the *Gentles* begin to be alive and ſtir, bury it and them in moiſt Earth, but as free from Froſt as you can; theſe you may dig up at any Time when you intend to uſe them; they will laſt till *March*, and about that Time turn to Flies.

But if you are nice to foul your Fingers (which good Anglers ſeldom are) then take this Bait: Get a Handful of well-made Malt, and put it into a Diſh of Water, waſh and rub it betwixt your Hands till you make it clean, and as free from Huſks as you can; then put *that* Water from it, and put a ſmall Quantity of freſh Water to it, and let it in ſomething that is fit for that Purpoſe, over the Fire, where it is not to boil apace, but leiſurely, and very ſlowley, till it become ſomewhat ſoft, which you may try by feeling betwixt your Finger and Thumb; when it is ſoft, put your Water from it, and take a ſharp Knife, and turning the Sprout End of the Corn upward with the Point of your Knife, take the back Part of the Huſk off from it; yet leaving a Kind of inward Huſk on the Corn, or elſe it is marred, and then cut off that ſprouted End, I mean a little of it, that the White may appear, and ſo pull off the Huſk on the cloven Side, as I directed you; then cut off a very little of the other End, ſo that your

Hook may enter; and if your Hook be small, you will find this to be a very good and choice Bait either for Winter or Summer; you sometimes casting a little of it into the Place where your Float swims.

And to take the *Roach* and *Dace*, a good Bait is the young Breed of *Wasps* or *Bees*, if you dip their Heads in Blood; especially good for *Bream*, if they are baked or hardened in their Husks in an oven after the Bread is taken out of it, or on a Fire shovel: So also is the thick Blood of *Sheep*, being half-dried on a Trencher, that you may cut it into such Pieces as may best fit the Size of your Hook; and a little Salt keeps it from growing black, and makes it not the worse, but better. This is taken to be a choice Bait if rightly ordered.

There are several Oils of a strong Smell that I have been told of, and to be excellent to tempt Fish to bite; of which I could say much, but I remember I once carried a small Bottle from Sir *George Hastings* to Sir *Henry Wotton*, they were both Chemical Men. As a great Present it was sent, and received, and used with great Confidence; and yet, upon Enquiry, I found it did not answer the Expectation of Sir *Henry*, which, with the Help of this and other Circumstances, makes me have little Belief in such Things as many Men talk of; not but that I think Fishes both smell and hear, as I have expressed in my former Discourse. But there is a mysterious Knack, which, though it be much easier than the Philosopher's Stone, yet is not attainable by common Capacities, or else lies locked up in the Brain or Breast of some chemical Man,

Man, that, like the *Roficrucians*, will not yet reveal it. Let me (nevertheleſs) tell you, that *Cambire* put with Moſs *into your Worm-bag with your Worms*, makes them, if many Anglers be not very much miſtaken, a tempting Bait, and the Angler more fortunate. But I ſtepped by Chance into this Diſcourſe of Oils, and Fiſhes ſmelling. And though there might be more ſaid, both of *it*, and of Baits for *Roach* and *Dace*, and other Float-Fiſh, yet I will forbear it at this Time, and tell you in the next Place, how you are to prepare your Tackle: Concerning which, I will for Sport-ſake, give you an old Rhime out of an old fiſh Book, which will be a Part, and but a Part, of what you are to provide.

My Rod, my Line, my Float and my Lead,
My Hook and my Plummet, my Whetſtone and Knife,
My Basket, my Baits, both living and dead,
My Net and my Meat, for that is the chief;
Then I muſt have Thread, and Hairs green and ſmall,
With mine angling Pouch,—and ſo you have all.

But you muſt have all theſe, and twice ſo many more; with which, if you mean to be a Fiſher, you muſt ſtore yourſelf *.

Vena. Then, good Maſter, I pray you let us meet the ninth of *May* next, about two of the Clock, and I will want nothing that a Fiſher ſhould be furniſhed with.

Piſc. Well, and I will not fail you, God willing at the Time appointed.

Vena. I thank you, good Maſter, and I will not fail you: And, good Maſter, tell me what Baits more

* I have heard, that the Tackling hath been prized at Fifty Pounds in the Inventory of an Angler. Mr. *Wharton's own* Note.

more you remember, for it will not now be long ere we shall be at *Tottenham-high-cross*; and when we come thither, I will make you some Requital of your Pains, by repeating as choice a Copy of Verses, as any we have heard since we met together; and that is a proud Word, for we have heard very good ones.

Pis. Well, Scholar, and I shall be as glad to hear them; and I will, as we walk, tell you whatsoever comes in my Mind, that I think may be worth your hearing.

§ * §

You may make another choice Bait thus: Take a Handful or two of the best and biggest Wheat you can get, boil it in a little Milk, as Furmety is made, till it be soft, then fry it very leisurely with Honey, and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in Milk, and you will find this a choice Bait, and good, I think, for any Fish, especially a *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, or *Greyling*: I know not but that it may be as good for a River *Carp*, and especially if the Ground be a little baited with it. And you may also note that the *Spawn* of most Fish is a very tempting Bait, being a little hardened on a warm Tile and cut into Pieces. Nay, Mulberries, and those Black-berries which grow on Briars, are good Bait for *Chubs* or *Carps*; with these many have been taken in Ponds, and some Rivers where such Trees have grown near the Water and such Fruit customarily dropped into it; and there be an hundred other Baits, more than can be well named, which, by constant feeding the Water, will become a tempting Bait to any Fish in it.

You are also to know, that there are divers Kinds of *Cadis* or *Case-worms*, that are to be found in this Nation, in several distinct Counties, and in several little Brooks that relate to bigger Rivers; as namely, one *Cadis* called a *Piper*, whose Husk or Case is a Piece of Reed about an Inch long, or longer, and as big about as the Compass of a Twopence; these Worms being kept three or four Days in a Woollen Bag, with Sand at the Bottom of it, and the Bag wet once a Day, will in three or four Days turn to be yellow; those are a choice Bait for the *Chub*, or indeed for any great Fish, for it is a large Bait.

There is also a lesser *Cadis-worm*, called a *Cock-spur*, being in Fashion like the Spur of a Cock, sharp at one End, and the Case or House in which this dwells is framed of small Husks or Gravel, and Slime; most curiously made of these, even so as to be wondered at, but not to be wrought by Man; no more than a *King-fisher's* Nest can, which is made of little Fishes Bones, and have such a geometrical interweaving and Connection, as the like is not to be done by Art. This Kind of *Cadis* is a choice Bait for any Float-fish; it is much less than the *Piper-Cadis*, and to be *so* ordered. And may be *so* preserved ten, fifteen, or twenty Days, or it may be longer.

There is also another *Cadis*, called by some a *Straw-worm*, and by others a *Ruff-coat*, whose House or Case is made of little Pieces of Bents, Rushes, Straws, and Water-weeds, and I know not what, which are so knit together with condensed Slime, that they stick about her Husk or Case not unlike the Bristles of a *Hedge-Hog*. These three *Cadews* are commonly taken in the

Beginning

Beginning of Summer *, and are good indeed to take any Kind of Fish with Float or otherwise. I might tell you of many more, which as these do early, so those have their Time of turning to be Flies later in Summer; but I might lose myself, and tire you by such a Discourse; I shall therefore but remember you, that to know these, and their several Kinds, and to what Flies every particular *Cadis* turns, and then how to use them, first as they be *Cadis*, and after as Flies, is an Art; and an Art that every one that professes to be an Angler has not Leisure to search after; and, if he had, is not capable of learning.

I will tell you, Scholar, several Countries have several Kinds of *Cadisses*, that indeed differ as much as Dogs do; that is to say, as much as a very Cur and a Greyhound. These are usually bred in the very little Rills or Ditches that run into bigger Rivers; and I think a more proper Bait for those very Rivers, than any other. I know not how, or of what this *Cadis* receives Life, or what coloured Fly it turns to; but, doubtless, they are the Death of many *Trouts*.

§ * §

And this is one killing Way: Take one, or more if Need be, of these large yellow *Cadis*, pull off his Head, and with it pull out his black Gut, put the Body (as little bruised as is possible) on a very little Hook, armed *on* with a red Hair, which will shew like the *Cadis Head*, and a very little thin Lead, so put upon the Shank of the Hook, that

* By feeling against the Sides of Posts or Boards, or Rushes about a Foot under Water, where they cling, and look like Bits of rotten Sticks or Reeds. You will see them lie thick by the Sides of Shallows, on the Sand, in any little Creeks or Ditches nigh the River. Use a cleft Stick (as see p. 209.)

...at it may ſink preſently; throw this Bait thus ...ered (which will look very yellow) into any ...eat ſtill Hole where a *Trout* is, and he will pre... ...ly venture his Life for it, 'tis not to be doubted, ...ou be not eſpied, and that the Bait firſt touch ... Water before the Line; and this will do beſt ... the deepeſt, ſtilleſt Water.

Next, let me tell you, I have been much pleaſed ... walk quietly by a Brook, with a little Stick in ... Hand, with which I might eaſily take theſe, ... conſider the Curioſity of their Compoſure; ..., if you ſhall ever like to do ſo, then, note, ... your Stick muſt be a little Hazel or Willow ..., or have a Nitch at one End of it; by which ...eans you may with Eaſe take many of them in ... Nitch out of the Water, before you have any ...caſion to uſe them. Theſe my honeſt Scholar, ... ſome Obſervations told you as they now come ...idenly into my Memory; of which you may ...ke ſome Uſe: But, for the practical Part, it is ... makes an Angler; it is Diligence and Obſer...tion, and Practice, and an Ambition to be the ... in the Art, that muſt do it. I will tell you, ...holar, I once heard one ſay, "*I envy not him ... that eats better Meat, nor that is richer, or that ... wears better Cloaths than myſelf: I envy no body ... but him, and him only, that catches more Fiſh ... than I do.*" And ſuch a Man is like to prove ... Angler: And this noble Emulation I wiſh to ..., and all young Anglers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

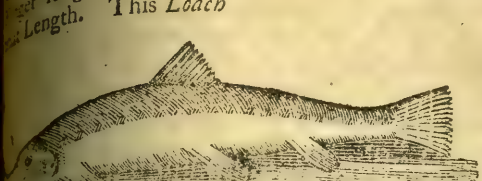
Of the Minnow *or* Penk, *the* Loach; *and of the* Bull-head, *or* Miller's-thumb.

Pisc. THERE are also three or four other little Fish that I had almost forgot, that are all without Scales, and may for Excellency of Meat be compared to any Fish of greatest Value, and larger Size. They are usually full of Eggs, or Spawn, all the Months of Summer; for they breed often, as 'tis observed Mice, and many of the smaller four-footed Creatures of the Earth do; and as those so these come quickly to their full Growth and Perfection. And it is needful that they breed both often and numerously; for they are (besides other Accidents of Ruin) both a Prey and Baits for other Fish. And first, I shall tell you of the *Minnow* or *Penk*.

The *Minnow* hath, when he is in perfect Season, and not sick (which is only presently after spawning) a Kind of dappled or waved Colour, like a *Panther*, on his Sides, inclining to a greenish and sky Colour, his Belly being Milk-white, and his Back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp Biter at a small Worm, and in hot Weather makes admirable Sport for young Anglers, or Boys, or Women that love that Recreation; and, in the Spring, they make of them dilicious *Minnow-Tansies*: For, *being washed well in Salt, their Heads and Tails cut off, and their Guts taken out, and not washed after, they prove excellent for that Use, being fried with Yolks of Eggs, the Flowers of Cowslips and Primroses, and a little Tansy. Thus used they make a dainty Dish of Meat.*

The *Loach* is, as I told you, a most dainty Fish; he breeds and feeds in little and clear swift Brooks

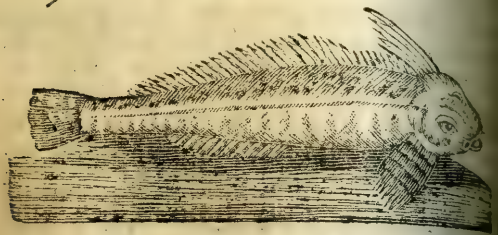
Rills, and lives there upon the Gravel, and in sharpeſt Streams: He grows not to be above a ger long, and no thicker than is ſuitable to Length. This *Loach*



ſt unlike the Shape of the *Eel*: He has a Beard, Wattels, like a *Barbel*; he has two Fins at his s, four at his Belly, and one at his Tail; he ppled with many black or brown Spots; his uth is *Barbel*-like under his Noſe; he is uſually of Eggs, or Spawn; and is by *Geſner*, and er learned Phyſicians, commended for great riſhment, and to be very grateful both to the ver and Stomach of ſick Perſons. He is to be ed for with a very ſmall Worm at the Bottom, he ſeldom or never riſes above the Gravel, on ich I told you he uſually gets his Living.

The *Miller's-thumb*, or *Bull-head*, is a Fiſh of pleaſing Shape. He is by *Geſner* compared to *Sea-toad-fiſh*, for his Similitude and Shape. It a Head big and flat, much greater than ſuitable his Body; a Mouth very wide, and uſually ping. He is without Teeth, but his Lips are y rough, much like to a File. He hath two s near his Gills, which are roundiſh, or creſted, o under the Belly, two on the Back, one below e Vent, and the Fin of his Tail is round. Na- e has painted the Body of this Fiſh with whitiſh, kiſh, browniſh Spots. They are uſually full of

of Spawn all the Summer, (I mean the Females) which ſwells their Vents almoſt into the Form of a Dug. They begin to ſpawn about *April*, and as I told you, do ſo ſeveral Months in the Summer; and, in the Winter, the *Minnows*, *Loach*, and *Bull-head*, dwell in the Mud, as the *Eel* doth, or we know not where; no more than we know where the *Cuckow* and *Swallow*, and other half-year-Birds, which firſt appear to us in *April*, ſpend their ſix cold, Winter, melancholy Months. The *Bull-head*



uſually dwells and hides himſelf in Holes, or among Stones in clear Water; and, in very hot Days, will lie a long Time very ſtill, and ſun himſelf, and will be eaſy to be ſeen upon any flat Stone, or Gravel; at which Time he will ſuffer an Angler to put a Hook, baited with a ſmall Worm, very near and *to* his very Mouth, and he never refuſes to bite, nor indeed to be caught by the worſt of Anglers. *Matthiolus* commends him much more for his Taſte and Nouriſhment, than for his Shape or Beauty.

There is alſo a little Fiſh called a *Stickleback*; a Fiſh without Scales, but hath his Body fenced with ſeveral Prickles. I know not where he dwells in Winter, nor what he is good for in Summer, but

only to make Sport for Boys and Women-Anglers, and to feed other Fish of Prey, as *Trouts* in particular, who will bite at him as at a Penk, and better, if your Hook be rightly baited with him, for he may be so placed, as his Tail, turning like the Sail of a Wind-mill, will make him move more quick than any *Minnow* can, for the nimble turning of that is the Perfection of *Minnow*-fishing.

§ * §

To which End, if you put your Hook into his Mouth and out at his Tail, having tied him with white Thread a little above his Tail, and placed him after such a Manner on your Hook as he is like to turn; then sew up his Mouth to your Line, and if he is like to turn quick and tempt any *Trout*: But if he do not turn quick, then place his Tail a little more or less towards the inner Part, or towards the Side of the Hook, or put the *Minnow* or *Sticklebag* a little more crooked or more strait on your Hook, till it will turn both true and fast; and then doubt not but to tempt any great *Trout* that lies in a swift Stream. And the *Loach* that I told you of will do the like; no Bait is more tempting, provided the *Loach* be not too big.

And now, Scholar, with the Help of this fine Morning, and your patient Attention, I have said all that my present Memory will afford me concerning most of the several Fish that are usually fished for in fresh Waters.

Ven. But, Master, you have by your former Civility, made me hope that you will make good your Promise, and say something of the several Waters that are of most Note in this Nation; and also

also of Fish Ponds, and the ordering of them; and P. I. do it, I pray, good master, for I love any Dis- course of Rivers, and Fish, and Fishing: the Time spent in such Discourse, passes away very plea- santly.

CHAP. XIX.

*Of several Rivers *, and some Observations of Fish.*

Pisc. WELL, Scholar, since the Ways and Weather both favour us, and that we yet see not *Tottenham Cross*, you shall see my Willingness to satisfy your Desire. And first, for the Rivers of this Nation: There are (as you may note out of Dr. *Heylin's Geography*, and others) in Number 325; but those of the chiefest Note he reckons and describes as followeth:

The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of two Ri- vers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rises somewhat beyond *Thame*, in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter near *Cirencester*, in *Gloucestershire* †, meet together about *Dorcester*, in *Oxfordshire*; the Issue of which happy Conjunction is the *Thamisis*, or *Thames*. Hence it flieth between *Berks*, *Buckingham- shire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent*, and *Essex*, and so weddeth himself to the *Kentish Medway*, in the very Jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feels the Violence and Benefit of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing

* Mr. *Walton* intended here, no more than a very succinct Ac- count of those *six*, which are called the principal Rivers.

† It is surprizing our Writers, in common, are so dark in this Matter. The *three Spring-heads* that form it, is confidently true of all *(at)* at, or very nigh, *Tring* in *Hertfordshire*, bordering on *Buckinghamshire*.

flowing twice a Day, more than sixty Miles; about whose Banks are so many fair Towns and princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly spake:

Tot campos, &c.

Who saw so many Woods and princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers,
So many Gardens dress'd with curious Care,
Great Thames *with royal* Tiber *may compare.*

2. The second River of Note is *Sabrina*, or *Severn*: It hath is Beginning in *Plinlimmon-hill*, in *Montgomeryshire*, and his End seven Miles from *Bristol*, washing in the mean Space the Walls of *Shrewsbery*, *Worcester*, and *Gloucester*, and divers other Places and Palaces of Note.

3. *Trent*, so called for thirty Kinds of Fishes that are found in it, or that it receiveth thirty * other Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Counties of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent Current of *Humber*, the most violent Stream of all this Isle. The *Humber* is not, to say Truth, a distinct River having a Spring-head of his own, but rather the Mouth, or *Æstuary* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together; namely, the *Derwent* and especially of *Ouse* and *Trent*; and changeth his Name into this of *Humber*.

4. *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy.

5. *Tweed*, the North-east Bound of *England*; on whose Banks is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Berwick*.

6. *Tine*,

* From *Triginta*, thirty.

6. *Tine*, famous for *Newcaſtle*, and her inexhauſtible Coal-pits. Theſe, and the reſt of principal Note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton's* Sonnets.

The Floods-Queen, Thames, *for Ships and Swans is crown'd,*
And ſtately Severn *for her Shore is prais'd;*
The cryſtal Trent *for Fords and Fiſh renown'd,*
And Avon's *Fame to* Albion's *Cliffs is rais'd.*
Carlegion Cheſter *vaunts her holy* Dee,
York *many Wonders of her* Ouſe *can tell:*
The Peak *her* Dove, *whoſe Banks ſo fertile be;*
And Kent *will ſay her* Medway *doth excell.*
Cotſwool *commends her* Iſis *to the* Thame,
Our Northern Borders boaſt of Tweed's *fair Flood.*
Our Weſtern Parts extol their Willies *Fame,*
And the old Lea *brags of the* Daniſh * *Blood.*

Theſe Obſervations are out of learned Doctor *Heylin*, and my old deceaſed Friend *Michael Drayton*, and becauſe you ſay you love ſuch Diſcourſes as theſe of *Rivers*, of *Fiſh* and *Fiſhing*, I love you the better, and love the more to impart them to you. Nevertheleſs, Scholar, if I ſhould begin but to name the ſeveral Sorts of ſtrange Fiſh that are uſually taken in many of theſe Rivers that run into the Sea, I might beget Wonder in you or Unbeliefe, or both; and yet I will venture to tell you a real Truth concerning one lately diſſected by Doctor *Wharton*, a Man of great Learning and Experience, and of equal Freedom to communicate it; one that loves me and my Art; one to whom I have been beholden for many of the choiceſt Obſervations

* The *Danes* came up the River *Lea*, in *Eſſex*, in Veſſels as far as *Durelitum* (now *Low-Layton*) in invading *England*, ſome ſay to *Hert-*

servations I have imparted to you. This good Man, that dares do any thing rather than tell an Untruth, did, I say, tell me he lately dissected one strange Fish; and he thus described it to me:

He was almost a Yard broad, and twice that Length; his Mouth wide enough to receive or take into it the Head of a Man; his Stomach seven or eight Inches broad. He is of a slow Motion, and usually lies or lurks close in the Mud, and has a moveable String on his Head, about a Span, or near a Quarter of a Yard long; by the moving of which (which is his natural Bait) *when he lies close and unseen in the Mud, he draws other smaller Fish so close to him, that he can suck them into his Mouth, and so devours them* *.

And, Scholar, do not wonder at this; for besides the Credit of the Relator, you are to note, many of these, and Fishes which are of the like, and more unusual Shapes, are very often taken on the Mouths of our Sea-Rivers, and on the Sea-shore: And this will be no Wonder to any that have travelled *Egypt*, where 'tis known the famous River *Nile* does not only breed Fishes that yet want Names, but the Overflowing of that River, and the Help of the Sun's Heat on the fat Slime which that River leaves on the Banks, when it falls back into its natural Channel, strange Fish and Beasts are also bred that no Man can give a Name to, as *Grotius* † and others have observed.

But whither am I strayed in this Discourse? I will end it by telling you, that at the Mouth of some of these Rivers of ours, *Herrings* are so

* This agrees with the Account given before, Chap. i. p. 24. the *Cuttle-fish*.

† In his *Sopham*.

plentiful, as namely, near to *Yarmouth*, in *Norfolk*; and, in the West Country, *Pilchards*, so very plentiful, as you will wonder to read what our learned *Camden* relates of them in his *Britannia*, P. 178, 186.

Well, Scholar, I will stop here, and tell you what, by Reading and Conference, I have observed concerning Fish-Ponds.

CHAP. XX.

Of Fish-Ponds, and how to order them *.

DOCTOR *Lebault*, the learned *Frenchman*, in his large Discourse of *Mason Rustique*, gives this Direction for making of Fish-Ponds; I shall refer

* I shall transcribe a Remark on this Head, that deserves very much the Attention of the Public. *It is surprizing* (says my Author) *that, considering the Benefit which will accrue from making* Fish-Ponds, *it is not more generally practised.* For, besides *furnishing the Table, and raising Money, the Value of the Land would be wastly improved, and be worth more* this Way, than any other whatsoever.—*For, suppose a Meadow to be worth* Forty Shillings per Acre, four Acres, *converted into* a Pond, *will return* every Year, a thousand fed Carp, *from the least Size, to fourteen or fifteen Inches long*, besides Pike, Pearch, Tench, *and other Fish. The* Carp *alone, may be reckoned to bring (one with another)* Six-Pence, Nine-pence, *and perhaps* Twelve-pence a Piece, *amounting, at the lowest Rate, to* Twenty-five Pounds, *and, at the highest, to* Fifty; *which would be a very considerable, as well as useful Improvement.* And the more so, as the worst Land, and least useful, such as *heathy*, and inclinable to be *moorish, and fullest of Springs*, that has a *Drain at the Bottom, or from the Sides of a Hill*, and would fetch (scarcely) anything for other Uses, is *the best for this Purpose*: Which is a very particular Circumstance, that well merits Consideration, and I refer it to Gentlemen that are desirous of improving Estates in these Conditions.

There is a well-wrote, valuable little Pamphlet (if to be met with) printed about the Year 1720, for *Edmund Curl*, in the *Strand*, intitled, *A Discourse of* Fish and Fish Ponds, *by a Person of Honour*, highly worth the perusing. I was in Possession of it when I wrote the above Note, and have often regretted the Loss of it.

refer you to him to read it at large, but I think I shall contract it, and yet make it as useful.

He advises, that, when you have drained the Ground, and made the Earth firm where the Head of the Pond must be, that you must then in that Place, drive in two or three Rows of Oak or Elm Piles, which should be scorched in the Fire, or half burnt, before they be driven into the Earth (for being thus used, preserves them much longer from rotting) and having done so, lay Faggots or Bavins of smaller Wood betwixt them, and Earth betwixt and above them, and, having first very well rammed them and the Earth, use another Pile in like Manner as the first were: and note, that the second Pile is to be of, or about the Height that you intend to make your Sluice or Flood-gate, or the Vent that you intend shall convey the Overflowing of your Pond into any Flood that shall endanger the breaking of the Pond-Dam.

Then he advises, that you plant Willows or Osiers about it, or both; and then cast in Bavins in some Places not far from the Side, and in the most sandy Places, for Fish both to spawn upon, and to defend them and the young Fry from the many Fish, and also Vermin that lie at watch to destroy them, especially the Spawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*, when it is left to the Mercy of Ducks or Vermin.

He and *Dubravius*, and all others, advise that you make Choice of such a Place for your Pond, that it may be refreshed with a little Rill, or with Rain-water running or falling into it; by which, Fish are more inclined both to breed, and are also refreshed and fed the better, and do prove to be of much sweeter and more pleasant Taste.

It is observed, that such Pools as be large, and have most Gravel and Shallows, where Fish may

ſport themſelves, afford Fiſh of the pureſt Taſte. And, in all Pools, it is beſt for Fiſh to have ſome Retiring-place*, as namely, hollow Banks, Shelves, or Roots of Trees, to keep them from Danger, and, when they think fit, from the extreme Heat of Summer, as alſo from the Extremity of Cold in Winter. And note, that if many Trees be growing about your Pond, the Leaves thereof falling into the Water, makes it nauſeous to the Fiſh, and the Fiſh to be ſo to the Eater of it.

It is noted, that the *Tench* and *Eel* love Mud, and the *Carp* loves gravelly Ground, and, in the hot Months to feed on Graſs. You are to cleanſe your Pond, if you intend either Profit or Pleaſure, once every three or four Years, eſpecially *ſome Ponds*; then let it lie dry ſix or twelve Months, both to kill the Water-weeds, as *Water-lillies*, *Candocks*, *Reate*, and *Bull-ruſhes*, that breed there; and alſo, that as theſe die for Want of Water, ſo Graſs may grow on the Pond's Bottom, which *Carp* will eat greedily in all the hot Months, if the Pond be clean. The letting your Pond dry, and ſowing Oats at the Bottom, is alſo good, for the Fiſh feed the faſter: And, being ſome Time let dry, you may obſerve what Kind of Fiſh either increaſes or thrives beſt in that Water; for they differ much both in their breeding and feeding.

Lebault alſo adviſes, that if your Ponds be not very large and roomy, that you often feed your Fiſh, by throwing into them Chippings of Bread, Curds, Grains, or the Entrails of Chickens, or of any Fowl or Beaſt that you kill to feed yourſelves; for

* A ſmall ſquare Pit is beſt, of *three Feet deep*, dug *in the Middle of the Pond*, with four ſtrong Stakes drove into the Ground, and a Cover of *Wood* faſtened above. It provides the *Fiſh* a Retreat, and will tear any Net, thrown in, to Pieces.

for these afford Fish a great Relief. He says, that Frogs and Ducks do much Harm, and devour both the Spawn and the young Fry of all Fish, especially of the *Carp*: And I have, besides Experience, many Testimonies of it. But *Lebault* allows Water-Frogs to be good Meat, especially in some Months, if they be fat. But you are to note, that he is a *Frenchman*, and we *English* will hardly believe him, though we know Frogs are usually eaten in his Country: However, he advises to destroy them and *King-fishers* out of your Ponds, and not to suffer much shooting at Wild Fowl, for that, he says, affrightens, harms, and destroys the Fish.

Note, that *Carps* and *Tench* thrive and breed best, when no other Fish is put with them into the same Pond; for all other Fish devour their Spawn, or at least the greatest Part of it. And note, that Clods of Grass thrown into a Pond, feed the *Carps* in Summer; and Garden-earth and Parsley thrown in, recovers and refreshes the sick Fish. And note, that when you store your Pond, you are to put into it two or three *Melters* * for one *Spawner*, if you put them into a Breeding-Pond: but: if into a Nurse, or Feeding-Pond, in which they will not breed, then no Care is to be taken, whether there be most male or female *Carps*.

It is observed, that the best Ponds to breed *Carps*, are those that are stony or sandy, and are warm, and free from Wind, and that are not deep, but have Willow-trees, and Grass on their sides, over which the Water does sometimes flow: And note, that *Carps* do more usually breed in Marle-Pits, or Pits that have clean Clay Bottoms, than in new Ponds, or in those that lie dry a Winter-

* Viz. *Males*.

Seaſon, than in old Ponds, that are full of Mud and Weeds.

Well, Scholar, I have told you the Subſtance of all that either Obſervation or Diſcourſe, or a diligent Survey of *Dubravius* and *Lebault* have told me. Not that they, in their long Diſcourſes, have not ſaid more; but moſt of the reſt are ſuch common Obſervations, as if a Man ſhould tell a good Arithmetician, that twice two is four—I will therefore end this Diſcourſe—and we will here ſit down and reſt us.

CHAP. XXI.

Directions for making a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.

Piſc. WELL, Scholar, I have held you too long about theſe *Cadews*, and ſmaller *Fiſh*, and *Rivers*, and *Fiſh-Ponds*, and my Spirits are almoſt ſpent, and ſo I doubt is your Patience: But being we are now almoſt at *Tottenham*, where I *firſt met you*, and where *we are to part*, I will loſe no Time; but give you a little Direction how to make and order your Lines, and to colour the Hair of which you make them, for that is very needful to be known by an Angler; and alſo how to paint your Rod, eſpecially your Top; for a right grown Top is a choice Commodity, and ſhould be preſerved from the Water ſoaking into it, which makes it in wet Weather to be heavy, and fiſh unfavouredly, and not true, and alſo it rots quickly for want of painting; and I think a good Top is worth preſerving, or I had not taken Care to keep one above twenty Years.

But

§ * §

But first for your Line.

Take Care that your Hair be round and clear, and free from Galls, Scabs, or Frets; for a well-chosen, even, clear, round Hair, of a Kind of Glass-colour, will prove as strong as three uneven scaby Hairs that are ill chosen, and full of Galls and unevenness. You shall seldom find a black Hair but is round, but many white are flat and uneven: and, therefore, if you get a Lock of right, round, clear, Glass-colour'd Hair, make much of it.

And, for making your Line, observe this Rule: Let your Hair be clean washed ere you go about to twist it; then chuse not only the cleerest Hair for it, but Hairs that are of an equal Bigness, for such usually stretch all alike, and not break singly one by one (and so deceive the *Angler* that trusts to them) but all together.

When you have twisted your Links, lay them in Water for a Quarter of an Hour at least, then twist them over again before you tie them into a Line; for those that do not so, shall usually find their Lines to have a Hair or two shrunk, and shorter than the rest, at the first fishing with them; which is so much of the Strength of the Line lost, for want of first watering and then retwisting it; and this is the most visible in a Seven-hair-line, one of which hath always a black Hair in the Middle.

For dying of your Hairs, do it thus:

Take a Pint of strong Ale, Half a Pound of Soot, a little Quantity of the Juice of Walnut-tree Leaves, and an equal Quantity of Allum; put these together into a Pipkin, boil them Half an

Hour, and, being cold, put your Hair into it, and there let it lie; it will turn it to a Kind of Water- or Glass-colour, or greenish; and, the longer you let it lie, the deeper coloured it will be. You might be taught to make many other Colours, but it is to little Purpose; for, doubtless, the Water or Glass-coloured Hair is the most choice and useful for an Angler; but let it not be too green.

But, if you desire to colour Hair greener, take a Quart of small Ale, and Half a Pound of Allum; put these into a Pipkin, and your Hair with them, boil it softly for Half an Hour, and take out your Hair, and let it dry; then take a Pottle of Water, put into it two Handfuls of Marigolds, cover it with a Tile, and boil this again softly for Half an Hour, about which Time the Scum will turn yellow; then put into it Half a Pound of Copperas beaten small, and with it the Hair you intend to colour; let the Hair be boiled softly till Half the Liquor be wasted, then let it cool three or four Hours with your Hair in it: And you are to observe, that the more Copperas you put into it, the greener it will be; but, doubtless, the pale Green is best. But if you desire yellow Hair (which is only good when the Weeds rot) put in the more Marigolds, and abate most of the Copperas, or leave it quite out, and take a little Verdegrease instead of it.

And for painting your Rod, which must be in Oil, first make a Size with Glue and Water boiled together, till the Glue be dissolved, and the Size of a Lie-colour; then strike your Size upon the Wood with a Brush, whilst it is hot; *that* being quite dry, take White-lead, a little Red-lead, and a little Coal-black, so much as when mixed will make an Ash colour; grind these all together with Linseed

Linseed Oil, let it be thick, and lay it thin upon the Word with a Pencil; this do for the Ground of any Colour to lie upon Wood.

For a GREEN, take *Pink* and *Verdegrease*, and grind them together in Linseed Oil, as thin as you well can, then lay it smoothly on with your Brush, and drive it thin; once doing, for the most Part, will serve, if you lay it well, and if twice, be sure your first Colour be thoroughly dry before you lay on a second.

Well, Scholar, having now taught you to paint your Rod, and we having still a Mile to *Tottenham High-cross*, I will, as we walk towards it, in the cool Shade of this sweet *Honeysuckle-hedge*, mention to you some of the Thoughts and Joys that have possessed my Soul since we two met together. And these Thoughts shall be told you, that you also may join with me in *Thankfulness*, to the Giver of every good and perfect Gift, for our Happiness: And, that our present Happiness may appear to be the greater, and we the more *thankful for it*, I will beg you to consider with me, how many do, even at this very Time, lie under the Torment of the *Stone*, the *Gout*, and *Tooth ach*; and this we are free from. And *every Misery that I miss is a new Mercy:* And, therefore, *let us be thankful*—There have been, since we met, others that have had Disasters of broken Limbs; some have been blasted; others Thunder-stricken: and we have been freed from these; and all those many other Miseries that threaten Human Nature: Let us, therefore, rejoice and *be thankful.* Nay, which is a far greater Mercy, we are free from the insupportable Burthen of an accusing, tormenting

Conſcience; a Miſery that none can bear: And, therefore, let us praiſe Him for his preventing Grace, and ſay, *Every Miſery that I miſs, is a new Mercy*—Nay, let me tell you, there be many that have forty Times our Eſtates, that would give the greateſt Part of them to be healthful and chearful, like us; who, with the Expence of a little Money, have eat, and drank, and laughed, and angled, and ſung, and ſlept ſecurely;—and roſe next Day, and caſt away Care, and ſung, and laughed, and angled again, which are Bleſſings rich Men cannot purchaſe with all their Money. Let me tell you, Scholar, I have a rich Neighbour, that is always ſo buſy, that he has no Leiſure to laugh; the whole Buſineſs of his Life is to get Money—and more Money, that he may—ſtill get more and more Money; he is ſtill drudging on, and ſays, that *Solomon* ſays, *the diligent Hand maketh rich*; and it is true indeed. But he conſiders not, that it is not in the Power of Riches to make a Man happy: For it was wiſely ſaid, by a Man of great Obſervation, "*That there be as many Miſeries* be-"yond *Riches*, *as on* this Side *them*." And yet God deliver us from pinching Poverty, and grant, that, having a Competency, we may be content *and thankful*. Let us not repine, or ſo much as think the Gifts of God unequally dealt, if we ſee another abound with Riches, when, as God knows, the Cares that are *the Keys* that keep thoſe Riches, hang often ſo heavily at the rich Man's Girdle, that they clog him with weary Days and reſtleſs Nights, even when others ſleep quietly. We ſee but the Outſide of the rich Man's Happineſs; few conſider him to be like the *Silk-worm*, that, when ſhe ſeems to play, is, at the very ſame Time, ſpinning her own Bowels, and conſuming herſelf. And this many

many rich Men do, loading themſelves with corroding Cares, to keep what they have (probably) unconſcionably got. Let us, therefore, *be thankful* for Health and a Competence; and, above all, for a quiet Conſcience.

Let me tell you, Scholar, that *Diogenes* walked on a Day with his Friend, to ſee a *Country Fair*, where he ſaw *Ribbons* and *Looking-glaſſes*, and *Nut-crackers*, and *Fiddles*, and *Hobby-horſes*, and many other *Gim cracks*; and having obſerved them, and all the other *Finnimbruns* that make a compleat Country Fair, he ſaid to his Friend, "*Lord! how many Things are there in this World of which* Diogenes *hath no Need!*" And truly it is ſo, or might be ſo, with very many who vex and trouble themſelves to get what they have no Need of—Can any Man charge God that he hath not given him enough to make his Life happy? No, doubtleſs! For Nature is content with a little; and yet you ſhall hardly meet with a Man that complains not of ſome Want, though he indeed wants nothing but his Will, it may be,—nothing but his Will to hate his poor Neighbour for not worſhipping, or not flattering him: And thus, when we might be happy and quiet, we create Trouble to ourſelves.—I have heard of a Man who was angry with himſelf becauſe he was not taller: and of a Woman who broke her *Looking glaſs*, becauſe it would not ſhew her Face to be as young and handſome as her next Neighbour's was. And I knew another to whom God had given Health and Plenty, but a Wife that Nature had made peeviſh, and, her Husband's Riches, had made *Purſe-proud*; and moſt, becauſe ſhe was rich (and for no other Virtue) ſit in the higheſt Pew in the Church:

Which being denied her she engaged her Husband into a Contention for it, and at last into a Law-suit with a dogged Neighbour, who was as rich as he, and had a Wife as peevish and *purse-proud* as the other. And this Law-suit begot higher Oppositions, and actionable Words, and more Vexations and Law-suits: For you must remember, that both were rich, and must therefore have their Wills. Well, this wilful *purse-proud* Law-suit lasted during the Life of the first Husband; after which, his Wife vexed and chid—and chid and vexed—till she also chid and vexed herself into her Grave: And so the Wealth of these poor rich People was cursed into a Punishment, because they wanted *meek and thankful Hearts*, for those only can make us happy—I knew a Man that had Health and Riches, and several Houses, all beautiful, and ready furnished, and would often trouble himself and Family to be removing from one House to another; and being asked by a Friend, why he removed so often from one House to another? Replied, "*It was to find Content in some* one *of them:*" But his Friend, knowing his Temper, told him, if he would find Content in any of his Houses, he must *leave himself behind him:* For Content will never dwell but in a meek and quiet Soul. And this may appear, if we read and consider what our Saviour says in St. *Matthew's* Gospel*: For he there says—*Blessed are the Merciful, for they shall obtain Mercy—Blessed be the pure in Heart, for they shall see God—Blessed be the poor in Spirit, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven*; and *Blessed be the* Meek, *for* they shall possess the Earth—Not that the *Meek* shall not also *obtain Mercy*, and *see God*, and *be comforted*, and at last come to

* Chap. iv.

to the *Kingdom of Heaven*; but, in the mean Time *he* (and *he* only) *poſſeſſes the Earth*, as he goes toward that Kingdom of Heaven, by being humble and chearful, and content with what his good God has allotted him. He has no turbulent repining, vexatious Thoughts that he *deſerves* better; nor is vexed when he ſees others poſſeſſed of more Honour or more Riches than his wife God has allotted for his Share; but he poſſeſſes what he has with a meek and contented Quietneſs; ſuch a Quietneſs as makes his very Dreams pleaſing both to God and himſelf.

My honeſt Scholar, all this is told to incline you to thankfulneſs. And, to incline you the more, let me tell you, that though the Prophet *David* was guilty of *Murder* and *Adultery*, and many other of the moſt deadly Sins, yet he was ſaid to be *a Man after God's own Heart*; becauſe he abounded more with *Thankfulneſs* *, than any other that is mentioned in holy Scripture, as may appear in his Book of *Pſalms*; where there is ſuch a Commixture of his confeſſing of his Sins and Unworthineſs, and ſuch *Thankfulneſs* for God's Pardon and Mercies, as did make him to be accounted, even by God himſelf, to be *a Man after his own Heart*: And let us, in that, labour to be as like him as we can—let not the Bleſſings we receive daily from God, make us not to value, or not praiſe him, becauſe they *be common*. – Let not us forget to praiſe him for the innocent Mirth and Pleaſure we have met with ſince we met together. What would a blind Man give to ſee the pleaſant Rivers and Meadows, and Flowers and Fountains, that

* Or rather (as the *Holy Ghoſt* gives the Reaſon, *Acts* xiii. 22.) who *fulfil* all my Will; in Contra-Diſtinction to *Saul*. See the Verſe before (*v.* 21.)

that we have met with since we met together?—I have been told, that if a Man that was born blind could obtain to have his Sight for but only one Hour during his whole Life, and should, at the first opening of his Eyes, fix his Sight upon the Sun when it was in his Glory, either at the rising or setting of it, he would be so transported and amazed, and so admire the Glory of it, that he would not willingly turn his Eyes from that first ravishing Object, to behold all the other various Beauties this World could present to him. And this, and many other like Blessings we enjoy daily; and for most of them, *because they be so common*, most Men forget to pay their Praises; but *let not us!* Because it is a Sacrifice so pleasing to Him that made the Sun and us: and still protects us, and gives us Flowers, and Showers, and Stomachs and Meat, and Content—and Leisure to go a fishing.

Well, Scholar, I have almost tired myself, and I fear more than almost tired you: But I now see *Tottenham High-cross*, and our short Walk thither, shall put a Period to my too long Discourse; in which my Meaning was, and is, to plant that in your Mind, with which I labour to possess my own Soul; that is, *a meek and thankful Heart*. And, to that End, I have shewed you, that Riches, without them do not make any Man happy. But let me tell you, that Riches, with them, remove many Fears and Cares; and therefore my Advice is, that you *endeavour to be honestly rich, or contentedly poor*; but be sure that your Riches be justly got, or you spoil all: for it is well said by Cautin, "*He that loses his Conscience, has nothing left that* "*is worth keeping*;" therefore, be sure you look to that. And, in the next Place, look to your Health;

Health; and, if you have it, praise God, and va-
it next to a good Conscience: For Health is
second Blessing that we Mortals are capable of;
Blessing that Money cannot buy; and therefore
it, and be *thankful for it.* As for Money
which may be said to be the third Blessing) neglect
not; but note, that there is no *Necessity* of be-
rich: For I told you, *there be as many Misе-*
beyond *Riches*, *as on* this Side *them*; and, if
have a Competence, enjoy it with a meek,
earful, thankful Heart. I will tell you, Scholar,
have heard a grave Divine say *, that "*God has*
two Dwellings; *one in Heaven, and the other in*
a meek and thankful Heart." Which Almighty
God grant to me and my honest Scholar!—And
you are welcome to *Tottenham High-cross.*

Ven. Well, Master, I thank you for all your
od Directions, but for none more than this last
Thankfulness, which I hope I shall never forget—
And pray let us now rest ourselves in this sweet
dy Arbour, which Nature herself has woven with
her own fine Fingers; it is such a Contexture of
Honeysuckles, *Sweet-briar*, *Jessamine* and *Myrtle*, and
interwoven, as will secure us both from the Sun's
ardent Heat, and from the approaching Shower;
and, being sat down, I will requite a Part of your
courtesies with a Bottle of *Sack*, *Milk*, *Oranges*,
and *Sugar*, which all put together, make a Drink
like *Nectar*, indeed too good for any but us *Aug-*
lers: And so, Master—here is a full Glass to you
of that Liquor; and, when you have pledged me,
I will repeat the Verses which I promised you. It
is a Copy printed among some of Sir *Henry Wot-*
ton's, and, doubtless, made either by him, or by a

Lover

* *His admired spiritual Father* Dr. John Donne, Dean of St.
Paul's, *in his Sermons.*

Lover of angling — Come, Maſter, now drink a Glaſs to me, and then I will pledge you, and ſall to my Repetition: It is a Deſcription of ſuch *Country Recreations* as I have enjoyed ſince I had the Happineſs to fall into your Company.

Trembling Fears, Heart-rending Cares,
Anxious Sighs, repining Tears,
Fly, fly to Courts,
Fly to fond Worldling's *Sports,*
Where ſtrain'd Sardonic *Smiles are gloſing ſtill,*
And Grief is forc'd to laugh againſt her Will.
Where Mirth's but Mimickry,
And Sorrows only real be.

Fly from our Country Paſtimes, fly,
Sad Troops of human Miſery.
Come ſerene Looks!
Clear as the cryſtal Brooks,
Or the pure azur'd Heaven, that ſmiles to ſee
The rich Attendants on our Poverty:
Peace, and a tranquil Mind,
Which all Men ſeek, we only find.

Deluded Mortals, did you know
Where Joy, Heart's Eaſe *and* Comforts *grow,*
You'd ſcorn proud Towers,
And ſeek them in theſe Bowers,
Where Winds ſometimes our Woods perhaps may ſhake,
But bluſt'ring Care *could never Tempeſt make,*
Nor Murmurs ere come nigh us,
Saving of Fountains that glide by us.

Here's no fantaſtic Mask or Dance,
But of our Kids that friſk and prance;

Nor

Nor Wars are seen,
Unless upon the Green
Two harmless Lambs are butting one the other:
Which done, both bleating run each to his Mother.
And Wounds are never found,
But what the Plough-share gives the Ground.

There is no entrapping Bait
To hasten on too hasty Fate,
Unless it be
The fond Credulity
Of silly Fish, which (Worldling like) still look
On the false Bait, but never at the Hook:
Nor Envy, save among
The Birds, for Price of their sweet Song.

Hark, let the diving Negro seek
For hidden Gems, each lonesome Creek:
We all Pearls scorn,
But what the dewy Morn
Congeals upon each little Spire of Grass,
Which careless Shepherds beat down as they pass:
And Gold ne'er here appears,
Save what the yellow Ceres bears.

Blest silent Groves, oh may you be
For ever Mirth's best Nursery!
May pure Contents
Their lasting Tenements
Fix on these Downs, these Meads, these Rocks, these Hills:
And Peace still slumber by these purling Rills:
Which we may every Year
Meet, when we come a fishing here.

Pisc.

Pisc. Truſt me, Scholar, I thank you heartily for theſe Verſes, they be choicely good, and doubleſs, made by a Lover of angling—Come, now drink a Glaſs to me, and I will requite you with another very good Copy. It is a Farewel to the Vanities of the World, and ſome ſay written by Sir *Harry Wotton* too *, who, I told you, was an excellent Angler: But, let them be writ by whom they will, he that writ them had a brave Soul, and muſt needs be poſſeſſed with happy Thoughts at the Time of their Compoſure.

Farewell ye gilded Follies, pleaſing Troubles;
Farewel, ye honour'd Rags, ye glorious Bubbles:
Fame's but a hollow Eccho, Gold pure Clay,
Honour the Flutterer but of one ſhort Day.
Beauty (th' Eyes Idol) but a damask'd Skin;
State but a golden Priſon to live in
And torture free-born Minds—Embroider'd Trains,
Meerly but Pageants *for proud ſwelling Veins:*
And Blood ally'd to Greatneſs, is alone
Inherited, no Merit of our own. [Birth,
Fame, Honour, Beauty, State, Train, Blood, and
Are all but fading Bloſſoms of the Earth.

I would be Great, *but that the* Sun *doth ſtill*
Point his full Ray againſt the riſing Hill:
I would be High, *but ſee the proudeſt Oak*
Moſt ſubject to th' uprending Thunder-Stroke:
I would be Rich, *but Love of Wealth I find,*
Digs out the Bowels of the richer Mind:

I would

* They are poſitively ſaid to be the great Sir *Walter Raleigh's*, written (and very ſuitably) while a Priſoner in the Tower, a little before his Execution, and appear (vouched *as his*) in a printed Life *of him* yet extant.

I would be Wife, *but that I often see*
The Fox suspected, whilst the Sheep goes free:
I would be Fair, *but see the Fair and Proud*
Like the bright Sun) oft setting in a Cloud:
I would be Poor, *but know the humble Grass*
Is trampled on by each unworthy Ass:
Hated: Wife *suspected:* Scorn'd *if* Poor:
Great fear'd: Fair *tempted:* High *still envy'd more:*
I have wish'd all; but now I wish for neither;
Great, High, Rich, Wife, *nor* Fair: Poor *I'll be rather.*

Would the World *now* adopt *me for* her *Heir*;
Would Beauties Queen *entitle me the* Fair;
Come speak me Fortune's Darling—*could I vie*
With India's *Treasures*—*with a* speaking *Eye*
Command bare Heads—*bow'd Knees*—*strike* Justice *dumb*
As well as blind and lame) or give a Tongue
To Stones by Epitaphs—*be call'd* GREAT MASTER!
In the loose Rhimes of each vain Poetaster—
Could I be more than any Man that lives,
Great, Fair, Rich, Wife, *in all* Superlatives:
Yea—*I more freely would these Gifts resign*
Than ever Fortune would have made them mine;
And hold one Minute *of this* holy Leisure,
Beyond the Riches of this empty Treasure.

Welcome pure Thoughts! Welcome, ye silent Groves!
These Guests, these Courts, my Soul most dearly loves.
Now the wing'd People of the Sky shall sing
My cheerful Anthems to the gladsome Spring.
A Prayer-Book now shall be my looking-glass,
In which I will adorn sweet Virtue's Face.
Here dwell no hateful Looks, no Palace Cares,
No broken Vows dwell here, nor pale Fears:

Then

Then here I'll sit and mourn my hot Love's Folly,
And learn t' affect an holy Melancholy;
And if Contentment *be a Stranger, then*
I'll ne'er look for her, but in Heav'n again.

Vena. Well, Master, these Verses be worthy to keep a Room in every Man's Memory. I thank you for them; and I thank you for your many Instructions, which (God willing) I will not forget. And as St. *Austin* in his Confessions *, commemorates the Kindness of his Friend *Verecundus*, for lending him and his Companion a Country-house, because there they rested and enjoyed themselves free from the Troubles of the World; so, having had the like Advantage, both by your Conversation, and the Art you have taught me, I ought ever to do the like: For, indeed, your Company and Discourse have been so useful and pleasant, that I may truly say, *I have only lived since I enjoyed them, and turned Angler, and not before.* Nevertheless—here I must part with you!—here, in this *new* sad Place, where I was so happy at first to meet you!—But I shall long for the ninth of *May*, for then I hope again to enjoy your beloved Company, at the appointed Time and Place.—And now I wish for some *somniferous Potion*, that might force me to sleep away the intermitted Time, which will pass away with me as *tediously* as it does with Men in Sorrow! Nevertheless—I will make it as short as I can, by my Hopes and Wishes—And, my good Master, I will not forget the Doctrine which you told me *Socrates* taught his Scholars, *That they should not think to be honoured so much for being* Philosophers, *as to honour* Philosophy *by their virtuous Lives.* You advised me

* Lib. iv. cap. 3.

H.Burgh

to the like concerning *Angling*, and I will endeavour to do so, and to live like those many worthy Men, of which you made mention in the former Part of your Discourse. This is my firm Resolution. And, as a pious Man advised his Friend, "*That, to beget* Mortification, *he should frequent* Churches, *and view* Monuments *and* Charnel-houses, *and then and there consider, how many dead Bones Time had piled up at the Gates of* Death;" so when I would beget *Content*, and increase Confidence in the *Power*, and *Wisdom*, and *Providence* of Almighty GOD, I will walk the Meadows by some gliding Stream, and there contemplate the *Lillies*, that take no Care, and those very-many other various, little living *Creatures*, that are not only created, but fed (Man knows not how) by the Goodness of the God of Nature; and, therefore, trust in him. This is my Purpose; and *to—Let every thing that hath Breath praise the Lord!* And let the Blessing of St. *Peter's* Master be with *mine*.

Pisc. And upon all that are Lovers of *Virtue*, and dare trust in his *Providence*, and be *quiet*, and go a' *angling*.

Study *to be quiet*, 1 Thess. iv. 11.

The End of the First Part.

to front the Title

H Burgh delin^t et Sculpsit

THE

Compleat ANGLER.

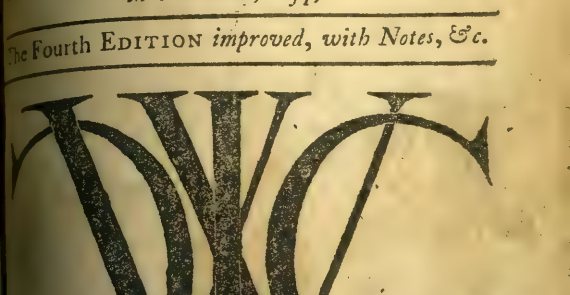
BEING

INSTRUCTIONS how to angle for a TROUT or GRAYLING in a clear *Stream.*

PART II.

By CHARLES COTTON, *of* Berisford *in the* Peak, *Esq;*

The Fourth EDITION *improved, with Notes, &c.*



Qui mihi non credit, faciat licet ipse periclum:
Et fuerit scriptis æquior ille meis.

LONDON:
Printed and Sold by RICHARD and HENRY CAUSTON (Successors to the late Mr. HENRY KENT) at the Printing Office, No. 21, *Bow-Lane*, near the *Royal Exchange*. M DCC LXXII.

To my most Worthy

FATHER and FRIEND

Mr. ISAAC WALTON the Elder.

SIR,

BEING you were pleased, some Years past, to grant me your free Leave to do what I have here attempted; and observing, you never retract any Promise when made in Favour even of your meanest Friends; I accordingly expect to see these following particular Directions for taking of a Trout, *to wait upon your better and more general Rules for* all Sorts of Angling. *And though mine be neither so perfect, so well digested, nor indeed so handsomely couched as they might have been, in so long a Time as since your Leave was granted, yet I dare affirm them to be generally true. And they had appeared too in something a neater Dress, but that I was surprized with the hasty News of a sudden* New Edition *of your* COMPLEAT ANGLER. *So that having but little more than ten Days to turn me in and rouse up my Memory, (for in Truth I have not, in all this long Time, done any thing, though I have often thought upon it, and al-*

most

most as often resolved to go presently about it) *I was forced* on the Instant *to scribble what I here present you: Which I have also endeavoured to accommodate* to your own *Method, and if mine be clear enough for the honest* Brothers of the Angle *readily to understand* (*which is the only thing I aim at*) *then I have* my End, *and shall make no farther Apology: A Writing of this Kind not requiring, if I was Master of any such thing, any Elegance to set it off and recommend it. So that if you in your better Judgment* (*or Kindness rather*) *can allow it passable for a thing of this Nature, you will then do me Honour, if the* Cypher * *fixed and carved in the Front of my little Fishing-House, may be here explained: And to permit me to attend you in* Public, *who in* Private *have ever been, am, and ever resolve to be,*

SIR,

Your most affectionate

Berisford, March 10, 167⅝. Son and Servant,

CHARLES COTTON.

* Mr. *Walton*, to whose Care was committed the publishing this Edition, as by his Letter at the End will appear, has done this in a Note, in the proper Place. The Cypher bearing the initial Letters, interwoven, of both their Names, *viz. Isaac Walton* and *Charles Cotton*, as is also in the Title to this Second Part.

THE

THE

Compleat ANGLER:

OR,

Contemplative Man's Recreation.

PART II.

CHAP. I.

The Interview, and Conference on a Journey.

PISCATOR, *jun.* *and* VIATOR.

Pisc. YOU are Happily overtaken, Sir! may a Man be so bold to inquire how far you travel this Way?

Via. Yes, sure, Sir, very freely; though it be a Question I cannot well resolve you; not knowing myself how far it is to *Ashborn*, where I intend to Night to take up my Inn.

Pisc. Why then, Sir, since I perceive you to be a Stranger in these Parts, I shall take upon me to inform you, that from the Town you last came through, called *Berisford*, it is five Miles; and you are not yet above half a Mile on this Side.

Via. So much! I was told it was but ten Miles from *Derby*; and methinks I have rode almost so far already.

Pisc. Oh! Sir, find no Fault with large Measure of good Land, which *Derbyshire* abounds in, as much as most Counties of *England*.

Via. It may be so, and good Land I confess affords a pleasant Prospect; but, by your good Leave, Sir, large Measure of *foul Way*, is not altogether so acceptable.

Pisc. True, Sir, but the foul Way serves to justify the Fertility of the Soil, according to the Proverb, *There is good Land where there is foul Way*; and is of good Use, to inform you of the Riches of the Country you are come into, and of its continual Travel and traffick to the Country-Town you came from; which is also very observeable by the Fulness of its Road, and the laden Horses you meet every where upon the Way.

Via. Well, Sir, I will be content to think as well of your Country as you would desire; and I shall have a great deal of Reason, both to think and to speak very well of *you*, if I may obtain the Happiness of your Company to the fore-mentioned Place; provided your Affairs lead you that Way, and that they will permit you to slack your Pace out of Complacency to a Traveller, utterly a Stranger in these Parts; and who am still to wander further out of my Knowledge.

Pisc. Sir, you invite me to my own Advantage; and I am ready to attend you; my Way lying through that Town, but my Business, that is my Home, some Miles beyond it: However, I shall have Time enough to lodge you in your Quarters, and afterwards to perform my own Journey. In the mean Time, may I be so bold as to enquire the End of your Journey.

Via. 'Tis into *Lancashire*, Sir, and about some Business of Concern to a near Relation of mine; for, I assure you, I do not use to take so long Journies as from *Essex*, upon the single Account of Pleasure.

Pisc.

Pisc. From thence, Sir! I do not then wonder you should appear dissatisfied with the Length of the Miles, and the Foulness of the Way; though I am sorry you should begin to quarrel with them so soon; for believe me you will find the Miles much longer, and the Way much worse, before you come to your Journey's End.

Via. Why—truly Sir, for *that*, I am prepared to expect the worst; but methinks the Way is mended since I had the Fortune to fall into your good Company.

Pisc. You are not obliged to my Company for that, but because you are already past the worst; and the greatest Part of your Way to your Lodging.

Via. I am very glad to hear it, both for the Ease of myself and Horse, and especially because I may then expect a freer Enjoyment of your Conversation, though the Shortness of the Way will, I fear, make me lose it the sooner.

Pisc. That, Sir, is not worth your Care; and I am sure you deserve much better for being content with so ill Company. But we have already talked away two Miles of your Journey, for from the Brook before us, that runs at the Foot of this sandy Hill, you have but three Miles to *Ashborn*.

Via. I meet every where in this Country with these little Brooks; and they look as if they were full of Fish. Have they not *Trouts* in them?

Pisc. That is a Question which is to be excused in a Stranger as you are; otherwise give me Leave to tell you, it would seem a Kind of Affront to our Country, to make a Doubt of what we pretend to be famous for, next (if not before) our *Malt*, *Iron*, *Lead*, and *Coal*; for you are to understand that we think we have as many fine Rivers, Ri-

vulets, and Brooks, as any Country whatever; and they are all full of *Trouts*, and some of them the best (it is said) by many Degrees in *England*.

Via. I was first, Sir, in love with you, and now shall be so enamour'd of your Country by this Account you give me of it, as to wish myself a *Derbyshire* Man, or at least, that I might live in it; for you must know I am a Pretender to the *Angle*, and doubtless a *Trout* affords the most Pleasure to the *Angler* of any Sort of Fish whatever, and the best *Trouts* must needs make the best Sport; but this Brook, and some others I have met with upon this Way, are too full of Wood for that Recreation.

Pisc. This, Sir! Why this, and several others like it, which you have passed, and some that you are like to pass, have scarce any Name amongst us. But we can shew you as fine Rivers, and as clear from Wood, or any other Incumbrance to hinder an Angler, as any you ever saw; and, for clear beautiful Streams, *Hampshire* itself, by Mr. *Isaac Walton's* good Leave, can shew none such, nor I think any Country in *Europe*.

Via. You go far, Sir, in the Praise of *your Country* Rivers, and, I perceive, have read Mr. *Walton's Compleat Angler*, by your naming of *Hampshire*:—And I pray, what is your Opinion of that Book?

Pisc. My Opinion of Mr. *Walton's* Book, is the same with every Man's that understands any thing of the Art of Angling; that it is an excellent good one; and that the fore-mentioned Gentleman understands as much of Fish and fishing, as any Man living: But, I must tell you further, that I have the Happiness to know his Person, and to be intimately acquainted with him, and in him, to know

know the worthiest Man, and to enjoy the best and the truest Friend any Man ever had: Nay, I shall yet acquaint you further, that he gives me leave to call him Father; and I hope is not yet ashamed to own me for his *adopted* Son.

Pis. In Earnest, Sir!—I am ravished to meet with a Friend of Mr. *Isaac Walton's*, and one that does him so much Right in so good and true a Character! for I must boast to you, that I have the good Fortune to know him too, and came acquainted with him much after the same Manner I do with you—that he was my Master who first taught me to love angling. and then to become an Angler; and—to be plain with you, I am *the very Man* decyphered in his Book under the Name of *Venator*, for I was wholly addicted to the Chace, till he taught me as good, a more quiet, innocent, and less dangerous Diversion.

Pisc. Sir, I think myself happy in your Acquaintance; and, before we part shall entreat Leave to embrace you: You have said enough to recommend you to my best Opinion; for my Father *Tallon* will be seen twice in no Man's Company he does not like, and likes none but such as he believes to be very honest Men, which is one of the best Arguments, or at least of the best Testimonies I have, that I either am, or that he thinks me one of those, seeing I have not yet found him weary of me.

Via. You speak like a true Friend; and in doing so, render yourself worthy of his Friendship. May I be so bold as to ask your Name?

Pisc. Yes, surely, Sir, and, if you please, a much easier Question. My Name is —— and I intend to stay long enough in your Company, if I find you do not dislike mine, to ask your's too. In

the mean time, because we are now almost at *Ashborn*, I shall freely and bluntly tell you, that I am a Brother of the Angle too, and peradventure can give you some Instructions how to angle for a *Trout* in a clear River, that my Father *Walton* himself will not disapprove, though he did either purposely omit, or did not remember them, when you and he sat discoursing under the Sycamore-tree*; and being you have already told me whether your Journey is intended, and that I am better acquainted with the Country than you are, I will heartily and earnestly entreat you will not think of staying at this Town, but go on with me six Miles further to my House, where you shall be extremely welcome; it is directly in your Way, we have Day enough to perform our Journey; and, as you like your Entertainment, you may there repose yourself a Day or two, or as many more as your Occasions will permit, to recompense the Trouble of so much a longer Journey.

Via. Sir, you surprize me with so friendly an Invitation upon so short Acquaintance! But how advantageous soever it would be to me, and that my Haste is perhaps not so great, but it might dispence with such a Divertisement as I promise myself in your Company, yet I cannot in Modesty accept your Offer, and must therefore beg your Pardon. I could otherwise, I confess, be glad to wait upon you, if on no other Account but to talk of Mr. *Walton*, and to receive those Instructions you say you are able to give me for deceiving a *Trout*; in which Art I will not deny I have an Ambition to be one of the greatest Deceivers; though I cannot forbear freely to tell you, that I think it hard to say much more than has been read to me upon that Subject.

Pisc.

* See P. I. p. 90 and 95.

Pisc. Well, Sir, I grant that too; but you must know, that the Variety of Rivers require different Ways of angling. However, you shall have the best Rules I am able to give; and I will tell you nothing I have not made myself as certain of as any Man can be in thirty Years Experience (for so long have I been a Dabbler in that Art) and that, if you please to stay a few Days, you shall, in a very great Measure see made good to you; but of that hereafter.—And now, Sir, if I am not mistaken, I have self overcome you; and that I may wholly conquer that Modesty of your's, I will take upon me to be so familiar to say, you *must* accept of my Invitation; which, that you may be the more easily perswaded to do, I will tell you that my House stands upon the Margin of one of the finest Rivers for *Trouts* and *Grayling* in *England*. That I have lately built a little Fishing-house upon it, *dedicated to Anglers*; over the Door of which you will see the *two first Letters of my Father* Walton's *Name*, *and mine, twisted in Cyphers* *. That you shall lie in the same Bed he has sometimes been contented with; have such Country Entertainment as my friends sometimes accept: and be as welcome, too, as the best Friend of them all.

Via. No Doubt, Sir, but my Master *Walton* had good Reason to be satisfied with his Entertainment at your House; for you who are so friendly to a mere Stranger who deserves so little, must needs be exceeding kind and free to him, who deserves so much.

Pisc. Believe me, no! and such as are intimately acquainted with that Gentleman know him to be a Man who will not endure to be treated like a Stranger. So that his Acceptance of my poor Entertainments, has ever been a pure Effect of his own

* As in the Title Page, and Cut of the Fishing House.

Humility and good Nature, and nothing else. But, Sir, we are now going down the *Spital-hill* into the Town, and therefore let me importune you suddenly to resolve; and, most earnestly, not to deny me.

Via. In Truth, Sir, I am so overcome by your Bounty, that I find I *cannot*; but must surrender myself wholly to be disposed of by you.

Pisc. Why, that is heartily and kindly spoken, and I as heartily thank you; and, being you have abandoned yourself to my Conduct, we will only call and drink a glass on Horseback at the *Talbot*, and away.

Via. I attend you. But what pretty River is this that runs under this Stone-bridge; has it a Name!

Pisc. Yes, 'tis called *Henmore*, and has in it both *Trout* and *Grayling*; but you will meet with one or two better anon: And so soon as we are past through the Town, I will endeavour by such Discourse, as best likes you, to pass away the Time, till you come to your ill Quarters.

Via. We can talk of nothing with which I shall be more delighted than of Rivers and Angling.

Pisc. Let those be the Subjects then. But we are now come to the *Talbot:* —— What will you drink, Sir, Ale or Wine?

Via. Nay, I am for the Country Liquor; *Derbyshire* Ale, if you please; for a Man should not methinks come from *London* to drink Wine in the *Peak*.

Pisc. You are in the right; and yet, let me tell you, you may drink worse *French* Wine in many Taverns in *London*, than they have sometimes at this House. What hoe! bring us a Flaggon of your best Ale!—And now, Sir, my Service to you,

A good Health to the honest Gentleman know of; and you are welcome into the *Peak*.

Via. I thank you, Sir, and present you my Ser- again, and to all the honest Brothers of the gle.

Pisc. I will pledge you, Sir, — So, there's for Ale, and farewel. Come, Sir, let us be ng; the Sun grows low; and I would have you k about you as you ride, for you will see an odd untry, and Sights that will seem strange to you.

CHAP. II.

The Journey Continued and ended.

SO, Sir, now we are got to the Top of the Hill, out of Town, look about you, and me how you like the Country?

Via. Bless me, what Mountains are here! Are not in *Wales*?

Pisc. No, but in almost as mountainous a Coun- ; and yet these Hills, though high, bleak, and ggy, breed and feed good Beef and Mutton e Ground, and afford good Store of Lead hin.

Via. They had need of all those Commodities make amends for the ill Landskip; but, I hope, Way does not lie over any of these, for I dread Precipice?

Pisc. Believe me, but it does, and down *one* ecially that will appear a little terrible to a nger, though the Way is passable enough; so able, that we, who are Natives of these Moun- s, and acquainted with them, disdain to alight.

Via. I hope though, that a Foreigner is privileged to use his own Discretion, and that I may have the Liberty to trust my Neck to the Fidelity of my own Feet (rather than to those of my Horse) for I have *no more at Home.*

Pisc. It were hard else. But, in the mean time, I think it were best while this Way is pretty even, to mend our Pace, that we may be past that Hill I speak of; to the End, that your Apprehension may not be doubled for want of Light to discern the Easiness of the Descent.

Via. I am willing to put forward as fast as my Beast will give me Leave, though I fear nothing in your Company.—But what pretty River is this we are going into?

Pisc. Why this, Sir, is called *Bently-Brook*; and is full of very good *Trout* and *Grayling*, but so incumbered with Wood in many Places, as is troublesome to an Angler.

Via. Here are the prettiest Rivers and the most of them in this Country, that ever I saw. Do you know how many you have in the Country?

Pisc. I know them all, and they were not hard to reckon, were it worth the Trouble; but the most considerable of them I will presently name to you. And to begin where we now are (for you must know we are upon the very Skirts of *Derbyshire*) we have first the River *Dove*, that we shall come to by and by, which divides the two Counties of *Derby* and *Stafford* for many Miles together, and is so called from the Swiftness of its Current, and that Swiftness occasioned by the Declivity of its Course, and its being so straitned in that Course betwixt the *Rocks*, by which, (and *those* very high ones) it is here about, for four or five Miles, confined into a very narrow Stream: A

River

River that from a contemptible Fountain, which I can cover with my Hat, by the Confluence of other Rivers, Rivulets, Brooks, and Rills, is ſwelled (before it falls into *Trent*, a little below *Eggington*, where it loſes the Name) to ſuch a Breadth and Depth as to be in moſt Places navigable, were not the Paſſage frequently interrupted with Fords and Weirs; and has as fertile Banks as any River in *England*, none excepted. And this River, from its Head, for a Mile or two, is a black Water (as all the reſt of the *Derbyſhire* Rivers of note originally are, for they all ſpring from the Moſſes) but is in a few Miles travel ſo clarified, by the Addition of ſeveral clear and very great Springs, bigger than itſelf, which guſh out of the Lime-ſtone Rocks, that before it comes to my Houſe, which is but ſix or ſeven Miles from its Source, you will find it one of the pureſt chryſtaline Streams you have ſeen.

Via. Does *Trent* ſpring in theſe Parts?

Piſc. Yes, in *theſe Parts*, not in *this County*, but ſomewhere towards the upper End of *Staffordſhire**, I think not far from a Place called *Trentham*, and thence runs down not far from *Stafford* to *Wolſly-Bridge*, and waſhing the Skirts and Purlieus of the Foreſt of *Needwood* runs down to *Burton*, in the ſame County; thence it comes into *this* where we now are, and running by *Swarkſton* and *Dunnington*, receives *Derwent* at *Wildon*, and ſo to *Nottingham*; thence to *Newark*, and by *Gainsborough*, to *Kingſton upon Hull*, where it takes the Name of *Humber*, and thence falls into the Sea; but that the Map will beſt inform you.

Via. Know you whence this River *Trent* derives its Name?

Piſc.

* Below *Mouray* Hill near *Norton*; and nigh the three *Shire Stones*.

Pisc. No, indeed; and yet I have heard it often discourſed upon, when ſome have given its Denomination from the forenamed *Trentham*: though that ſeems rather a Derivative from *it*. Others have ſaid, it is ſo called from *thirty Rivers* that fall into it, and there loſe their Names; which cannot be, neither, becauſe it carries that Name from its very Fountain, before any other Rivers fall into it. Others derive it from *thirty* ſeveral Sorts of Fiſh that breed there; and that is the moſt likely Derivation; but, be it how it will, it is doubtleſs one of the fineſt Rivers in the World, and the moſt abounding with excellent *Salmon*, and all Sorts of delicate Fiſh.

Via. Pardon me, Sir, for leading you into this Digreſſion, and then proceed to your other Rivers, for I am mightily delighted with this Diſcourſe.

Pisc. It was no Interruption, but a very ſeaſonable Queſtion, for *Trent* is not only one of our *Derbyſhire* Rivers, but the chief of them, and into which all the reſt pay the Tribute of their Names; which I had perhaps forgot to inſiſt upon, being got to the other End of the County, had you not awoke my Memory. I will now proceed; and the next River of Note (for I will take them as they lie Eaſtward from us) is the River *Wye*, I ſay of Note, for we have two leſſer betwixt us and it; namely, *Lathkin* and *Bradford*, of which, *Lathkin* is by many Degrees the pureſt and moſt tranſparent Stream that I ever yet ſaw, either at Home or Abroad, and breeds, it is ſaid, the reddeſt and beſt *Trouts* in *England*; but neither of theſe are to be reputed Rivers, being no better than great Springs. The River *Wye* then has its Source near unto *Buxton*, a Town about ten Miles from hence, famous for a warm Bath, and which you are to ride through in

n your Way to *Manchester*; a black Water too at
ne Fountain, but by the same Reason with *Dove*,
becomes very soon a most delicate clear River, and
breeds admirable *Trout* and *Grayling*, reputed by
those (who by living upon its Banks are partial to
it) the *best of any*; and this running down by *Ash-*
ford, *Bakewell*, and *Haddon*, at a Town, a little
lower, called *Rowsly*, falls into *Derwent*, and there
loses its Name. The next in order is *Derwent*, a
black Water too, and that not only from its Foun-
tain, but quite through its Progress, not having
those chrystal Springs to wash and cleanse it, which
the two forementioned have; but abounds with
Trout and *Grayling*, such as they are, towards its
Source, and with *Salmon* below. And this River,
from the upper and utmost Part of this County
where it springs, takes its Course by *Chatsworth*,
Darly, *Matlock*, *Derby*, *Burrow-Ash*, and *Awber-*
ry; falls into *Trent*, at a Place called *Wildon*, and
there loses its Name. The East Side of this County
of *Derby* is bounded by little inconsiderable Rivers,
as *Aber*, *Eroways*, and the like, scarce worth
naming, but *Trouty* too; and further we are not
to enquire. But, Sir, I have carried you, as a
Man may say, by Water, till we are now come
to the Descent of the formidable Hill I told you of;
at the Foot of which runs the River *Dove* (which
I cannot but love above all the rest) and therefore
prepare yourself to be a little frighted

Via. Sir, I see you would fortify me, that I
should not shame myself; but dare follow where
you please to lead me; and I see no Danger yet;
for the Descent methinks is thus far green, even,
and easy.

Pisc. You will like it worse presently, when you
come to the Brow of the Hill—and now we are
there, what think you? *Via.*

Via. What do I think?—Why I think it the ſtrangeſt Place that ever ſure Men and Horſes went down, and that (if there be any Safety at all) the ſafeſt Way is to alight.

Piſc. I think ſo too for *you*, who are mounted upon a Beaſt not acquainted with theſe ſlippery Stones; and, though I frequently ride down, I will alight too, to bear you Company, and to lead you the Way; and, if you pleaſe, my Man ſhall lead your Horſe.

Via. Marry, Sir, and thank you too; for, I am afraid, I ſhall have enough to do to look to myſelf; and, with my Horſe in my Hand, ſhould be in a double Fear, both of breaking my Neck, and my Horſe's falling on me, for it is as ſteep as a Penthouſe.

Piſc. To look down from hence it appears ſo, I confeſs; but the Path winds and turns, and will not be found ſo troubleſome.

Via. Would I were well down though—Heiſt thee!—There is one fair Eſcape! Theſe Stones are ſo ſlippery, I cannot ſtand—Yet again!—I think I were beſt lay my Heels in my Neck, and tumble down.

Piſc. If you think your Heels will defend your Neck, that is the Way to be ſoon at the Bottom; but, give me your Hand at this broad Stone, and then the worſt is paſt.

Via. I thank you, Sir, I am now paſt it—I can go myſelf—What's here! *the Sign of a Bridge?* Do you uſe to travel with Wheelbarrows in this Country?

Piſc. Not that ever I ſaw, Sir. Why do you aſk that Queſtion?

Via. Becauſe *this Bridge* certainly was made for nothing elſe: Why, a Mouſe can hardly go over it; 'tis not two Fingers broad.

Piſc.

Pisc. You are pleasant, and I am glad to see you but I have rode over the Bridge many a dark

Night.

Via. Why, according to the *French* Proverb, and it is a good one, among a great many of worse Sense and Sound *that* Language abounds in, "Ce que Dieu garde, est bien gardé." *They whom God takes Care of are in safe Protection.* But, let me tell you, I would not ride over it for a thousand Pounds—nor fall off it for two—and yet I think I dare venture on Foot; though, if you were not by to laugh at me, I should do it on all Four.

Pisc. Well Sir, your Mirth becomes you, and I am glad to see you safe over: and now you are welcome into *Staffordshire.*

Via. How, *Staffordshire!* What do I there now! there is not a Word of *Staffordshire* in all our Direction.

Pisc. You see you are betrayed into it; but it shall be in order to something that will make Amends, and it is but an ill Mile or two out of your Way.

Via. I believe all things, Sir, and doubt nothing. Is this your beloved River *Dove?* 'Tis clear and swift indeed, but a very little one!

Pisc. You see it here at the worst; we shall come to it anon again, after two Miles riding, and so near as to lie upon the very Banks.

Via. Would we were there once. But I hope we have no more of these *Alps* to pass over.

Pisc. No, no, Sir, only this Ascent before you, which you see is not very uneasy, and then you will have more quarrel with your Way.

Via. Well! if ever I come to *London* (of which any a Man there, if he were in my Place, would make a Question) I will sit down and write my Travels, and, like *Tom Coriate*, print them at my own

own Charge. Pray what do you call this Hill we came down?

Pisc. We call it *Hanson-toot.*

Via. Why, farewel, *Hanson-toot!* I will no more on thee; I will go twenty Miles about first—Puh! I sweat, that my Shirt sticks to my Back.

Pisc. Come, Sir, now we are up the Hill—and now, how do you?

Via. Why, very well, I humbly thank you, Sir—and warm enough, I assure you. What have we here, a Church? As I am an honest Man, a very pretty Church!—Have you Churches in this Country, Sir?

Pisc. You see we have: But, had you seen none, why should you make that Doubt, Sir?

Via. Why——If you will not be angry, I will tell you——I thought myself a Stage or two beyond *Christendom.*

Pisc. Come, come, we'll *reconcile you* to our Country before we part from you, if shewing you good Sport with *angling* will do it.

Via. My Respect to you and that together, may do much, Sir; otherwise, to be plain with you, I do not find myself much inclined *that Way.*

Pisc. Well, Sir, your raillery upon our Mountains, has brought us almost Home; and look! where the same River *Dove* has again met us, to bid you welcome, and to invite you to a Dish of *Trouts* To-morrow.

Via. Is this the same we saw at the Foot of *Penman-Maure?* It is a much finer River here.

Pisc. It will appear yet much finer To-morrow—But look you, Sir—here appears the House that is now like to be your Inn, for want of a better.

Via. It appears on a sudden, but not before it was looked for——It stands prettily, and here is

Wood

ood about it too, but so young, as appears to be your own planting.

Pisc. It is so — will it please you to alight, Sir? And now permit me, after all your Pains and ngers, to take you in my Arms, and assure you, t you are *infinitely welcome.*

Via. I thank you, Sir — and am glad, with all Heart, I am here; for, in downright Truth, m exceeding weary.

Pisc. You will sleep so much the better; you shall ently have a light Supper, and to Bed——Come, , lay the Cloth, and bring what you have, pre- ly; and let the Gentleman's Bed be made ready, the mean Time, in my Father *Walton's* Cham- — And now, Sir, here is my Service to you and, once more, welcome!

Via. Ay marry, Sir, this Glass of good Sack has shed me; and I will make as bold with your at, for the Trot has got me a good Stomach.

Pisc. Come, Sir, fall too then; you see my lit- Supper is always ready when I come Home, and will make no Stranger of you.

Via. That your Meal is so soon ready, is a Sign ur Servants know your certain Hours, Sir. I fess I did not expect it so soon; but, now it here, you shall see I will make myself no anger.

Pisc. Much good do your Heart, and I thank for that friendly Word!—And now, Sir, my vice to you in a Cup of *Moreland's* Ale—for are now in the *Morelands* — but within a Spit a Stride of the *Peak* — Fill my Friend his

Via. Believe me, you have good Ale in the *relands*, far better than at *Ashborn.*

Pisc.

Pisc. That it may soon be; for *Ashborn* has (which is a Kind of Riddle) always in it the best *Malt*, and the *worst Ale*, in *England*.—Come, take away, and bring us some Pipes, and a Bottle of Ale, and go to your own Suppers. Are you for this Diet, Sir?

Via. Yes, Sir, I am for one Pipe of Tobacco; and I perceive your's is very good by the Smell.

Pisc. The best I can get in *London*, I assure you — But, Sir, now you have thus far complied with my Designs as to take a troublesome Journey into an ill Country, only to satisfy *me*; how long may I hope to enjoy you?

Via. Why truly, Sir, as long as I conveniently can; and longer, I think, you would not have me.

Pisc. Not to your Inconvenience, by any Means, Sir—But I see you are weary, and therefore I will presently wait on you to your Chamber; where take Council of your Pillow, and To-morrow resolve me—Here, take the Lights!—and pray follow them, Sir—Here you are like to lie: And now I have shewed you your Lodging, I beseech you to command any thing you want, and so I wish you a good Rest.

Via. Good Night Sir.

Chap. III.

A Morning's Recreation, and the Description of the Fishing-House.

Pisc. GOOD Morrow, Sir; what! up and dressed so early?

Via. Yes, Sir, I have been dressed this half Hour; for I rested so well, and have so great a

Mind

ind either to take, or see a *Trout* taken, in your
River, that I could no longer lie a Bed.
Pisc. I am glad to see you so brisk this Morning,
so eager of Sport; though, I must tell you,
Day proves so calm, and the Sun rises so bright,
promises no great Success to the Angler. But,
wever, we will try; and, one Way or other, we
ll sure do something—What will you have to your
eakfast? Or what will you drink this Morning?
Tia. For Breakfast I never eat any; and, for
nk, am very indifferent. But, if you please to
for a Glass of Ale, I am for you; and let it be
ckly, if you please, for I long to see the little Fish-
house you spoke of, and to be at my Lesson.
Pisc. Well, Sir, you see the Ale is come with-
calling for; for, though I do not know *your's*,
People know *my* Diet, which is always one
as soon as I am dressed, and no more till Din-
; and so my Servants have served *you*.
Tia. My Thanks—And now, if you please, let
look *out* this fine Morning.
Pisc. With all my Heart—Boy! take the Key
my Fishing-house, and carry down those two
le-rods in the Hall Window thither; with my
-pannier, Pouch, and Landing-net; and stay
there till we come.—Come, Sir, we will walk
; where, by the Way, I expect you should
all the Exceptions against our Country you

Tia. Nay, Sir, do not think me so ill-natured,
so uncivil. I only made a little bold with it
Night to divert you, and was only in jest.
Pisc. You were then in as good Earnest as I am
with you; but had you been *really angry* at
could not blame you; for, to say the Truth, it
very taking at first Sight. But look you,

Sir,

Sir, now you are Abroad, does not the Sun shine as bright here as in *Essex*, *Middlesex*, or *Kent*, or any of your Southern Counties?

Via. 'Tis a delicate Morning, indeed; and I now think this a marvellous pretty Place.

Pisc. Whether you think so or no, you cannot oblige me more than to say so; and those of my Friends, who know my Humour, and are so kind as to comply with it usually flatter me that Way. ——But look you, Sir, now you are at the Brink of the Hill, how do you like my River? The Vale it winds through like a Snake! And the Situation of my little *Fishing-house?*

Via. Trust me, 'tis all very fine——and the House seems, at this Distance, a neat Building.

Pisc. Good enough for that Purpose; and here is a Bowling-green too, close by it—so, though I am myself no very good Bowler, I am not totally devoted to my own Pleasure, but that I have also some Regard to other Men's. And now, Sir, you are come to the Door, pray walk in, and there we will sit and talk as long as you please.

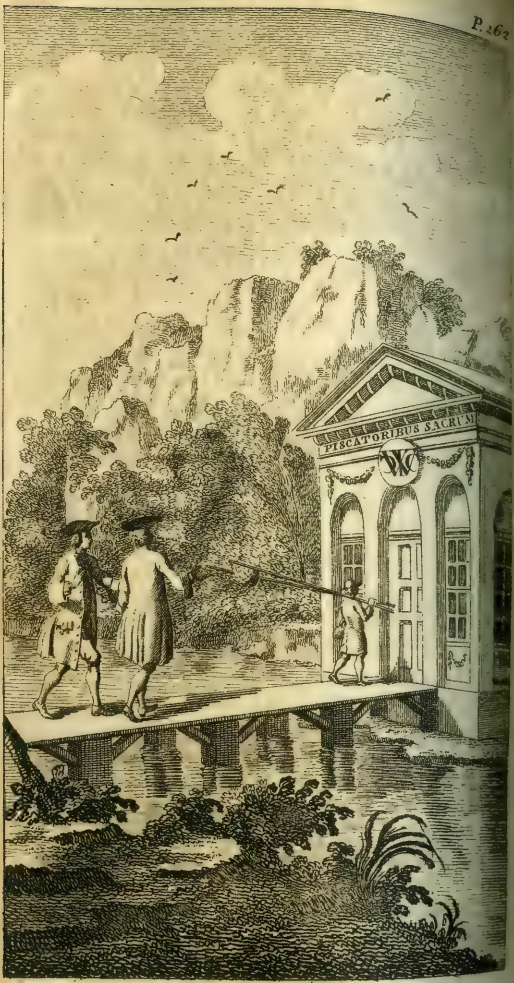
Via. Stay —— What is here over the Door? PISCATORIBUS SACRUM *. Why then, I perceive, I have some Title here, for I am one of them, though one of the worst; and here, below it, is the Cypher too you spoke of. 'Tis prettily contrived. Has my Master *Walton* ever been here to see it, for it seems new built?

Pisc.

* DEVOTED TO ANGLERS.

There is under this Motto, the Cypher in the Title Page; and some Part of the Fishing-house has been described; but the Pleasantness of the River, Mountains, and Meadows about it, cannot, unless *Philip Sidney*, or Mr. *Cotton*'s Father (*a*), were again alive to do it. A Note of Mr. *Walton*'s

(*a*) *He wrote* The Wonders of the Peake, *a Poem.*


PISCATORIBUS SACRUM

Pisc. Yes, he saw it cut in the Stone before it was set up, but never in the Posture it now stands, for the House was but building when he was last there, and not raised so high as the Arch of the Door, and, I am afraid he will not see it yet; for he has lately wrote me Word, he doubts his coming down this Summer; which, I do assure you, was the worst News he could possibly have sent me.

Via. Men must sometimes mind their Affairs to make more room for their Pleasures: and 'tis odds, that he is as much displeased with the Business that keeps him from you, as you are that he comes not.---I am the most pleased with this little House, of any thing I ever saw; it stands in a kind of Peninsula too, with a delicate clear River about it.---Sure I hardly go in, lest I should not like it so well within as without; but, by your Leave, I will try.---Why, this is better and better, fine Lights! finely wainscoted! and all exceeding neat!---with a Marble Table, and all, in the Middle!

Pisc. Enough, Sir, enough---I have laid open to you the Part where I can worst defend myself; and now you attack me there. Come, Boy, set us Chairs —— and, whilst I am taking a Pipe of Tobacco, which is always my Breakfast, we will, if you please, talk of some other Subject.

Via. None fitter then, Sir, for the Time and Place, than those Instructions you promised.

Pisc. I begin to doubt, by something I discover in you, whether I am able to instruct you or no; though, if you are really a Stranger to our clear Northern Rivers, I still think I can. And, therefore, since it is yet too early in the Morning, at this Time of the Year (to Day being but the Seventh of *March*) to cast a Fly upon the

Water,

Water, If you will but direct me what Kind of fishing for a *Trout* I shall read you a Lecture on, I am willing and ready to obey you.

Via. Why, Sir, if you will so far oblige me, and that it may not be too troublesome to you, I will entreat you would run through *the whole Body of it*; and I will not conceal from you, that I am so far in love with you, your Courtesy, and pretty *Moreland* Seat, as to resolve to stay with you long enough, by Intervals (for I will not oppress you) to hear all you can say on that Subject.

Pisc. You cannot oblige me more than by such a Promise; and therefore, without more Ceremony, I will begin to tell you, that my Father *Walton* having read to you before, it would look like a Presumption in me, and peradventure would do so in any other Man, to pretend to give *Lessons for Angling* after him, who, I do really believe, understands as much of it, at least, as any Man in *England:* Did I not pre-acquaint you that I am not tempted to it by any vain Opinion of myself, that I am able to give you better Directions; but having, from my Childhood, pursued the Recreation of angling in very clear Rivers, truly I think by much (some of them at least) the clearest in the Kingdom; and the Manner of angling here with us, by Reason of that exceeding Clearness, being somewhat different from the Method commonly used in others, which, by being not near so bright, admit of stronger Tackle, and allow a nearer Approach to the Stream: I may, peradventure, give some Instructions that may be of Use even in your own Rivers, and shall bring you acquainted with more Flies, and shew you how to make them,

them, and with what Dubbing too, than *he* has taken Notice of in his *Compleat Angler*.

Pis. I beseech you, Sir, do —— and, if you will lend me your Steel, I will light a Pipe the while--- for that is commonly *my* Breakfast in a Morning too.

CHAP. IV.

Containing the various Methods of Trout *and* Grayling fishing.

§ * §

Pisc. WHY then, Sir, to begin Methodically, as a Master in any Art should do (and I will not deny but that I think myself a Master in this) I shall divide angling for *Trout* or *Grayling* into these three Ways:

At the Top. At the Bottom. And in the Middle. Which three Ways, though they are all of them (as I shall hereafter endeavour to make it appear) of some Sort common to both those Kinds of Fish, yet are they not so generally and absolutely so, but that they will necessarily require a Distinction, which, in due Place, I will also give you.

That which we call angling at the Top, *is with a* Fly.

At the Bottom *with a* Ground-bait.

In the Middle *with a* Minnow *or a* Ground-bait *.

Angling at the *Top* is of two Sorts;

With a Live, *or with an* Artificial Fly.

That we call angling at the *Bottom* is also of two Sorts:

* Meaning any Bait that is fished with at the Ground or Bottom.

By Hand *, *or with a* Cork *or* Float.

That we call angling in the *Middle* is also of two Sorts:

With a Minnow *for a* Trout; *or*,

With a Ground-bait *for a* Grayling.

Of all which several Sorts of Angling, I will, if you can have Patience to hear me, give you the best Account I can.

Via. The Trouble will be your's, and mine the Pleasure, and the Obligation. I beseech you therefore to proceed.

Pisc. Why then, first of Fly-Fishing.

Chap. V.

Of Fly-fishing.

Pisc. FLY-fishing, or fishing *at the Top*, is, as I said before, of two Sorts,

With a natural *and* living, *or*,

With an artificial *and made* Fly.

First then of the natural-Fly, of which we generally use but two Sorts, and those but in the two Months of *May* and *June* only; namely, the *Green-drake*, and the *Stone-fly*; though I have made use of a third that Way, called the *Camlet-fly*, with very good Success, for *Grayling*; but never saw it angled with by any other after this Manner, my Master only excepted; who did so, many Years ago; and was one of the best Anglers that ever I knew.

These

* That is, the Bait running on the Ground with several Shot or a small Bullet and *no* Float.

These are to be angled with, having a short *Line*, not much more than half the Length of your Rod, if the Air be still; or with a longer, very near or *full out* as long as your Rod, if you have any Wind to carry it from you. And this Way of fishing we call *Dapping*, *Dabbing*, or *Dibbling*, wherein you are always to have your Line flying before you, up or down the River, as the Wind serves, and to angle as near as you can to the Bank of the same Side whereon you stand; though where you see a Fish rise near you, you may guide your *live* Fly over him, whether in the Middle, or on the contrary Side; and if you are pretty well out of Sight, either by kneeling, or the Interposition of a Bank or Bush, you may almost be sure to raise, and take him too, if it be presently done; the Fish will otherwise peradventure be removed to some other Place, if it be in the still Deeps; where he is always in Motion, and roving up and down to look for Prey. Though in a Stream you may almost always, especially *if there be a good Stone near*, find him in the same Place. Your Line ought, in this Case, to be three good Hairs next the Hook*, both by reason you are in this Kind of Angling, to expect the biggest Fish, and also, that, wanting Length to give him Line after he is struck, you must be forced to tug for it; to which I will also add, that not an Inch of your Line being to be suffered to touch the Water in *dibbling*, it may be allowed to be the stronger.—I should now give you a Description of *those Flies*, their Shape and Colour, and then give you an Account of their Breeding, and withal, shew you how to keep

* Of *Silk-worm Gut* (sold at all the Shops) is best: which is an Improvement, since Mr. *Walton*'s and *Cotton*'s Times.

and use them; but shall defer that to their proper Place and Season.

Via. In earnest, Sir, you discourse very rationally of this Affair; and, I am glad to find myself mistaken in you; for, in plain Truth, I did not expect so much from you.

Pisc. Nay, Sir, I can tell you a great deal more than this, and will conceal nothing from you. But I must now come to the second Way of angling *at the Top*, which is with an *artificial Fly*, which also I will shew you how to make before I have done. But first shall acquaint you, that, *with this*, you are to angle with a Line longer by a Yard and half, or sometimes two Yards, than your Rod, and (with both this and the other) in a still Day in the Streams, in a Breeze that curls the Water in the still Deeps, where (excepting in *May* and *June*, that the best *Trouts* will lie in shallow Streams to watch for Prey, and even then too) you are like to hit the best Fish.

For the Length of your Rod you are always to be governed by the Breadth of the River you shall chuse to angle at; and, for a *Trout*-River, one of five or six Yards long is commonly enough; and longer (though never so neatly or artificially made) it ought not to be, if you intend to fish at ease; and, if otherwise, where lies the Sport?

Of these, the best that ever I saw are made in *Yorkshire*, which are all of one Piece; that is to say, of several (six, eight, ten or twelve) Pieces, so neatly fitted and tied together with fine Thread below, and Silk above as to make it taper, like a Switch, and to ply with a true Bent to your Hand. And these are light too, being made of Fir-wood, for two or three Lengths, neerest to the Hand, and other Wood nearer to the Top, that

that a Man might very eafily manage the longeft of them that ever I faw, with one Hand; and theſe, when you have given over angling for a Sea-ſon, being taken to Pieces, and laid up in ſome dry Place, may afterwards be ſet together again in their former Poſture, and will be as ſtrait, ſound and good, as the firſt Hour they were made; and, being laid in Oil and Colour, according to your Maſter *Walton's* Directions *, will laſt many Years.

The Length of your Line, to a Man that knows how to handle his Rod, and to caſt it, is no man-ner of Incumbrance, except in woody Places, and in landing of a Fiſh, which every one that can af-ford to angle for Pleaſure, has ſomebody to do for him; and the Length of Line is a mighty Advantage to the fiſhing at Diſtance; and to fiſh *fine* and *far off*, is the firſt and principal Rule for *Trout* angling.

Your Line, in this Caſe, ſhould never be leſs, nor exceed *two* Hairs next to the Hook, for *one* (though ſome I know will pretend to more Art than their Fellows) is indeed too few, the leaſt Accident, with the fineſt Hand, being ſufficient to break it*: But he that cannot kill a *Trout* of twenty Inches long with *two*, in a River clear of Wood and Weeds, as this and ſome others of ours are, deſerves not the Name of an *Angler*. Now, to have your whole Line as it ought to be, two of the firſt Lengths neareſt the Hook, ſhould be of two Hairs a-piece, the next three Lengths above them of *three*, and the next three above them of *four*, and ſo of *five*, and *ſix*, and *ſeven*, to the very Top; by which Means your Rod and Tackle will in a manner be taper from your very Hand to

* P. I. p. 222—4—5.

† Of *Indian Graſs* or *Silk-worm Gut* (as ſaid) removes this Ob-jection.

your Hook; your Line will fall much better and ſtraiter, and caſt your Fly to any certain Place to which the Hand and Eye ſhall direct it, with leſs Weight and Violence, that would otherwiſe circle the Water, and fright away the Fiſh.

In caſting your Line, do it always before you, ſo that your Fly may firſt fall upon the Water, and as little of your Line with it as is poſſible; though, if the Wind be ſtiff, you will then of Neceſſity be compelled to drown a good Part of your Line to keep your Fly in the Water; and, in caſting your Fly, you muſt aim at the further or nearer Bank as the Wind ſerves your Turn, which will alſo be with and againſt you, on the ſame Side ſeveral Times in an Hour, as the River winds its Courſe, and you will be forced to angle up and down by Turns accordingly; but are to endeavour, as much as you can, to have the Wind evermore on your Back, and always be ſure to ſtand as far off the Bank as your Length will give you Leave, when you throw to the contrary Side; though, when the Wind will not permit you ſo to do, and that you are conſtrained to angle on the ſame Side whereon you ſtand, you muſt then ſtand on the very Brink of the River, and caſt your Fly at the utmoſt Length of your Rod and Line, up or down the River, as the Gale ſerves.

It only remains touching your Line to enquire whether your two Hairs next to the Hook are better twiſted, or open? And for that, I ſhould declare, that I think the open Way the better, becauſe it makes the leſs ſhew in the Water; but that I have found an Inconvenience or two, or three, that have made me almoſt weary of that Way; of which one is, that, without Diſpute, they are not ſo ſtrong open as twiſted; another

that

...t they are not eaſily to be faſtened of ſo exact ...d equal Length in the arming, that the one will ...t cauſe the other to bag, by which Means, a ...lan has but one Hair upon the Matter to truſt ...; and the laſt is, that theſe looſe flying Hairs are ...t only moſt apt to catch upon every Twig or Bent ...ey meet with, but moreover, the Hook, in fall... upon the Water, will very often rebound, and ... back betwixt the Hairs, and there ſtick (which, ... a rough Water eſpecially, is not preſently to be ...cerned by the Angler) ſo as the Point of the ...ook ſhall ſtand reverſe; by which Means, your ... ſwims backwards, makes a much greater Cir... in the Water, and, till taken home to you, ...d ſet right, will never raiſe any Fiſh; or, if it ...ould, I am ſure, but by a very extraordinary ...hance, can hit none.

Having done with both theſe Ways of fiſhing *at ...p*, the Length of your Rod and Line and ... I am next to teach you how to make a Fly; ...d afterwards, of what Dubbing you are to make ...n ſeveral Flies I ſhall hereafter name to you.

In making a Fly then (which is not a *Hackle* or *...lmer-fly*, for of thoſe, and their ſeveral Kinds, ...ſhall have Occaſion to ſpeak every Month in ...e Year) you are firſt to hold your Hook faſt be...ixt the Fore-finger and Thumb of your Left ...nd, with the Back of the Shank upwards, and ...e Point towards your Fingers End; then take a ...ong ſmall Silk, of the Colour of the Fly you ...end to make, wax it well with Wax of the ...me Colour too (to which End, you are always, ... the Way, to have Wax of all Colours about ...) and draw it betwixt your Finger and Thumb ...the Head of the Shank, and then whip it twice ... thrice about the bare Hook, which you muſt

know, is done both to prevent slipping, and also that the Shank of the Hook may not cut the Hairs of your *Towght* *, which sometimes it will otherwise do, which being done, take your Line, and draw it likewise betwixt your Finger and Thumb, holding the Hook so fast as only to suffer it to pass by, until you have the Knot of your *Towght* almost to the Middle of the Shank of your Hook on the Inside of it, then whip your Silk twice or thrice about both Hook and Line, as hard as the Strength of the Silk will permit; which being done, clip the Feathers for the Wings proportionable to the Bigness of your Fly, placing that Side downwards which grew uppermost before, upon the Back of the Hook, leaving so much only, as to serve for the Length of the Wing, of the Point of the Plume lying reversed from the End of the Shank upwards; then whip your Silk twice or thrice about the Root-end of the Feather, Hook, and *Towght*; which being done, clip off the Root-end of the Feather close by the Arming, and whip the Silk fast and firm about the Hook and *Towght* till you come to the Bend of the Hook, but no further, as you do at *London* (and so make a very unhandsome, and, in plain *English*, a very unnatural and shapeless Fly) which being done, cut away the End of your *Towght*, and fasten it: Then take your *Dubbing*, which is to make the Body of your Fly, as much as you think convenient, and holding it lightly with your Hook betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your Left Hand, take your Silk with the Right, and twisting it betwixt the Finger and the Thumb of that Hand, the Dubbing will spin itself about the Silk; which, when it has done, whip it about the armed Hook backwards, till you come to the

setting

* A Term for what is whipped first about the bare Hook to arm it.

letting on of the Wings, and then take the Feather for the Wings, and divide it equally into two parts, and turn them back towards the Bend of the Hook, the one on the one Side, and the other on the other of the Shank, holding them fast in that Posture betwixt the Fore-finger and Thumb of your Left Hand; which done, warp them so down, as to stand and slope towards the Bend of the Hook; and having warpt up to the End of the Shank, hold the Fly fast betwixt the Finger and Thumb of the Left Hand, and then take the Silk betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your Right Hand, and, where the Warping ends, pinch or clip it with your Thum Nail against your Finger, and strip away the Remainder of your Dubbing from the Silk, and then, with the bare Silk, whip it once or twice about, make the Wings to stand in due Order, fasten, and cut it off; after which, with the Point of a Needle, raise up the Dubbing gently from the Warp, twitch off the superfluous Hairs of the Dubbing, leaving the Wings of an equal Length (your Fly will never else swim true) and the Work is done *. And this Way of making

M 5

* *As Mr.* Walton *has given* his *Directions for making a* Fly, *P.* I. p. 93. *and Mr.* Cotton *(as above) I thought it proper here to add* Col. R. Venable's *Directions, p.* 18, *to* 23. *of* his Experienc'd Angler, or Angling improved, *4th Edit. a Book on which Mr.* Walton *bestows the highest Encomium in his Letter printed before it. That* ingenious Gentlemen *who love to make their* own Flies *(as many curious in this* do) *may see all that can be said on the Subject* by three great Masters in this Art, *who have been never equalled.*

First *(says this ingenious Angler)* I set *on* my Hook (the Hair placed on the inside its Shank) with such colour'd Silk as I conceive most proper for the Fly, beginning at the End of the Hook; and, when I come to *that* Place I conceive most proportionable for the Wings, then I place such coloured Feathers as most resemble the *Fly's Wings*, and set the Points of the Wings towards the Bent; or else run the Feathers (stript from the Quill, with the Skin

king a Fly, which is certainly the beſt of all other, was taught me by a Kinſman of mine, one Captain *Henry Jackſon*, a near Neighbour, an admirable Fly Angler, by many Degrees the beſt Fly-maker that ever I yet met with.

And now that I have told you how a Fly is to be made, you ſhall preſently ſee me make one; with

Skin or Film-part cleaving to the Feathers) *round the Hook*, and ſo make them faſt. If I *do ſo*, then I clip away thoſe on the Back of the Hook, that ſo, if poſſible, the Point of it may be forced by the Feathers left on the Inſide of the Hook, to ſwim upwards: *and by this Means I conceive the Stream will carry your* Fly's Wings *in the Poſture* of one flying. Whereas, if you ſet the Points of the Wings backwards, *towards the Bend of the Hook*, the Stream (if the Feathers be gentle, as they ought) will fold the *Wings-points* in the *Hook's Bend*, as I have found by Experience. After I have ſet on the Wings I go on, ſo far as I judge fit, till I *faſten all*: and then begin to make the Body, and the Head laſt. The Body of the *Fly* I make ſeveral Ways. If the *Fly* be one entire Colour then I take a *Worſted* Thread, or *Moccado* End; or twiſt Wool or Fur into a Kind of Thread; or wax a very ſmall *Silk* Thread, and lay *Wool, Fur, &c.* upon it: then twiſt, and the Materials will ſtick to it: and then go on to make my *Fly* ſmall or large, as I pleaſe. If the *Fly* (as moſt are) be of *ſeveral Colours*, and thoſe running *in Circles* round it, then I either take *two* of theſe Threads (faſtening them firſt toward the Bent of the Hook) and ſo run them round, and faſten *all* at the Wings; and then make the Head: or elſe I lay upon the Hook *Wool*, *Fur* of *Hare*, *Dog*, *Fox*, *Bear*, *Cow*, *Hog*, (which cloſe to their Bodies have a *fine Fur*) and with the Silk of the other Colour bind *the ſame* down, and then faſten all. Or, inſtead of the Silk running thus round the *Fly*, pluck the *Feathers* from one Side of thoſe long *ones* growing about a *Cock* or *Capon's* Neck or Tail (which ſome call a *Hackle*) then run the ſame round your *Fly* from Head to Tail, making both Ends faſt. But be ſure to ſuit the *Feather* anſwerable to the Colour you are to imitate in the *Fly*. And this Way you may counterfeit thoſe *rough Inſects* which ſome call *Wool-beds*, becauſe of their *Wool-like* Outſides and Rings of diverſe Colours: I take them to be *Palmer-worms*; which the *Fowl* much delight in. Let me add this only, that ſome *Flies* have forked *Tails*, ſome *Horns*, both which you muſt imitate with a ſlender Thread faſtened to the Head or Tail of your *Fly*, when you firſt ſet on your Hook; and in all Things, as Length, Colour as like the *natural Fly* as you can poſſibly. The *Head* is made after the

with which you may peradventure take a *Trout* this Morning, notwithstanding the Unlikeliness of the Day, for it is now nine of the Clock, and Fish will begin to rise, if they will rise to Day. I will walk along by you, and look on, and after Dinner I will proceed in my Lecture of Flyfishing.

the rest of the Body, of Silk (or Hair, as being of a more shining, yellow Colour than the other Materials) as usually the Fly's *Head* is more bright than the Body, and usually different coloured. Sometimes I make the *Body* with a *Peacock's* Feather, but that is only one *Sort of Fly*, whose Colour nothing else I could ever get would imitate, being *a short Fly, of a sad, golden-green Colour, with short brown Wings* (bred in *May*) which I make *thus*. Take *one Strain* of a *Peacock's* Feather (or if not sufficient *another*) wrap it about the Hook till the Body be according to your Mind: if your Fly be of diverse Colours, and those lying long-ways, from Head to Tail, then take my *Dubbing* and lay them on the Hook, *long-ways*, one Colour by another (as they are mixt in the *natural Fly*) from Head to Tail then bind all *on*, and make it fast with Silk of the *most predominant* Colour. And this I conceive is a more *artificial* Way than is practised by many Anglers; who use to make such a Fly *of one Colour*, and bind it on with Silk: *so*, that it looks like a Fly with *round Circles*, but nothing at all resembles the *Fly it is intended for*: The Head, Horns, Tail, are made as before. The better to counterfeit *all Sorts of Flies*, get *Furs* of all Sorts of Colours, *&c.* (see p. 95 and P. II. c. 6. of *Compleat Angler*) that you may make yours *exactly* of the same Colour with the *natural Fly*. I have observed that very many make their Flies suitable to the *most orient Colours* you see in the *natural Fly*, which is usually the *Back Part*, and commonly exceeds the *Belly* in Lustre and Splendor; and so you conceive you imitate the *Fly* exactly, when it is nothing so; because the *Back Part* is out of the Fishes Eye; and if you fail of Sport, as usually you do, you impute it to the Want of the *right Fly*: when as you have not truly imitated the *right Colour* of the Fly, which the Fish chiefly see and regard. Therefore,

1. *In making the* Artificial Fly, *chiefly observe the* Belly of the Fly, *for* that Colour *the* Fish *most take Notice of*, as *being most in their Eye.*

2. *When you try how to fit the Colour of your Fly*, wet your Fur, Hair, Wool, *or* Muccado: *otherwise you will fail in your Work*; *for* though *when these Materials are dry, they exactly* suit the Colours of the Fly, *yet* the Water *will alter* most Colours, and make them *either brighter or darker.*

N. B. For *every Sort of Fly have* three; *one* of a lighter Colour, another sadder than the natural Fly; and a *third* of the exact Colour of the Fly, to suit *all Waters and Weathers.*

Via. I confeſs, I long to be at the River, and yet I could ſit here all Day to hear you; but ſome of the one, and ſome of the other, will do well, and I have a mighty Ambition to take a *Trout* in your River *Dove*.

Piſc. I warrant you ſhall; I would not, for more than I will ſpeak of, but you ſhould; ſeeing I have ſo extolled my River to you. Nay, I will keep you here a Month, but you ſhall have one good Day of Sport before you go.

Via. You will find me, I doubt, too tractable that Way; for, in good Earneſt, if Buſineſs would give me Leave, and that if it were fit, I could find in my Heart to ſtay with you for ever.

Piſc. I thank you, Sir, for that kind Expreſſion, and now let me look out my Things to make this Fly.

Chap. VI.

Of Fly-*making, with ſome Trials of Sport.*

Piſc. BOY, come, give me my Dubbing-bag here preſently — and now, Sir, ſince I find you ſo honeſt a Man, I will make no Scruple to lay open my Treaſure before you.

Via. Did ever one ſee the like! what a Heap of Trumpery is here! certainly never an Angler in *Europe* has his Shop half ſo well furniſhed as you have.

Piſc. You, perhaps, may think now, that I rake together this Trumpery, as you call it, for Shew only; to the End, that ſuch as ſee it (which are not many I aſſure you) may think me a great Maſter in the *Art of Angling*; but let me tell you, there are

are some Colours, as contemptible as they seem here, that are very hard to be got, and scarce any one of them, which, if it should be lost, I should not miss, and be concerned about the Loss of it too, once in the Year; but look you, Sir, amongst all these, I will chuse out these two Colours only; of which, this is Bear's Hair; this darker, no great Matter what; but, I am sure, I have killed a great deal of Fish with it, and, with one or both of these, you shall take *Trout* or *Grayling* this very Day, notwithstanding all Disadvantages, or my Art shall fail me.

Via. You promise comfortably, and I have a great deal of Reason to believe every Thing you say; but I wish the Fly was made, that we were at it.

Pisc. That will not be long a doing; and pray observe then. You see first how I hold my Hook, and thus I begin; look you, here are my first two or three Whips about the bare Hook; thus I join Hook and Line; thus I put on my Wings; thus I twirl and lap on my Dubbing; thus I work it up towards the Head; thus I part my Wings; thus I rip my superfluous Dubbing from my Silk; thus fasten, thus trim and adjust my Fly, and there is a Fly made: And now, how do you like it?

Via. In earnest, admirably well! and it perfectly resembles a Fly; but we, about *London*, make the Bodies of our Flies both much bigger and longer, so long, as even almost to the very Beard of the Hook.

Pisc. I know it very well, and had one of those Flies given me by an honest Gentleman who came with my Father *Walton* to give me a Visit, which, to tell you the Truth, I hung in my Parlour Window to laugh at; but, Sir, you know the Proverb,

They

They who go to Rome, *must do as they at* Rome *do*; and believe me, you must here make your Flies after this Fashion or you will take no Fish. Come, I will look you out a Line, and you shall put it on and try it. — There, Sir, now I think you are fitted, and now, beyond the farther End of the Walk, you shall begin; I see at that Bend of the Water above, the Air crisps the Water a little; fix on your Line first here, and then go up thither and see what you can do.

Via. Did you see that, Sir?

Pisc. Yes, I saw the Fish, and he saw you too, which made him turn short; you must fish further off, if you intend to have any Sport here; this is no *New River* let me tell you.—That was a good *Trout*, believe me; did you touch him?

Via. No, I would I had, we would not have parted so.—Look you! there was another—this is an excellent Fly.

Pisc. That Fly, I am sure, would kill Fish if the Day were right; but they only chew at it I see, and will not take it. Come, Sir, let us return back to the Fishing-house; this still Water, I see, will not do our Business to Day.—You shall now, if you please make a Fly yourself, and try what you can do in the Streams with that; and I know a *Trout*, taken with a Fly of your own making, will please you better than twenty with one of mine.—Give me that Bag again, Sirrah; look you, Sir, there is a Hook, Towght, Silk, and a Feather for the Wings; be doing with those, and I will look you out a Dubbing that I think will do.

Via. This is a very little Hook?

Pisc. That may serve to inform you that it is for a very little Fly, and you must make your Wings accordingly; for, as the Case stands, it must

must be a little Fly, and a very little one too, that must do your Business. Well said, believe me, you shift your Fingers very handsomely: I doubt I have taken upon me to teach my Master. So, here is your Dubbing now.

Via. This Dubbing is very black.

Pisc. It appears so in Hand, but step to the Door, and hold it up betwixt your Eye and the Sun, and it will appear a shining Red: Let me tell you, never a Man in *England* can discern the true Colour of a Dubbing any Way but that, and therefore chuse always to make your Flies on such a bright Sun-shine Day as this; which also you may the better do, because it is worth nothing to fish in; here put it on, and be sure to make the Body of your Fly as slender as you can. Very good! upon my Word you have made a marvellous handsome Fly.

Via. I am very glad to hear it: It is the first that ever I made of this Kind in my Life.

Pisc. Away, away! you are a Doctor at it; but I will not commend you too much, lest I make you proud. Come, put it on, and you shall now go downward to some Streams betwixt the Rocks, below the little Foot-bridge you see there, and try your Fortune. Take heed of slipping into the Water, as you follow me under this Rock—So, now you are over—and now throw in.

Via. This is a fine Stream indeed—There is one! I have him!

Pisc. And a precious Catch you have of him; pull him out, I see you have a tender Hand. This is a diminutive Gentleman—E'en throw him in again, and let him grow till he be more worthy your Anger.

Via.

Via. Pardon me, Sir, all is Fish that comes to the Hook with me now—Another!

Pisc. And of the same Standing.

Via. I see I shall have good Sport now—Another! and a *Grayling*.—Why, you have Fish here at Will.

Pisc. Come, Come, cross the Bridge, and go down the other Side lower, where you will find finer Streams and better Sport, I hope than this—Look you, Sir, here is a fine Stream now! you have Length enough! stand a little further off: let me entreat you, and do but fish this Stream like an Artist, and peradventure a good Fish may fall to your Share—How now! what is all gone?

Via. No, but I touched him; but that was a Fish worth taking.

Pisc. Why, now let me tell you, you lost that Fish by your own Fault, and through your own Eagerness and Haste; for you are never to offer to strike a good Fish, if he do not strike himself, *till first you see him turn his Head, after he has taken your Fly*, and then you can never strain your Tackle in the Striking, if you strike with any manner of Moderation. Come, throw in once again, and fish me this Stream by Inches; for, I assure you, there are very good Fish, both *Trout* and *Grayling*, lie here; and, at that great Stone on the other Side, 'tis ten to one a good *Trout* gives you the Meeting——

Via. I have him now, but he is gone down towards the Bottom; I cannot see what he is; yet he should be a good Fish by his Weight; but he makes no great Stir.

Pisc. Why then, by what you say, I dare venture to assure you, he is a *Grayling*, who is one of the deadest-hearted Fishes in the World, and the bigger

bigger he is, the more eaſily taken—Look you, now you ſee him plain; I told you what he was—bring hither that Landing-net, Boy, and now, Sir, he is your own, and, believe me, a good one, ſixteen Inches long, I warrant him. I have taken none ſuch this Year.

Via. I never ſaw a *Grayling* before look ſo black.

Piſc. Did you not? Why then, let me tell you, that you never ſaw one before in right Seaſon; for then a *Grayling* is very black about his Head, Gills, and down his Back, and has his Belly of a dark Grey, dappled with black Spots, as you ſee this is, and I am apt to conclude, that from thence he derives his Name of *Umber*. Though, I muſt tell you, this Fiſh is paſt his Prime, and begins to decline, and was in better Seaſon at *Chriſtmas*, than he is now—but move on, for it grows towards Dinner-time, and there is a very great and Fine Stream below, under that Rock, that fills the deepeſt Pool in all the River, where you are almoſt ſure of a good Fiſh.

Via. Let him come, I will try a Fall with him; but I had thought that the *Grayling* had been always in Seaſon with the *Trout*, and had come in and gone out with him.

Piſc. Oh! no, aſſure yourſelf, a *Grayling* is a Winter Fiſh; but ſuch a one as would deceive any but ſuch as know him very well indeed; for his Fleſh, even in his worſt Seaſon, is ſo firm, and will ſo eaſily calver *, that, in plain Truth, he is very good Meat at all Times; but, in his perfect Seaſon (which, by the Way, none but an over-grown *Grayling* will ever be) I think ſo good a Fiſh

* *That is,* part in Flakes.

Fish, as to be little inferior to the best *Trout* that ever I tasted in my Life.

Via. Here's another *Skip-jack*, and I have raised five or six more at least whilst you were speaking—Well, go thy Way little *Dove!* thou art the finest River that ever I saw, and the fullest of Fish. Indeed, Sir, I like it so well, that I am afraid you will be troubled with me once a Year, so long as we two live.

Pisc. I am afraid I shall not, Sir, but, were you once here a *May* or a *June*, if good Sport would tempt you, I should then expect you would sometimes see me, for you would then say it were a fine River indeed, if you had once seen the Sport at the Height.

Via. Which I will do, if I live, and that you please to give me Leave—There was one! and—there another!

Pisc. And all this in a strange River, and with a Fly of your own making! Why, what a dangerous Man are you!

Via. Ay, Sir, but who taught me? And, as *Dametas* says by his Man *Dorus*, so you may say by me;

——— *If my Man such Praises have,*
What are my Due that taught the Knave.

But, what have we got here? a Rock springing up in the Middle of the River!—This is one of the oddest Sights that ever I saw!

Pisc. Why, Sir, from that Peak *, that you see standing up there distant from the Rock, this is

* 'Tis a Rock in the Fashion of a *Spire-steeple*, and almost as big. It stands in the Midst of the River *Dove*, and not far from Mr. *Coton's*

is called *Peak-pool*; and young Mr. *Isaac Walton* was so pleased with it as to draw it in Landskip in black and white in a Blank Book I have at Home, as he has done several Prospects of my House also, which I keep for a Memorial of his Favour, and will shew you, when we come up to Dinner.

Via. Has young Mr. *Isaac Walton* been here too?

Pisc. Yes, marry has he, Sir, and that again and again too; and in *France* since, and at *Rome*, and *Venice*, and I cannot tell where; but I intend to ask him a great many hard Questions so soon as I can see him, which will be God willing, next Month. In the mean Time, Sir, to come to this fine Stream, at the Head of this great Pool, you must venture over these slippery cobbling Sones—Believe me, Sir, there you were nimble, or else you had been down—but, now you are got over, look to yourself, for, on my Word, if a Fish rise here, he is like to be such a one as will endanger your Tackle—How now!

Via. I think you have such Command here over the Fishes, that you can raise them by your Word, as they say Conjurers can do Spirits, and afterwards make them do what you bid them; for, here is a *Trout* has taken my Fly, I had rather have lost a Crown—What Luck is this! he was a lovely Fish, and turned up a Side like a *Salmon*.

Pisc.

Lord's House; below which Place this delicate River takes a swift Career betwixt many mighty Rocks, much higher and bigger than St. *Paul's Church*, before it was burnt. And this *Dove*, being opposed by one of the highest of them, has at last forced itself a Way through it; and, after a Mile's Concealment, appears again with more Glory and Beauty than before that Opposition, running through the most pleasant Vallies and most fruitful Meadows, that this Nation can justly boast of. *Mr.* Walton's *Note, spoken of in his Letter.*

Pisc. Oh, Sir, this is a War where you sometimes win, and must sometimes expect to lose; never concern yourself for the Loss of your Fly, for ten to one I teach you to make a better—Who is that calls?

Serv. Sir, will it please you to come to Dinner.

Pisc. We come. You hear, Sir, we are called, And now take your Choice whether you will climb this steep Hill before you, from the Top of which you will go directly into the House, or back again over these stepping Stones, and about by the Bridge?

Via. Nay sure the neareſt Way is best, at least my Stomach tells me so; and I am now so well acquainted with your Rocks, that I fear them not.

Pisc. Come then, follow me; and so soon as we have dined, we will down again to my little *Fishery*-House, where I will begin at the Place I left off about Fly-fishing, and read you another Lecture: for I have a great deal more to say upon that Subject.

Via. The more the better; I could never have met with so obliging a Master, my first excepted; nor such Sport can all the Rivers about *London* ever afford, as is to be found in this pretty River.

Pisc. You deserve to have better, both because I see you are willing to take Pains, and for liking this little so well; and *better* I hope to shew you before we part.

CHAP. VII.

The first Lecture on making Artificial-Flies.

Via. COME, Sir, having now well dined, and being again set in your little Fishing-House, I will now challenge your Promise, and intreat

intreat you to proceed in your Instructions for *Fly-fishing*; which, that you may be the better encouraged to do, I will assure you, that I have not lost, I think, one Syllable of what you have told me, but very well retain all your Directions, both for the *Rod*, *Line*, and *making a Fly*, and now desire an Account of the *Flies* themselves.

Pisc. Why, Sir, I am ready to give it you, and shall have the whole Afternoon to do it in, if nobody comes in to interrupt us; for you must know, besides the Unfitness of the Day, that the Afternoons, so early in *March*, signify very little to angle with a *Fly*: though, with a *Minnow*, or a *Worm*, something might, I confess, be done. To begin then where I left off; my Father *Walton* tells us but of twelve artificial * Flies only, to angle with at the Top, and gives their Names; of which some are common with us here, and, I think, I guess at most of them by his Description, and, I believe, they all breed, and are taken in our Rivers, though we do not make them either of the same Dubbing or Fashion as it may be in the Rivers about *London*; which, I presume, he has most frequented, and where 'tis likely he has done most Execution. There is not much Notice taken of many more, but we are acquainted with several others here (though, perhaps, I may reckon some of his by other Names too) but, if I do, I shall make you Amends by an Addition to *his Catalogue*. And although the forenamed great Master in the Art of Angling, for so in Truth he is, tells you, that no Man should in Honesty catch a *Trout* till the Middle of *March* †, yet, I hope, he will give a Man Leave sooner to take a *Grayling*, which, as I told you, is, *in the dead Months in his best Season*;

* Page 91. † Page 93.

Seasons; and do assure you, which I remember by a very remarkable Token, I did once take, upon the sixth Day of *December*, one and only one, of the biggest *Graylings*, and the best in Season, that ever I yet saw or tasted; and do usually take *Trouts* too, and with a Fly, not only before the Middle of this Month, but almost every Year in *February*, unless it be a very ill Spring indeed; and have sometimes in *January*, so early as *New Year's-Tide*, and in Frost and Snow taken *Grayling*, in a warm sun-shiny Day, for an Hour or two about Noon; and to fish for him with a *Grub*, it is then the best Time of all. I shall therefore begin my Fly-fishing with that Month, (though, I confess, very few begin so soon, and that such as are so fond of the Sport as to embrace all Opportunities, can rarely in that Month find a Day fit for their Purpose) and tell you, that, upon my Knowledge, *these Flies*, in a warm Sun, for an Hour or two in the Day, are certainly taken.

§ * §

JANUARY. 1. A Red brown. The Wings of the Male of a *Mallard* almost white: The Dubbing of the Tail of a black, long-coated Cur, such as muffs are made of; for the Hair on the Tail of such a Dog dies, and turns to a Red-brown, but *that* of a smooth coated Dog of the same Colour will not, because it will not die, but retains its natural Colour. This Fly is taken in a warm Sun this whole Month through. 2. A very little bright-dun *Gnat*, as little as possibly can be made, so little as never to be fished withal with above one Hair next the Hook. This is to be made of a mixed Dubbing of *Marten's-fur*, and the white of a *Hare's* Scut, with a very white, small Wing. 'Tis

no

no matter how fine you fish, for nothing will rise this Month but a *Grayling*, and of them I never at this Season saw any, taken with a Fly, of above a Foot long, but of little ones, about the Bigness of a *Smelt*; in a warm Day, and a glowing Sun, you may take enough with these two Flies. And they are both taken the whole *North* through.

FEBRUARY. 1. Where the *Red-brown* of *last* Month ends, another, almost the same Colour, begins with *this*; saving the Dubbing must be of something a blacker Colour, and both of them warped on with red Silk. The truest Dubbing is to be got off the black Spot of a *Hog's* Ear; not that a black Spot in any Part of the Hog will not afford the same Colour, but the Hair in that Place is by many Degrees softer and finer for the Purpose; his Wing must be as the last named; this kills all this Month, and is called the *Lesser Red-brown*. 2. A plain *Hackle*, or *Palmer-fly*, made with a rough black Body, of black *Spaniel's* Fur, or the Whirl of an *Ostrich* Feather, the red Hackle of a *Capon* over all. It will kill, and, if the Weather be right, make very good Sport. 3. A lesser Hackle, with a black Body also, Silver-twist over that, and a red Feather over all, will fill your Pannier with very good Fish, if the Weather be open, and not bound up in Ice and Snow; but, in case of the latter, you are to angle only with the smallest Gnats, *Browns* and *Duns*, you can make: and with those are only to expect *Graylings* no bigger than *Sprats*. 4. Upon a whirling, rough Water, we have a great *Hackle*, the Body black, wrapped with a red Feather of a *Capon* untrimmed, that is, the whole Length of the Hackle staring out; for we sometimes barb the *Hackle* Feather

ther short all over, sometimes only a little, sometimes close underneath, leaving the whole Length of the Feather on the Top or Back of the Fly, which makes it swim better, and, as Occasion serves, kill very great Fish. 5. Another great *Hackle*, the Body black, ribb'd over with Gold-twist, and a red Feather over all, which does great Execution. 6. A great *Dun*, made with dun *Bear's Hair*, the Wings of the grey Feather of a *Mallard* near his Tail. *This* is absolutely the best Fly can be thrown on a River this Month, and with which an Angler shall have admirable Sport. 7. The great blue *Dun*; the Dubbing, of the Bottom of *Bear's* Hair next the Roots, mixed with a little blue *Camlet*, the Wings, of the dark-grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 8. A Dark-brown; the Dubbing, of the brown Hair off the Flank of a brended *Cow*, the Wings, of the grey *Drake's* Feather.

Note, *That these several* Hackles, *or* Palmer-flies, *are some for one Water and Sky, some for another, and, according to the Change of those, we alter their Size and Colour.* Note also, *That in this, and all other Months in the Year, when you do not certainly know what Fly is taken, or cannot see any Fish rise, put on a small* Hackle, *if the Water be clear, or a larger, if something thick, till you have taken one; and then, thrusting your Finger through his Gills, pull out his Gorge, which opening with your Knife, you will discover what Fly is taken, and may fit yourself accordingly. For the making of a* Hackle, *viz.* Palmer-fly, *my Father* Walton *has already given you sufficient Direction*.*

MARCH. Use all the same *Hackles* and *Flies* as in *February*, but make them less. We have besides,

* Page 93.

sides, though not *that* indeed, which is one of the best Flies we have; the Dubbing must be of the bottom Fur of a *Squirrel's* Tail, the Wing of the grey Feather of a *Drake*. 2. The *Bright-brown*; the Dubbing, of the Brown of a *Spanniel*, or a *Cow's* Flank, with a grey Wing. 3. A *whitish Dun*, made of the Roots of *Camel's* Hair, the Wings of the grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 4. The *Thorn-Tree-fly*; Dubbing an absolute black, mixed with eight or ten Hairs of *Isabella* colour'd *Mohair*, the Body as little as can be made, the Wings of a bright *Mallard's* Feather: *An admirable Fly, in great Repute among us*. 5. The *Blue-dun*; the Dubbing is thus to be got: Take a small Tooth-comb, and with it comb the Neck of a black *Grey-hound*, the *Down* which sticks in the Teeth will be the finest *Blue* you ever saw. The Wings of this Fly can hardly be too white; he is taken about the 10th of this Month, and lasts till the 24th. 6. The little *black Gnat*, taken also for the above-named Space of Time; the Dubbing of the Fur of a black *Water-dog*, or the Down of a young black *Water-coot*, the Wings of the Male of a *Mallard*, as white as may be, the Body as little as you can possibly make it, and the Wings as short as his Body *. 7. The *Bright-brown*, taken from the Middle of *March* to the same of *April*; the Dubbing to be had out of a *Parchment-maker's* Lime Pits, from the Hair of an abortive *Calf*, which the Lime will turn to be so bright as to shine like Gold; the Feather of a brown *Hen* is best for the Wings.

* Some make the Body, of the *Cap* or *Top-feather* on a *Plover's* Head.

APRIL. *All the* Hackles *and* Flies *taken in* March, *will be taken* this Month *also*, with this Distinction only concerning the *Flies*, that all the *Browns* be lapped with red Silk, and the *Duns* with yellow. To these, 1. A small *Bright-brown*, made of *Spaniel's* Fur, with light grey Wings, in a bright Day, and clear Water, is very well taken. 2. A little *Dark-brown*: the Dubbing of *that* Colour, and some violet *Camlet*, mixed; the Wings the grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 3. The *Violet-fly*, from the 6th to the 10th of this Month, made of a dark violet Stuff, the Wings of a grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 4. The *Whirling-Dun* comes in about the 12th of this Month, taken about *Mid-day*, every Day this Month through, and by Fits from thence to the End of *June*: It is commonly made of the Down of a *Fox-Cub*, which is Ash-coloured at the Roots next the Skin, ribbed about with yellow Silk, the Wings of the pale grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 5. A *Yellow-Dun*; the Dubbing of *Camel's* Hair, and yellow *Camlet* or Wool, mixed, and a white grey Wing. 6. Another *little Brown*, with a very slender Body; the Dubbing of dark brown, and violet *Camlet* mixed, and a grey Wing: Which, though the Direction for making be near with the other *Bright-brown*, it is yet another Fly, and will take when the other will not, especially in a bright Day, and clear Water. 7. The *Horse-flesh-fly*, comes in about the 20th of this Month; the Dubbing is a blue *Mohair* with Pink-coloured and red *Tammy* mixed, a light-coloured Wing, and dark-brown-Head. *This Fly is taken best in an Evening, from two Hours before Sun-set till Twilight, and is taken the Month through.*

MAY.

MAY. And now, Sir, that we are entering into the Month of *May*, I think it requisite to beg not only your Attention, but your best Patience; for I must be a little tedious, and dwell upon this Month longer than ordinary. Which, that you may the better endure, I must tell you, this Month deserves and requires to be insisted on, as *it*, and the Month following, afford more Pleasure to the *Fly-angler*, than all the rest. And here it is that you are to expect an Account of the *Green-drake* and *Stone fly*, promised you so long ago, and *some others*, that are peculiar to this, and Part of the following Month; and that, though not so great, either in Bulk or Name, do yet stand in Competition with the two before-named, and so, that it is yet undecided amongst *Anglers*, to which of the Pretenders to the Title of *May-fly* it does properly and duly belong; neither dare I, where so many of the learned in the Art of Angling are got in Dispute about the Controversy, take upon me to determine; but, I think, I ought to have a Vote among them, and, according to that Privilege shall give you my free Opinion; and peradventure, when I have told you all, you may incline to think me in the right.

Via. I have so great a Deference to your Judgment in these Matters, that I must always be of your Opinion; and the more you speak, the faster I grow to my Attention, for I can never be weary of hearing you upon this Subject.

Pisc. Why, that is Encouragement enough. And now prepare yourself for a tedious Lecture; but I will first begin with the Flies of less Esteem, though *almost any thing will take a* Trout *in* May, that I may afterwards insist the longer on those of greater Note and Reputation. Know therefore,

that the first Fly we take Notice of in this Month is called, 1. The *Turky-fly*; the Dubbing, ravelled out of some blue Stuff, and lapped about with yellow Silk, the Wings of a grey *Mallard's* Feather. 2. A great *Hackle*, viz. *Palmer-fly*, with a yellow Body, ribbed with Gold-twist, and large Wings of a *Mallard's* Feather, dy'd yellow, with a red *Capon's* Hackle over all. 3. A *Black-fly*; the Dubbing, of a black *Spaniel's* Fur, and the Wings of a grey *Mallard's* Feather. 4. A *Light-brown*, with a slender Body; the Dubbing, twirl'd upon a small red Silk, and raised with the Point of a *Needle*, that the Ribs or Rows of Silk may appear through; the Wings, of the grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 5. A *Little Dun*; the Dubbing of *Bear's* Dun whirl'd upon yellow Silk, the Wings of the grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 6. A *White Gnat*, with a pale Wing, and black Head. 7. The *Peacock-fly*; the Body made of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, with a red Head, and Wings of a *Mallard's* Feather. 8. The *Dun-cut*, a very killing Fly; the Dubbing is a *Bear's* Dun, a little blue and yellow mix'd with it, a large dun Wing, and two Horns at the Head, made of the Hairs of a *Squirrel's* Tail. 9. The *Cow-Lady*, a little Fly, the Body of a *Peacock's* Feather, the Wing of a red Feather, or Strips of the red Hackle of a *Cock*. 10. The *Cow-turd Fly*; the Dubbing, light brown and yellow mix'd, the Wing the dark grey Feather of a *Mallard*. And *note, that besides these above-mentioned, all the same* Hackles *and* Flies *that are taken in* April *with those also taken* this Month. *The* Hackles *only brighter, and the* Flies *smaller*; as also *all Browns and Duns.*

And

And now I come to my *Stone-fly* and *Green-drake*, which are the Matadores for *Trout* and *Gray-ling*, and, in their Season, kill more Fish in our *Derbyshire* Rivers than all the rest, past and to come, in the whole Year besides.

But First, I am to tell you, that we have *four* several Flies which contend for the Titles of the *May-fly*; namely, the *Green-drake*, the *Stone-fly*, the *Black-fly*, and the little yellow *May-fly*: All these have their Champions and Advocates to dispute and plead their Priority, though I do not understand why the *two last* named should; the *first* two having so manifestly the Advantage, both in their Beauty, and the wonderful Execution they do in their Season. Of these,

II. The *Green-drake* comes in about the 20th of this Month, or betwixt that and the latter End, for they are sometimes sooner and sometimes later, according to the Quality of the Year, but never well taken till towards the End of this Month, and the Beginning of *June*: The *Stone-fly* comes much sooner, so early as the Middle of *April*, but is never well taken till towards the Middle of *May*, and continues to kill much longer than the *Green-drake* stays with us, as long as to the End almost of *June*, and indeed so long as there are any of them to be seen upon the Water; and sometimes (in an *artificial Fly*, and late at Night, or before Sun-rise in the Morning) longer.

Now both these Flies, and I believe, many *others*, though I think not *all*, are certainly and demonstratively bred in the very Rivers where they are taken; our *Cadews* or *Cod-bait*, which lie under the Stones, at the Bottom of the Water, most of

them turning into those two Flies, and, being gathered in the Husk or Crust, near the Time of their Maturity, are very easily known and distinguished, and are of all others the most remarkable, both for their Size (as being of all other the biggest, the shortest of them being a full Inch long or more) and for the Execution they do; the *Trout* and *Grayling*, being much more greedy of them than any others: and indeed the *Trout* never feeds fat, nor comes into his *perfect Season*, till these Flies come in.

Of these, the *Green-drake* never discloses from his Husk, till he be first there grown to full Maturity, Body, Wings, and all. And then he creeps out of his Cell, but with his Wings so crimpt, and ruffled, by being pressed together in that narrow Room, that they are some Hours totally useless to him; by which Means he is compelled either to creep upon the *Flags*, *Sedges*, and *Blades of Grass*, if his first rising from the Bottom of the Water be near the Banks of the River, till the Air and Sun stiffen and smooth them. Or, if his first Appearance above Water happen to be in the Middle, he then lies upon the Surface of the Water like a Ship at Hull; for his Feet are totally useless to him there, and he cannot creep upon the Water, as the *Stone-fly* can, until his Wings have got Stiffness to fly with, if by some *Trout* or *Grayling* he be not taken in the *interim*, which ten to one he is; and then his Wings stand high and closed exact upon his Back, like the Butterfly, and his Motion in flying is the same. His Body is in some of a paler, in others of a darker yellow, for they are not all exactly of a Colour, ribb'd with Rows of green, long, slender, and growing sharp towards the Tail, at the End of which he has three long small Whisks,

Whisks, of a very dark Colour, almoſt black, and his Tail turns up towards his Back like a *Mallard*, from whence, queſtionleſs, he has his Name of a *Green-drake*; theſe, as I think I told you before, we commonly *dap* or *dibble* with, and having gathered great ſtore of them into a long Draw-box with Holes in the Cover to give them Air, where alſo they will continue freſh and vigorous a Night or more, we take them out thence by the Wings, and bait them thus upon the Hook.

§ * §

We firſt take one (for we commonly fiſh with two of them at a Time) and putting the Point of the Hook into the thickeſt Part of his Body, under one of his Wings, run it directly through, and out at the other Side, leaving him ſpitted croſs upon the Hook, and then taking the other, put him on after the ſame Manner, but with his Head the contrary Way; in which Poſture they will live upon the Hook and play with their Wings for a Quarter of an Hour, or more; but you muſt have a care to keep their Wings dry, both from the Water, and alſo, that your Fingers be not wet when you take them out to bait them, for then your Bait is ſpoiled.

Having now told you how to angle with this Fly alive, I am now to tell you next, how to make an artificial Fly, that will ſo perfectly reſemble him to a Wonder, as to be taken in a rough windy Day, when no Flies can lie upon the Water, nor are to be found about the Banks and Sides of the Rivers and with which you ſhall certainly kill the beſt *Trout* or *Grayling* in the River.

The artificial *Green-drake* then is made upon a large Hook; the Dubbing *Camel's* Hair, bright *Bear's* Hair, the soft Down that is combed from a *Hog's* Bristles and yellow *Camlet*, well mixed together; the Body long, and ribbed about with green Silk, or rather yellow, waxed with green Wax; the Whisks of the Tail, of the long Hairs of Sables or Fitchet; and the Wings of the white-grey Feather of the *Mallard* dy'd Yellow, which is also to be dy'd thus: *Take the Root of a Barbary-tree and shave it, and put to it Woody-vifs, with as much Allum as a Walnut, and boil your Feathers in it with Rain-water, and they will be of a very fine yellow.* I have now done with the *Green-drake*, excepting to tell you, that he is taken at all Hours during the Season, whilst there is any Day upon the Sky; and, with a *Made-fly* I once took ten Days after he was absolutely gone, in a cloudy Day, after a Shower, and in a whistling Wind, five-and thirty very great *Trouts* and *Graylings*, betwixt five and eight of the Clock in the Evening, and had no less than five or six Flies, with three good Hairs a-piece, taken from me in despite of my Heart, besides. 12. I should now come next to the *Stone-fly*, but there is another Gentleman in my Way, that must of Necessity come in between, and that is the *Grey-drake*, which in all Shapes and Dimensions is perfectly the same with the other, but quite almost of another Colour; being of a paler, and more livid yellow and green, and ribbed with black, quite down his Body, with black shining Wings, and so diaphanous and tender, Cob-web like, that they are of no manner of use for dabbing; but come in, and are taken after the *Green-drake*, and in an artificial Fly kill very well. Which Fly is thus made; the Dubbing of

the

the Down of *Hog's* Briſtles, and black *Spaniel's* Fur, mixed, and rib'd down the Body with black Silk, the Whiſks, of the Hairs on the Beard of a black *Cat*, and the Wings of the black-grey Feather of a *Mallard*.

And now I come to the *Stone-fly*, but am afraid I have already wearied your Patience; which, if I have, I beſeech you freely tell me ſo, and I will defer the remaining Inſtructions for *Fly-angling* till ſome other Time.

Via. No, truly, Sir, I can never be weary of hearing of you. But, if you think fit, becauſe I am afraid I am too troubleſome, to refreſh yourſelf with a Glaſs and a Pipe, you may afterwards proceed; and I ſhall be exceedingly pleaſed to hear you.

Piſc. I thank you, Sir, for that Motion; for, believe me, I am dry with talking – Here, Boy, give us here a Bottle and a Glaſs – and, Sir, my Service to you, and *to all our Friends in the South.*

Via. Your Servant, Sir, I will pledge you as heartily; for the good powdered Beef I eat at Dinner, or ſomething elſe, has made me thirſty.

CHAP. VIII.

The Second Lecture on making Artificial Flies.

Via. SO, Sir, I am now ready for another Leſſon, ſo ſoon as you pleaſe to give it me.

Piſc. And I, Sir, as ready to give you the beſt I can. Having told you the Time of the *Stone-fly's*

coming in, and that he is bred of a *Cadis*, in the very River where he is taken, I am next to tell you, that, 13. This same *Stone-fly* has not the Patience to continue in his Cruſt or Huſk till his Wings be full grown; but ſo ſoon as ever they begin to put out, that he feels himſelf ſtrong (at which time we call him a *Jack*) ſqueezes himſelf out of Priſon, and crawls to the Top of ſome Stone, where, if he can find a Chink that will receive him, or can creep betwixt two Stones, the one lying hollow upon the other (which, by the way, we alſo lay *ſo*, purpoſely to find them) he there lurks till his Wings be full grown, and there is your only Place to find him, and from thence doubtleſs he derives his Name: though, for Want of ſuch Convenience, he will make ſhift with the Hollow of a Bank, or any other Place where the Wind cannot come to fetch him off. His Body is long and pretty thick, and as broad at the Tail almoſt as in the Middle; his Colour a very fine brown, ribbed with yellow, and much yellower on the Belly than the Back; he has two or three Whiſks alſo at the Tag of his Tail, and two little Horns upon his Head; his Wings, when full grown, are double, and flat down his Back; of the ſame Colour, but rather darker than his Body, and longer than it, though he makes but little uſe of them; for you ſhall rarely ſee him flying, though often ſwimming and paddling, with ſeveral Feet he has under his Belly, upon the Water, without ſtirring a Wing; but the *Drake* will mount Steeple-high, in the Air, though he is to be found upon Flags and Graſs too, and, indeed, every-where, high and low, near the River, there being ſo many of them in their Seaſon, as, were they not a very inoffenſive Inſect, would look like a Plague.

And

And these *Drakes* (since I forgot to tell you before, I will tell you here) are taken by the Fish, to that incredible Degree, that, upon a calm Day, you shall see the still Deeps continually all over Circles by the Fishes rising; who will gorge themselves with those Flies, till they purge again out of their Gills. And the *Trouts* are at that Time so lusty and strong, that one of eight or ten Inches long will then more struggle and tug, and more endanger your Tackle, than one twice as big in Winter: But pardon this Digression.

§ * §

This *Stone-fly* then, we dape or dibble with as with the *Drake*, but with this Difference; that whereas the *Green-drake* is common both to *Stream* and *Still*, and to all Hours of the Day; we seldom dape with this but in the Streams, for, in a whittling Wind a Made-fly in the Deep is better, and rarely but early and late; it not being so proper for the Mid-time of the Day, though a great *Grayling* will then take it very well in a sharp Stream, and here and there a *Trout* too, but much better towards eight, nine, ten, or eleven of the Clock at Night; at which Time also the best Fish rise, and the later the better, provided you can see the Fly; and when you cannot, a Made-fly will murder; which is to be made thus: The Dubbing of *Bear's* Dun, with a little brown and yellow *Camlet*, very well mixed, but so placed, that your Fly may be more yellow on the Belly, and towards the Tail underneath, than in any other Part; and you are to place two or three Hairs of black *Cat's* Beard on the Top of the Hook in your Arming, so as to be turned up when you warp on your Dubbing, and to stand almost upright, and staring one

from another: And *note*, That your Fly is to be ribbed with yellow Silk, and the Wings long, and very large, of the dark-grey Feather of a *Mallard*. The next *May-fly* is, 14. The *Black Fly*, made with a black Body of the Whirl of an *Ostrich's* Feather, ribbed with Silver-twist, and the black Hackle of a *Cock* over all, and is a killing Fly, but not to be named with either of the other. 15. The little yellow *May-fly*, the last of the four Pretenders, in Shape exactly the same with the *Green-drake*, but a very little, one, and of as bright a yellow as can be seen, made of a bright yellow *Camlet*, the Wings of a white grey Feather dy'd yellow. 16. The *Camlet-fly*, and the last for this Month, which, though it comes in the Middle of it, continues all *June*. In Shape like a Moth, with fine diaper'd or water'd Wings, and with which, as I told you before, I sometimes used to dibble; and *Grayling* will rise mightily at it. But the artificial Fly, which is only used amongst *our* Anglers, is made of a dark brown shining *Camlet* ribbed over with a very small light green Silk, the Wings, of the double-grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 'Tis a killing Fly for small Fish. And so much for *May*.

JUNE. From the First, to the Four-and-twentieth, the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly* are taken, as I told you before: *Then are*, 1. The *Owl-fly*, taken from the 12th to the 24th, late at Night; the Dubbing, of a white *Weasel's* Tail, and a white-grey Wing. 2. The *Barme-fly* (another Dun) named from its *yesty* Colour; the Dubbing, the Fur of a yellow-dun *Cat*, a grey Wing, of a *Mallard's* Feather. 3. A *Hackle*, with a purple Body, whip'd about with a red *Capon's* Feather.

4. A

4. A *Gold-twist Heckle*, with a purple Body, whip'd exactly as *that* above. 5. A *Flesh fly*; the Dubbing of black *Spaniel's* Fur, and blue *Wool*, mixed, and a grey Wing. 6. The little *Flesh-fly*; the Body of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, Wings, of the grey Feather of a *Drake*. 7. The *Peacock-fly*; the Body and Wing both made of the Feather of *that Bird*. 8. The *Ant-fly*; the Dubbing, of brown and red *Camlet* mixed, with a light-grey Wing. 9. The *brown-gnat*, with a very slender Body, of brown and violet *Camlet* well mixed, and a light-grey Wing. 10. A little *Black-gnat*; the Dubbing of black *Mohair*, and a white-grey Wing. 11. A *Green-grashopper*; the Dubbing, of green and yellow Wool mixed, ribbed over with green Silk, and a red *Capon's* Feather over all. 12. A little *Dun-grashopper*; the Body made slender of a dun *Camlet*, a dun *Hackle* at Top.

JULY. *All the small Flies are taken in this Month that were in* June. We have then, 1. The *Orange-fly*; the Dubbing, of *Orange-wool*, the Wing of a black Feather. 2. A little *White-dun*; the Body of white *Mohair*, the Wings blue, of a *Hern's* Feather. 3. The *Wasp-fly*, a dark brown Dubbing, or else the Fur of a black *Cat's* Tail, ribbed about with yellow Silk, the Wing, of the grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 4. A *Black Hackle*; the Body, of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, a black *Hackle* Feather on the Top. 5. *Another*, made of a *Peacock's* Whirl, without Wings. 6. The *Shell-fly*; the Dubbing, of yellow green *Jersey* Wool, and a little white *Hog's* Hair, mixed. I call this the *Palm-fly*, and do believe it is taken for a Palm that drops off the Willows into the Water.

Water. For I have seen *Trouts* take little Pieces of Moss as they swam down the River for this Fly; by which, I conclude, *the best Way to hit the right Colour is to compare your Dubbing with the Moss, and mix your Colours as near as you can.* 7. A *Black-blue Dun*; the Dubbing of the Fur of a black *Rabbit*, mixed with a little yellow, the Wings, of the Feather of a blue *Pigeon's* Wing.

AUGUST. *The same Flies with* July. Then, 1, Another *Ant fly*; the Dubbing, the black-brown Hair of a *Cow*, some red warped in for the Tag of his Tail, and a dark Wing; *a killing Fly.* 2. The *Fern-fly*; the Dubbing, of the Fur of a *Hare's* Neck, that is of the Colour of *Fern*, with a darkish grey Wing of a *Mallard's* Feather; *a Killer too.* 3. A white *Hackle*; its Body of white *Mohair*, warp'd about with a white *Hackle* Feather, *and this is assuredly taken for* Thistle-down. 4. A *Harry-long-legs*; the Body made of *Bear's* Dun and blue Wool mixed, and a brown *Hackle* Feather over all: *All the same Browns and Duns are taken this Month that were in* May.

SEPTEMBER. *The same Flies are taken this Month that were in* April: To which I shall only add, 1. A *Camel-brown fly*; the Dubbing, pulled out of the Lime of a Wall, whip'd about with red Silk, and a darkish grey *Mallard's* Feather for the Wing. 2. *One* other, for which we have no Name. It is made of the black Hair of a *Badger's* Skin, mixed with the yellow softest Down of a fanded *Hog.*

OCTOBER. *The same Flies that were taken in* March.

NOVEMBER.

NOVEMBER. *The same Flies that were taken in February.*

DECEMBER. Few Men angle with a Fly this Month, no more than they do in *January*; but yet, if the Weather be warm, as I have known it sometimes in my Life to be, even in this cold Country where it is least expected, then a *Brown*, that looks red in the Hand, and yellowish betwixt your Eye and the Sun, will both raise and kill in a clear Water, and free from *Snow-broth*. But, at best, is hardly worth a Man's Labour.

§ * §

And now, *Sir*, I have done with *Fly-fishing*, or angling at the Top, excepting once more to tell you, that of all these, and I have named you a great many very killing Flies, none are fit to be compared with the *Drake* and *Stone-fly*, both for many and very great Fish. And yet there are some Days that are by no Means proper for the Sport; and in a Calm, you shall not have near so much, even with *Dapping*, as in a whistling Gale of Wind; for two Reasons: both because you are not then so easily discovered by the Fish; and also, that there are but few Flies can then lie upon the Water; for where they have so much Choice, you may easily imagine they will not be so eager and forward to rise at a Bait, that both the Shadow of your Body, and of your Rod, nay of your very Line, in a hot calm Day, will, in spite of your best Caution, render suspected by them. But even then, in swift Streams, or by sitting down patiently behind a *Willow-bush*, you shall do more Execution, than almost at any other Time of the Year with any other Fly, though one may sometimes hit

of

of a Day when he shall come home very well satisfied with Sport, with several other Flies. But with these two, the *Green-drake* and the *Stone-fly*, I do verily believe I could, some Days in my Life, had I not been weary of Slaughter, have loaded a lusty Boy; and have sometimes, I do honestly assure you, given over upon the mere Account of the satiety of Sport; which will be no hard Matter to believe, when I likewise assure you, that, with this very Fly, I have, in this very River that runs by us, in three or four Hours, taken thirty, five-and-thirty and forty, of the best *Trouts* in it. What Shame and Pity is it then, that such a River should be destroyed by the basest Sort of People in those unlawful ways of Fire * and netting in the Night, and of Damming, Groping, Spearing, Hanging, and Hooking, by Day, which are now grown so common, that though we have very good Laws to punish such Offenders, every Rascal does it, for ought I see, with Impunity.

To conclude, I cannot now, in Honesty, but frankly tell you, that many of these Flies I have named, at least so made as we make them here, will peradventure do you no great Service in your southern Rivers; and will not conceal from you, but that I have sent Flies to several Friends in *London*, that, for ought I could ever learn, never did any great Feats with them; and therefore, if you intend to profit by my Instructions, you must come to angle with me here in the *Peak*. And so, if you please, let us walk up to Supper, and To-morrow, if the Day be windy, as our Days here commonly are, it is ten to one but we shall take a good Dish of Fish for Dinner.

CHAP.

* Page 113.

CHAP. IX.

A Morning Conference.

Pisc. A Good Day to you, Sir; I see you will always be stirring before me.

Via. Why, to tell to you the Truth, I am so allured with the Sport I had Yesterday, that I long to be at the River again; and, when I heard the Wind sing in my Chamber Window, could forbear no longer, but leap out of Bed, and had just made an End of dressing myself as you came in.

Pisc. Well, I am both glad you are so ready for the Day, and that the Day is so fit for you; and look you, I have made you three or four Flies this Morning; this Silver-twist Hackle, this Bear's Dun, this light Brown, and this dark Brown, any of which, I dare say, will do; but you may try them all, and see which does best—only I must ask your Pardon, that I cannot wait upon you this Morning; a little Business being fallen out, that, for two or three Hours, will deprive me of your Company; but I will come to call you home to Dinner, and my Man shall attend you.

Via. Oh! Sir, mind your Affairs by all Means—do but lend me a little of your Skill to these fine Flies; and, unless it have forsaken me since Yesterday, I shall find Luck of my own, I hope, to do something.

Pisc. The best Instruction I can give you is, that, seeing the Wind curls the Water, and blows the right Way, you would now angle up the still Deep to Day; for betwixt the Rocks where the Streams are, you would find it now too brisk; and besides, I would have you take Fish in *both Waters.*

Via.

Via. I'll obey your Directions, and ſo a good Morning to you—Come, young Man, let you and I walk together—But hark you, Sir, I have not done with you yet; I expect another Leſſon for angling *at the Bottom*, in the Afternoon.

Piſc. Well, Sir, I'll be ready for you.

CHAP. X.

The Succeſs at angling; with the Way of dreſſing a Trout *and* Grayling.

Piſc. OH! Sir, are you returned? You have but juſt prevented me. I was coming to call you.

Via. I am glad then I have ſaved you the Labour.

Piſc. And how have you ſped?

Via. You ſhall ſee that, Sir, preſently — look you, Sir, here are three Brace of *Trouts*, one of them, the bigeſt but one, that ever I killed with a Fly in my Life; and yet I loſt a bigger than that, with *my Fly* to Boot—and here are three *Graylings*, and one of them longer by ſome Inches than that I took Yeſterday; and yet I thought that a good one too.

Piſc. Why, you have made a pretty good Morning's Work on't; and now, Sir, what think you of our River *Dove?*

Via. I think it to be the beſt *Trout* River in *England*; and am ſo far in love with it, that if it were mine, and that I could keep it to myſelf, I would not exchange that Water for all the Land it runs over, to be totally debarred from it.

Piſc.

Pisc. That Compliment to the River, speaks you a true Lover of the *Art of Angling*: And now, Sir, to make Part of Amends for sending you so unscivilly out alone this Morning, I will myself dress you this Dish of Fish for your Dinner. Walk but into the Parlour, you will find one Book or other in the Window to entertain you the while, and you shall have it presently.

Via. Well, Sir, I obey you.

Pisc. Look you, Sir, have I not made Haste?

Via. Believe me, Sir, that you have, and it looks so well, I long to be at it.

Pisc. Fall too then – now, Sir, what say you? Am I a tolerable Cook, or no?

Via. So good a one, that I did never eat so good a Fish in my Life! This Fish is infinitely better than any I ever tasted of the Kind! 'Tis quite another Thing, than our *Trouts* about *London*.

Pisc. You would say so, if that *Trout* you ate of were in right Season: But, pray, eat of the *Grayling*, which, upon my Word, at this Time, is by much the better Fish.

Via. In earnest, and so it is! and I have one request to make to you, which is, that as you have taught me to catch *Trout* and *Grayling*, you will now teach me how to dress them as these are dress't, which, questionless, is of all other the best Way.

Pisc. That I will, Sir, with all my Heart, and am glad you like them so well, as to make that Request; and they are dress't thus:

Take your Trout, *wash and dry him with a clean Napkin, then open him, and having taken out his Guts, and all the Blood, wipe him very clean within, but*

but wash him not; and give him three Scotches with a Knife to the Bone on one Side only: *After which, take a clean Kettle, and put in it as much hard ſtale Beer (but it muſt not be dead) Vinegar, and a little White-wine and Water, as will cover the Fiſh you intend to boil; then throw into the Liquor a good Quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Lemon, a Handful of ſliced Horſe Radiſh root, with a handſome little Faggot of Roſemary, Thyme, and Winter Savoury. Then ſet your Kettle upon a quick Fire of Wood, and let your Liquor boil up to the Height before you put in your Fiſh; and, if there be many, put them in one by one, that they may not ſo cool the Liquor, as to make it fail; and while your Fiſh is boiling, beat up the Butter for your Sauce with a Ladleful or two of the Liquor it is boiling in; and, being boiled enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fiſh; and, being laid in a Diſh, pour your Butter upon it; and ſtrewing it plentifully over with ſhav'd Horſe Radiſh, and a little pounded Ginger, garniſh your Sides of your Diſh, and the Fiſh itſelf, with a ſliced Lemon or two, and ſerve it up.*

A *Grayling* is alſo to be dreſſed exactly after the ſame Manner, ſaving that he is to be ſcaled, which a *Trout* never is; and that muſt be done either with one's Nails, or very lightly and carefully with a Knife, for fear of bruiſing the Fiſh. And *note, That theſe Kinds of Fiſh, a* Trout *eſpecially*, if he *is not eaten within four or five Hours after he is taken, is worth nothing.*

But come, Sir, I ſee you have dined, and therefore, if you pleaſe, we will walk down again to the little *Fiſhing-houſe*, and there I will read you a Lecture of angling *at the Bottom.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Directions for angling at Bottom *for a* Trout, *&c.*

§ * §

Via. SO, Sir, now we are here, and set, let me have my Instructions for angling for *Trout* and *Grayling* at the Bottom; which, though not so easy, so cleanly, nor (as it is said) so genteel a Way of fishing, as with a Fly, is yet, if I mistake not, a good holding Way, and takes Fish when nothing else will.

Pisc. You are in the right, it does so; and a Worm is so sure a Bait at all Times, that, excepting in a Flood, I would I had laid a thousand Pounds that I had killed Fish, more or less, with it, Winter or Summer, every Day throughout the Year; those Days always excepted, that upon a more serious Account, always ought so to be. But not longer to delay you, I will begin, and tell you, that *angling at the Bottom* is also commonly of *two Sorts* (and yet there is a *third Way* of angling with a Ground-bait, and to a very great Effect too, as shall be said hereafter) namely,

By Hand, or *with a* Cork *or* Float.

That we call angling *by Hand* is of three Sorts. *The first* with a Line about half the Length of the Rod, a good weighty Plumb, and three Hairs next the Hook, which we call a Running-line, and with one large *Brandling*, or a *Dew-worm*, of a moderate Size, or two small ones of the first, or any other Sort, proper for a *Trout* (of which my Father *Walton* has already given you the Names, and saved me a Labour) or indeed almost *any Worm whatever*; for if a *Trout* be in the Humour to bite, it must be such a Worm as I never yet saw, that he

he will refuse; and, if you fish with *two* *, you are then to bait your Hook thus; *you are first to run the Point of your Hook in at the very Head of the first Worm, and so down through his Body, till it is past the Knot, and then let it out, and strip the Worm above the Arming, that you may not bruise it with your Fingers, till you have put on the other, by running the Point of the Hook in below the Knot, and upwards through his Body towards the Head, till it be but just covered with the Head; which being done, you are then to slip the first Worm down over the Arming again, till the Knots of both Worms meet together.*

The *second Way* of angling *by Hand*, and with a Running-line, is with a Line something longer than the former, and with Tackle made after this same manner. At the utmost Extremity of your Line, where the Hook is always placed in all other Ways of angling, you are to have a large Pistol or Carbine Bullet, into which the End of your Line is to be fastened, with a Peg or Pin, even and close with the Bullet; and about half a Foot above that, a Branch of Line, of two or three Handfuls long (or more for a swift Stream) with a Hook at the End thereof, baited with some of the fore-named Worms; and half a Foot above that, another armed and baited after the same Manner, but with another Sort of Worm, without any Lead at all above; by which Means, you will always certainly find the true Bottom in all Depths, which, with Plumbs upon your Line above, you can never do, but that your Bait must always drag whilst you are sounding (which, in this Way of angling, must be continually) by which Means you are like to have more

* The Way of baiting with *one* Worm, (See p. 81.) with *two* (a little different from this above) *in Note*, same Page.

more Trouble, and peradventure, worse Success. And both these Ways of angling at the Bottom, are most proper for a dark and muddy Water, by reason, that in such a Condition of the Stream, the Man may stand as near as he will, and neither his own Shadow, nor the roundness of his Tackle, will hinder his Sport.

The *third Way* of angling by Hand, with a Ground-bait, and by much the best of all other, is with a Line full as long, or a Yard and half longer than your Rod, with no more than one Hair next the Hook, and for two or three Lengths above it, and no more than one small Pellet of Shot for your Plumb: your Hook little, your Worms of the smaller *Brandlings*, very well scoured, and only one upon your Hook at a time, which is thus to be baited; *the Point of your Hook is to be put in at the very Tag of his Tail, and run up his Body quite over all the Arming, and still stript on, an Inch at least, upon the Hair, the Head and remaining Part hanging downward*; and with this Line and Hook thus baited, you are evermore to angle in the Streams, always in a clear, rather than a troubled Water, and always *up the River*; still casting out your Worm before you (with a light one-handed Rod) like an artificial Fly; where it will be taken, sometimes at the Top, or within a very little of the Superficies of the Water, and almost always before the light Plumb can sink it to the Bottom, both by Reason of the Stream, and also that you may always keep your Worm in Motion, by drawing still back towards you, as if you were angling with a Fly *; and, believe me, whoever will

* Col. *Venables* commends this Way of *Night-fishing for a Trout*, with *two great Garden Worms*, baited to hang at as even Lengths together as you can. *Exper. Angler*, p. 33.

will try it, shall find *this the best Way of all other to angle with a Worm*; in a bright Water especially: but then the Rod must be very light and pliant, and very true and finely made, which with a skilful Hand, will do Wonders; and, in a clear Stream, is undoubtedly the best way of angling for a *Trout* or *Grayling* with a Worm, by many Degrees, that any Man can make choice of, and of most Ease and Delight to the Angler. To which let me add, that if the Angler be of a Constitution that will suffer him to wade, and will slip into the Tail of a shallow Stream, to the Calf of the Leg, or the Knee, and so keep off the Bank, he shall almost take what Fish he pleases.

The *second Way* of angling at the Bottom, is with a *Cork* or *Float*, and that is also *of two Sorts*:

With a Worm; or, *with a Grub or Cadis*.

With a Worm, you are to have your Line within a Foot, or a Foot and half, as long as your Rod; in a dark Water with *two*, or, if you will with *three*, but, in a clear Water, never with above *one* Hair next the Hook, and *two* or *three* for four or five Lengths above it, and a Worm of what Size you please; your Plumbs fitted to your Cork, your Cork to the Condition of the River (that is, to the Swiftness and Slowness of it) and *both*, when the Water is very clear, as fine as you can, and then you are never to bait with above one of the lesser Sort of *Brandlings*; or, if they are very little ones indeed, you may then bait with two, after the Manner before directed. When you angle for a *Trout*, you are to do it as deep, that is, as near the Bottom as you can, provided your Bait do not drag; or, if it do, a *Trout* will sometimes take it in that Posture: If for a *Grayling*

Grayling, you are then to fish further from the Bottom, he being a Fish that usually swims nearer to the Middle of the Water, and lies always loose, or however, is more apt to rise than a *Trout*, and more inclined to rise, than to descend: Even to a Ground Bait.

With a *Grub* or *Cadis*, you are to angle with the same length of Line; or, if it be all out as long as your Rod, it is not the worse; with never of above one Hair for two or three Lengths next the Hook, and with the smallest Cork or Float, and the least Weight of Plumb you can, that will but sink, and that the Swiftness of your Stream will allow; which also you may help, and avoid the Violence of the Current, by angling in the Returns of a Stream, or the Eddies betwixt two Streams, which also are *the most likely Places wherein to kill a Fish in a Stream, either at the Top or Bottom.* Of *Grubs* for a *Grayling*, the *Ash-Grub*, which is plump, milk-white, bent round from Head to Tail, and exceeding tender, with a red Head; or the *Dock-worm* or Grub of a pale yellow: Longer, lanker, and tougher than the other, with Rows of Feet all down his Belly, and a red Head also, are the best, I say, for a *Grayling*; because, although a *Trout* will take both these (the *Ash-Grub* especially) yet he does not do it so freely as the other; and I have usually taken ten *Grayling* for one *Trout*, with *that* Bait; though, if a *Trout* come, I have observed, that he is commonly a very good one. These Baits we usually keep in Bran, in which an *Ash-Grub* commonly grows tougher, and will better endure baiting; though he is yet so tender, that it will be necessary to warp in a Piece of stiff Hair with your Arming, leaving it standing out about a Straw's Breadth at the Head of your Hook,

ſo as to keep the *Grub* either from ſlipping totally off when baited, or at leaſt down to the Point of the Hook, by which Means your Arming will be left wholly naked and bare: Which is neither ſo ſightly, nor ſo likely to be taken; though, to help that (which will however very often fall out) *I always arm the Hook I deſign for* this *Bait with the whiteſt Horſe-hair I can chuſe, which itſelf will reſemble and ſhine like that Bait*, and, conſequently, will do more Good, or leſs Harm, than an Arming of any other Colour. Theſe *Grubs* are to be baited thus; *the Hook is to be put in under the Head or Chaps of the Bait, and guided down the Middle of the Belly, without ſuffering it to peep out by the Way* (for then the *Aſh-Grub* eſpecially, will iſſue out Water and Milk, till nothing but the Skin ſhall remain, and the Bend of the Hook will appear black through it) *till the Point of your Hook come ſo low, that the Head of your Bait may reſt and ſtick upon the Hair that ſtands to hold it*, by which means it can neither ſlip off itſelf, neither will the Force of the Stream, nor quick pulling out, upon any Miſtake, ſtrip it off. Now the *Cadis*, or *Cod-bait* (which is a ſure killing Bait, and for the moſt Part, by much ſurer than any of the other) may be put upon the Hook, *two or three together*, and is ſometimes to very great Effect *joined to a Worm*, and ſometimes *to an artificial Fly*, to cover the Point of the Hook; but it is always to be angled with at the Bottom, when by itſelf eſpecially, with the fineſt Tackle, and is, for all Times of the Year, the moſt holding Bait of all other whatever, both for *Trout* * and *Grayling*.

There

* The beſt Way to angle with the *Cadis* is on the Top of the Water, with a Fly. It muſt ſtand *on the Shank* of the Hook, as the

There are several other Baits besides these few I have named to you, which also do very great Execution at the Bottom; and *some* that are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every Angler may, in his own Place, make his own Observation; and some others that I do not think fit to put you in mind of, because I would not corrupt you, and would have you (as in all things else I observe you to be a very honest Gentleman) *a fair Angler*. And so much for the *second Sort* of angling for a *Trout* at the Bottom.

Via. But, Sir, I beseech you give me Leave to ask you one Question: Is there no Art to be used to Worms, to make them allure the Fish, and, in a manner, compel them to bite at the Bait?

Pisc. Not that I know of; or did I know any such Secret, I would not use it myself, and therefore would not teach it you. Though, I will not deny to you, that, in my younger Days, I have made Trial of *Oil* of *Ospray*, *Oil* of *Ivy*, *Camphire*, *Assa-fœtida*, Juice of *Nettles*, and several other Devices that I was taught by several *Anglers* I met with, but could never find any Advantage by them, and can scarce believe there is any thing to be done that Way; though, I must tell you, I have seen some Men who I thought went to work no more artificially than I, and have yet, with the same kind of Worms I had, in my own Sight, taken

the *artificial Fly* (not come into the Bend, or the Fish will not value it; nor if you pull the *Blue-gut* out) and *thus* it is a most excellent Bait for a *Trout*. Where the River is not violently swift, you may place a very slender Lead on the *Shank* and draw the *Cad-bait* over it: raise it often from the Bottom, and so let it sink again. You may imitate the *Cad-bait*, making *the Head of black Silk, and the Body of yellow Wax, or of Shammy*. The *Trout* will not take the *Cadis* in muddy Waters, you must therefore *only use it* in *clear ones*, *Col. R. Venables Exper. Angler*, *p.* 29.

five, and sometimes ten for one. But we will let that Business alone, if you please; and because we have Time enough, and that I would deliver you from the Trouble of any more Lectures, I will, if you like, proceed to the last Way of angling for a *Trout* or *Grayling*, which is in the *Middle*, after which I shall have no more to trouble you with.

Via. 'Tis no Trouble, Sir, but the greatest Satisfaction that can be, and I attend you.

CHAP. XII.

Of Angling at Middle-water. *The Conclusion.*

Pisc. ANgling *in the Middle* then for a *Trout* or *Grayling* is of *two Sorts*;

With a *Penk* or *Minnow* for a *Trout*,
Or,
With a *Worm*, *Grub*, or *Cadis* for a *Grayling*.

For the first, it is with a *Minnow*, half a Foot, or a Foot, within the Superficies of the Water; and, as to the rest that concerns this Sort of angling, I shall wholly refer you to Mr. *Walton's* Direction *, who is undoubtedly the best Angler with a *Minnow* in *England*; only in plain Truth, I do not approve of those Baits he keeps in Salt †, unless where the living ones are not possibly to be had, though I know he frequently kills with them, and peradventure more than with any other; nay, I have seen him refuse a living one for one of them) and much less of his artificial one ‡; for though

* P. I. p. 82—3—4. † p. 83. ‡ *Ibid.*

though we do it with a counterfeit Fly, methinks it should hardly be expected, that a Man should deceive a *Fish* with a *counterfeit Fish*; which having said, I shall only add, and that out of my own Experience, that I do believe a *Bull-head*, with his Gill-fins cut off, at some Times of the Year especially, to be a much better Bait for a *Trout* than a *Minnow*, and a *Loach* much better than that; to prove which, I shall only tell you, that I have much oftener taken *Trouts* with a *Bull-head*, or a *Loach*, in their Throats (for there a *Trout* has questionless his first Digestion) than a *Minnow*; and that one Day especially, having angled a good Part of the Day with a *Minnow*, in as hopeful a Day, and as fit a Water as could be wished for that Purpose, without raising any one Fish, I at last fell to it with a *Worm*; and with that, took fourteen in a very short Space; amongst all which, there was not, to my Remembrance, so much as one that had not a *Loach* or two, and some of them three, four, five, and six *Loaches* in his Throat and Stomach; from whence I concluded, that had I angled with that Bait, I had made a notable Day's Work of it. But, after all there is a better Way of angling with a *Minnow*, than perhaps it is fit either to teach or to practice; to which I shall only add, that a *Grayling* will certainly rise at, and sometimes take a *Minnow*, though it will be hard to be believed by any one, who shall consider the Littleness of that Fishes Mouth, very unfit to take so great a Bait: But it is affirmed by many, that he will sometimes do it, and I myself know it to be true; for though I never took a *Grayling* so, yet a Man of mine once did, and within so few Paces of me, that I am as certain of it, as I can be of any thing I did

not

not see; and, which made it appear the more strange, the *Grayling* was not above eleven Inches long.

I must here also beg Leave of your Master and mine, not to controvert, but to tell him, that I cannot consent to his Way of throwing in his Rod to an overgrown *Trout* *, and afterwards recovering his Fish with his Tackle; for though I am satisfied he has sometimes done it, because he says so, yet I have found it quite otherwise; and though I have taken with the Angle, I may safely say, some thousands of *Trouts* in my Life, my Top never snapped (though my Line still continued fast to the remaining Part of my Rod, by some Lengths of Line curled round about my Top, and there fastened with waxed Silk, against such an Accident) nor my Hand never slacked nor slipped by any other Chance, but I almost always infallibly lost my Fish, whether great or little, though my Hook came home again. And I have often wondered how a *Trout* should so suddenly disengage himself from so great a Hook as *that* we bait with a *Minnow*, and so deep bearded as those Hooks commonly are, when I have seen, by the fore-named Accidents, or the slipping of a Knot in the upper Part of the Line, by sudden, and hard Striking, that though the Line has been immediately recovered, almost before it could be all drawn into the Water, the Fish was cleared, and gone in a Moment. And yet, to justify what he says, I have sometimes known a *Trout*, having carried away a whole Line, found dead three or four Days after, with the Hook fast sticking in him; but then it is to be supposed he had gorged it, which a *Trout* will do, if you be not too quick with him, when he comes at a *Minnow*;

* P. I. *p.* 110.

Minnow, as ſure, and much ſooner than a *Pike*; and I myſelf have alſo, once or twice in my Life, taken the ſame Fiſh, with my own Fly ſticking in his Chaps that he had taken from me the Day before, by the ſlipping of a Hook in the Arming; but, I am very confident, a *Trout* will not be troubled two Hours with any Hook that has ſo much as one Handful of Line left behind with it, or that is not ſtruck through a Bone, if it be in any Part of his Mouth only; nay, I do certainly know, that a *Trout*, as ſoon as ever he feels himſelf prick'd, if he carries away the Hook, goes immediately to the Bottom, and will there rout like a Hog upon the Gravel, till he either rub out, or break the Hook in the Middle. And ſo much for this firſt ſort of angling in the Middle for a *Trout*.

The *ſecond Way* of angling in the Middle is with a *Worm*, *Grub*, or *Cadis*, or any other Ground-bait for a *Grayling*; and that is with a Cork, and a Foot from the Bottom (a *Grayling* taking, is much better there than at the Bottom, as has been ſaid before) and this always in a clear Water, and with the fineſt Tackle.

To which we may alſo, and with very good Reaſon, add the *third Way* of angling *by Hand*, with a Ground bait, as a *third Way* of fiſhing in the Middle, which is common to both *Trout* and *Grayling*; and, as I ſaid before, the beſt Way of angling with a *Worm*, of all other I ever tried whatever.

And now, Sir, I have ſaid all, I can at preſent think of, concerning angling for a *Trout* and *Grayling*; and, I doubt not, have tired you ſufficiently; but I will give you no more Trouble of this Kind whilſt you ſtay, which, I hope, will be a good while longer.

Via. That will not be above a Day; but, if I live till *May* come Twelvemonth, you are sure of me again, either with my Master *Walton*, or (if I am to be so unhappy) without him; and, in the mean time, shall acquaint him, how much you have made of me for his Sake; and I hope he loves me well enough to thank you for it.

Pisc. I shall be glad, Sir, of your good Company at the Time you speak of, and shall be loth to part with you now; but when you tell me you *must go*, I will then wait upon you more Miles on your Way, than I have tempted you out of it, and shall heartily wish you a good Journey.

To my most HONOURED FRIEND,

CHARLES COTTON, Esq;

SIR

YOU now see I have returned you your very pleasant and useful Discourse *of the Art of* FLY-FISHING; printed just as it was sent me: for I have been so obedient to your Desires, as to endure all the Praises you have ventured to fix upon me in it. And, when I have thanked you for them, as the Effects of an undissembled Love, then let me tell you, Sir, that I will readily endeavour to live up to the Character you have given of me, if for no other Reason, yet for this alone, that *you* that love me so well, and always think what you speak, may not, for my Sake, suffer by a Mistake in your Judgment.

And

And, Sir, I have ventured to fill a Part of *your Margin*, by Way of Paraphrase, for the Reader's clearer understanding the Situation, both of your *Fishing-house*, and the Pleasantness of *that* you *dwell in*; and I have ventured also to give him a Copy of Verses *(these that follow)* that you were pleased to send me, *now* some years past, in which he may see a good Picture *of both:* and so much of your own Mind too as will make any *Reader*, that is blest with a generous Soul, to love you the better. I confess that for doing this you may justly judge me too bold; if you do, *I will say so too*, and so far commute for my Offence, that, though I be more than an hundred Miles from you, and *in the eighty third Year of my Age*, yet I will forget both, and next Month begin a Pilgrimage to beg your Pardon. For I would die in your Favour, and till then will live,

SIR,

Your most affectionate

Father and Friend,

London, April 29, 1676.

ISAAC WALTON.

THE

RETIREMENT.

Irregular Stanzas.

To *Mr.* ISAAC WALTON.

I.

FArewell thou busy World! and may
We never meet again:
Here *I can eat, and sleep, and pray,*
And do more Good in one short Day,
Than he, who his whole Age *outwears*
On the most throng'd, conspicuous Theatres,
Where nought but Vanity *and* Vice appears.

II.

Good Lord! *how sweet are all Things here*
How beautiful the Fields appear!
How cleanly do we feed and lie!
Lord! *what good, temperate Hours we keep!*
How quietly we sleep!
What Peace! what Unanimity!
How innocent from the lewd Fashion
Is all our Business, all our Recreation!

III.

Oh, how happy here's *our Leisure!*
Oh, how harmless all our Pleasure!

Oh,

Oh, ye Vallies, Meads, and Mountains!
Lonely Groves, and Chriſtal Fountains!
How I love at Liberty
By turns, to come and viſit ye!

IV.

Dear Solitude, *the Mind's beſt Friend,*
That Man acquainted with himſelf doſt make,
And, all his MAKER's *Wonders to intend,*
With thee, *I here converſe at will,*
And would be glad to do ſo ſtill,
For, it is thou *alone, that keep'ſt the Soul awake.*

V.

How calm, and quiet a Delight
Is it, alone
To read—and meditate—and write;
By none offended, and offending none?
To walk—ride—ſit—in unmoleſted Eaſe,
And, pleaſing guiltleſs SELF, *none other to diſpleaſe.*

VI.

Oh, my unequall'd Nymph, fair Dove!
Princeſs of Rivers, how I love
Upon thy flow'ry Banks to lie;
And view thy ſilver Stream,
When gilded by a Summer's Beam,
And in it *all thy wanton Fry*
Playing, at fearleſs Liberty:
And with my Angle *upon them,*
(The all of Treachery
I ever learn'd) induſtriouſly to try.

Such

VII.

Such Streams, Rome's *yellow* Tiber *cannot ſhow,*
Th' Iberian Tagus, *or Ligurian* Po;
The Mauſe, *the* Danube, *and the* Rhine,
Are puddled Waters all, compar'd with thine;
And Loire's *pure Streams, yet, too polluted are*
With thine, much purer, to compare;
The rapid Garrone, *and the winding* Seine,
Are both too mean,
Lov'd, beauteous Dove! *with thee*
To vie Priority;
Nay, Thame *and* Iſis, *when conjoin'd, ſubmit,*
And lay their Trophies at thy ſilver *Feet.*

VIII.

Oh, my lov'd Rocks! that ſtately riſe
To awe the Earth, and mate the Skies:
From ſome aſpiring Mountains Crown,
How dearly do I love,
Giddy with Pleaſure to look down —
And from the Vales, to view the noble Heights above!

IX.

Oh, my lov'd ſilent Caves! from Dog-ſtar's Heat,
And all Anxieties, my ſought Retreat:
What Safety, Privacy, what true Delight,
In the artificial Night
Your gloomy ſpacious Entrails make
Have I taken—do I take!
How oft, when Grief has made me fly
To hide me from Society,
Even off my deareſt Friends,—have I
In your Receſſes friendlier Shade,
All my Sorrows open laid:
And my moſt ſecret Woes, in Truſt, given to your Pri-
(vacy.
Liv'a

X.

Liv'd I, from Man unvex'd, alone —
What an over-happy *One*
Should I deem myſelf to be!
Might I in this deſart Place
(Which, in Opinion, moſt diſgrace)
Live but undiſturb'd and free!
Here *in this deſpis'd Receſs*
Would I, ſpite of Winter's *Cold,*
And the Summer's *worſt Exceſs,*
Try to live out to ſixty full-Years old!
And, all the while,
Without an envious Eye
Or any (thriving under Fortune's Smile)
Contented live, and then — contented die.

CHARLES COTTON.

End of the Second Part.

A SHORT

A SHORT DISCOURSE

By Way of

POSTSCRIPT,

Touching the LAWS that concern

ANGLING.

To Mr. WALTON.

My good Friend,

I CANNOT but tender my particular Thanks to you, for that you have been pleased by several Editions of your *Compleat Angler*, freely to dispense your dear-bought Experiences to all the Lovers of that Art; and have thereby so excellently vindicated the Legality thereof, as to divine Approbation, that, if I should go about to say more in that Behalf, it indeed were to *light a Candle to the Sun*: But since all Pleasures (though never so innocent themselves) lose that Stamp, when they are either pursued with inordinate Affections, or to the Prejudice of another, therefore as to the former, every Man ought to endeavour, through

through a ſerious Conſideration of the Vanity of worldly Contentments, to moderate his Affections thereunto, whereby they may be made of excellent Uſe, as ſome Poiſons, allayed, are in Phyſic: And, as to the latter, we are to have recourſe to the known Laws; Ignorance whereof excuſeth no Man, and by their Directions ſo ſquare our Actions, that we hurt no one, but keep cloſe to that golden Rule, *To do to all Men, as we would ourſelves be done unto.*

Now, concerning the *Art of Angling*, we may conclude, Sir, that as you have proved it to be of great Antiquity, ſo I find it favoured by the Laws of this Kingdom; for where Proviſion is made by our Statutes, *primo Eliz. cap.* 17. againſt taking Fiſh by Nets that be not of ſuch and ſuch a Size there ſet down, yet thoſe Law-makers had ſo much Reſpect to Anglers, as to except them, and leave them at Liberty to catch as big as they could, and as little as they would catch. And yet, though this apoſtolical Recreation be ſimply in itſelf lawful, yet no Man can go upon another Man's Ground to fiſh, without his Licence, but that he is a Treſpaſſer; but if a Man have Licence to enter into a Cloſe or Ground for ſuch a Space of Time, there, though he practiſe angling all that Time, he is not a Treſpaſſer, becauſe his fiſhing is no Abuſe of his Licence: But this is to be underſtood of running Streams, and not of Ponds or ſtanding Pools; for, in Caſe of a Pond or ſtanding Pool, the Owner thereof hath a Property in the Fiſh, and they are ſo far ſaid to be his, that he may have Treſpaſs for the Fiſh againſt any one that ſhall take them without his Licence, though it be upon a Common, or adjoining to the King's Highway, or adjoining to another Man's Ground, who gives Licence;

Licence; but, in case of a River, where one or more have *libera piscaria* *, *only* it is otherwise, for there the Fish are said to be *feræ naturæ* †, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Trespass, for that no Man is said to have a Property in them till he have caught them, and then it is a Trespass for any to take them from him: But this is not to be understood of Fish confined to a Man's own Ground by Grates or otherwise, so that they cannot pass away, but may be taken out or put in at Pleasure; for, in that Case, the Party hath a Property in them, as in the Case of a standing Pool.

But where any one hath *separalis piscaria*, as in *Child* and *Greenhill's* Case, in *Trin.* 15 *Car.* I. in the *King's Bench*, there it seemeth that the Fish may be said to be his, because no Man else may take them whilst they are within his several fishing; therefore what is meant by a several fishing is necessary to be considered; and though the Difference between a free fishing and a *several fishing* be often treated of in the antient Books of the Law, and some Opinions will have the Difference to be great, and others small, or nothing at all; yet the certainest Definition of a several fishing is, where one hath the Royalty, and owneth the Ground on each Side of the Water; which agreeth with Sir *W. Calthorp's* Case, *Mich.* 17. *E.* 4. 6. and *Pasc.* 18. *E.* 4. 4. where an Action was brought by him against another for fishing in his several fishing, *&c.* to which the Defendant pleaded, That the Place wherein the Trespass was supposed to be done, contained ten Perches of Land in Length, and twenty Perches in Breadth, which was his own Freehold, at the Time when the Trespass was sup-

* *Right of fishing, or what we name a* Free-Fishery. † Natural, or *free, common Game.*

good

posed to be done, and that he fished there, as was lawful for him to do; and this was adjudged a good Plea by the whole Court; and, upon Argument in that Case, it was agreed, that no Man could have a several fishing but in his own Soil, and that free fishing may be in the Soil of another Man; which was all agreed unto by *Littleton*, our famous *English* Lawyer. So that from all this may be drawn this short Conclusion, *That if the Angler take care that he offend not with his Feet, there is no great Danger of his Hands.*

But there are some covetous, rigid Persons, whose Souls hold no Sympathy with those of the innocent Anglers, having either got to be Lords of Royalties, or Owners of Lands adjoining to Rivers, do, by some apted, clownish Nature and Education, for the Purpose insult and domineer over the innocent Angler; beating him, breaking his Rod, or at least taking it from him, and sometimes imprisoning his Person, as if he were a Felon; whereas a true-bred Gentleman scorns those Spider-like Attempts, and will rather refresh a civil Stranger at his Table, than warn him from coming on his Ground upon so innocent an Occasion. It would therefore be considered, how far such furious Drivers are warranted by the Law, and what the Angler may, in case of such Violence, do in Defence of himself. If I come upon another Man's Ground without his Licence, or the Licence of the Law, I am a Trespasser, for which the Owner may have an Action of Trespass against me; and if I continue there after Warning to depart by the Owner, or his Servant thereunto authorized, the Owner, or his Servant, by his Command, may put me off by Force, but not beat me, but in case of Resistance by me, for then I, by resisting,

fisting, make the Assault; but if he beat me, I not resisting, in that case *he* makes the Assault, and I may beat him in Defence of myself, and to free myself from his Violence: And in case I shall leave my Rod behind in his Ground, he may take it *Damage Feasant*, but he can neither take it from my Person by Force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me: Which seems clear by the Case of *Reynell* and *Champernoon*, *Mich.* 7. *Car.* I. where *Reynell* brought an Action of Trespass against *Champernoon* for taking and cutting his Nets; the Defendant justified, for that he was seized in Fee of a *several fishing*, and that the Plaintiff, with others, endeavoured to row upon his Water, and with the Nets to catch his Fish, and that for the Safeguard of his fishing, he took and cut the Nets and Oars: To which Plea the Plaintiff demurred: And there it was adjudged by the whole Court, that he could not, by such Colour, cut the Nets and Oars: and Judgment was thereupon given for the Plaintiff.

Doubtless, our Fore-fathers well considered, that Man to Man was a Wolf, and therefore made good Laws to keep us from devouring one another; and, amongst the rest, a very good Statute was made in the three-and-fortieth Year of Queen *Elizabeth*, whereby it is provided, That, in personal Actions in the Courts at *Westminster*, being not for Land or Battery, when it shall appear to the Judges, and be so by them signified, that the Debt or Damages to be recovered amount not to the Sum of forty Shillings or above, the said Judges shall award to the Plaintiff no more costs than Damages, but less, at their Discretion.

And

And now, with my Acknowledgment of the Advantage I have had, both by your Friendſhip and your Book, I wiſh nothing may ever be that looks like an Alteration in the firſt, nor any thing in the laſt, but that, by Reaſon of the uſeful Pleaſure of it, you had called it the *Arcadia* of *Angling*, for it deſerves that Title; and I would deſerve the Continuance of your Friendſhip.

AN

AN

APPENDIX.

Which shews at one VIEW,

I. The proper *Rivers*. II. Particular *Haunts*. III. *Baits*. IV. Their *Seasons*; and *Hours* of Biting. V. General Directions, *&c. of every Kind of* Fish *that is to be angled for*: Alphabetically digested. With SHORT RULES concerning, I. The Tackle. II. Baits. III. Several Ways of Angling. IV. Weather proper and improper for the Sport.

BARBEL.

HIS RIVERS. The *Thames*, at *London*, *Kingston*, and *Chertsey* Bridges. *Sheperton* and *Walton* Deeps, *Hampton* Ferry, all the Locks between *Maidenhead* and *Oxford*; the Holes under *Cooper's-Hill*; *Moulsey*, *Esher*, *Byfleet* and *Weybridge* Rivers, *Surry*; the *Lea*, *Essex*, is famous for them; *Avon*, *Worcestershire*; and *Trent*. N. B. *They are never in Meers*, *Ponds*, *or standing Waters*.

HAUNTS. Generally the End of a gravelly Hole, now, among Weeds; under a Bank near the Shore; under Bridges; about Mill-tails, Piles, or the Aprons of Sluices and Weirs in clear swift Streams. In

Summer

Summer they lie on the ſwifteſt, ſhalloweſt Scowers. In *Winter* in the quieteſt Deeps. They never quit their Places of Reſidence (a Hole famous for them once is always ſo) and will flock together like Sheep.

BAITS. He is delicate, muſt always have them clean, ſweet and well ſcowered; yet he prefers a green, *viz.* unſcowered *Gentle*. His chief Bait is a well ſcowered *Lob-worm*; a Bit of *ruſty Bacon*: *Cheeſe*, laid a Day or two in a wet Cloth to make it tough, and in clarified Honey an Hour or two before it is uſed. *Paſte* made of Sheep's Blood and Suet, or of the latter and Cheeſe, choicely good in *Auguſt*, *Ground-bait* with Tallow-Chandler's *Greaves* cut in Pieces, thrown in over Night, or the Worms you angle with.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. He ſpawns in *April* (others ſay *Auguſt*) recovers preſently; bites from Sun-riſe till ten o'Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Sun-ſet, and all Night in Summer. Principal Months are *Auguſt*, *September* and *October* (eſpecially the Middle or latter End) if mild. They bite beſt in a Breeze of Wind.

GEN. DIREC. *The Rod and Line muſt be ſtrong, and of ſufficient Length; ſome uſe a little Bell at the Top of the Rod, to warn of a Bite. Fiſh always at Ground. You may uſe the Ledger and Running-line, and no Float. If not cloſe watched, he will ſuck off the Bait; play him ſome Time before you offer to land him.*

BLEAK.

IS almoſt in all RIVERS in great Plenty; very large ones in the *Thames*; *Lea*, *Eſſex*; and *Weybridge*, *Surrey*.

HAUNTS.

HAUNTS. Every Place, for he is continually roving.

BAITS. *Gentles*, (no Baits he likes better) under Water, or ſmall *Red-worms* (in the Winter chiefly) and *Houſe* or *Ant-flies* in Summer, at the Top and Middle; and all the Baits the *Roach* takes, only leſs.

Is in beſt SEASON in *Auguſt*; bites all Day: A little Bread well chewed, and ſcattered in looſely, will preſently draw Numbers about you; or in want of this, letting your Bait fall hard into the Water, for they are dauntleſs and greedy.

GEN. DIREC. *Fiſh with a Pater-noſter Line, whip with a Fly* (ſee Part I. p. 184, 185.) *you angle deeper for them in the* Thames, *than any other River.*

BREAM.

HIS RIVERS. The *Mole* in *Surry*, and the very beſt in *Byfleet* and *Weybridge* Rivers; about *Darking* Bridge, and upward; fifty Brace together have been ſeen at *Eſher* Bridge,—*Medway* in *Kent*; *Avon* in *Worceſterſh.* and very large in the *Nyne*, *Northamptonſh.* and *Ouſe*, *Bedfordſh.* in Plenty. They are alſo a very common *Pond* Fiſh, but very few are to be got within about twenty Miles of *London*.

HAUNTS. The quieteſt, broadeſt, and deepeſt Parts of Rivers; at the End of a Current; on a Sandy or loomy Bottom: His delightful Harbour is the *Water-dock*. Where the Stream is rougheſt, and Waves run higheſt; and keeps neareſt the Middle.

BAITS. Is vaſtly fond of a *Dock-worm*, found at the Roots of that Plant, or Ruſhes; and, the beſt

of

of all, the biggeſt *Red-worm* you can get; ſome ſay the ſmalleſt *Dew* or *Lob-worm*, well ſcoured. Several *Flies* (takes under Water) that are found on Flags, by the River's Side; *Green Flies*, *Butter-flies*. In *June* and *July* the *Graſhopper*, with his Legs off. *Gentles*, the young Brood of *Waſps*, or *Sheep's Blood*, dried ſlowly on a Tile at the Fire. *Paſtes* of brown Bread and Honey. *Ground-bait* with *Red-worms* or *Barley-male* (P.I.*p.*153—4—5.)

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting.* They ſpawn about *Midſummer*, juſt with the *Tench*. May be angled for from the Beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*; but the beſt Time is, from the Beginning of the laſt Week in *July*, to the laſt in *Auguſt*. His *Hours of Biting*, are from four till eight in the Morning, and the ſame again in the Evening, or later; and, in gloomy, windy Weather, all Day. You cannot be too early nor late.

GEN. DIREC. *Be ſure you keep very ſtill and out of ſight. Uſe a long Rod and ſtrong Line. Give him time to bite, ſtrike gently, and fiſh always near the Bottom.* See Directions from P.I.*p.* 152, with the Notes, to *p.* 158.

BULL-HEAD; *or* MILLER'S-THUMB.

IS to be found in moſt clear gravelly *Rivers* and *Brooks*.

HAUNTS. Are under Stones, or in Holes; where he will hide himſelf; and be eaſily ſeen in hot Weather, lying on any flat Pebble ſunning himſelf.

BAIT. A ſmall *Red-worm*.

His SEASONS being in *April* (when he ſpawns, and in ſeveral Months in Summer) and *will bite any Time of the Day*, and ſo boldly, that if there are

are never so many in a Place, the most silly Angler may take them all.

CARP.

HIS Rivers. *Byfleet* and *Weybridge*, *Surry*; the last has *Carps* of eight or nine Pounds Weight; the *Arun* and *Rother*, in *Sussex*; *Ouse*, *Nyne*, the Waters in the *Fens* (*Lincolnsh.*) called *Drains*; all the Rivers which run into the Sea near *Harwich*, some say in the *Sea* itself, about the *Isle of Man*; *Lea*, *Essex*. I have seen a *Carp* of eighteen Inches taken against *Canbury House*. *Wandsworth* River: and the *Thames*, in *Mortlack* Deeps, and the Sides of the *Eights* against *Brentford*, *Isleworth*, and *Twickenham*; but is more chiefly a Pond Fish.

HAUNTS. Any still, dead Pit or Hole, just in the Middle in a Current—The Turnings of Streams, and deepest Water, where there is least Motion, with a Bottom of hard or bluish Clay; under Trees shading the Bank, and among fresh-grown Weeds, which he quits when old and black; if you cut the Weeds they will forsake the Place. In standing Waters, they are, most, in deep Marl-pits. N. B. *They will not come near a Boat in Pond or River.*

BAITS. In *March*, *Red-worms*, or rather the bluish *Marsh-worm*, or any other not too big; or a green *Gentle* may do as well. In *June*, *Cadews*: *July*, *August* and *September*, a *Grashopper*. Modern Anglers say, a *green par-boil'd Pea* is his choicest Bait; a Quantity may be kept ready for Use, by covering them with melted Butter. Sweet Pastes of all Kinds, made with *Honey*; *Gentles*, with a Bit of Scarlet-cloth on the Hook, soaked in

Oil of *Peter*. See *p.* 149. A *Lob-worm*, uſed as a Fly, on the Top of the Water, or about eight Inches under. See the Note, *p.* 148. *Ground-bait* with dried Blood, Grains, boiled Malt, Garbage, or the Baits you angle with.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting.* They ſpawn ſeveral Times, ſome ſay ſix in a Year, particularly *May* and *Auguſt*, and are then out of Seaſon. Are in higheſt Requeſt in *April*, others ſay *March*. In the hot Months you can never fiſh for them too early, or too late, and ſometimes they will bite all Night in the ſtill Part of the Water. The 10th of *April* it is ſaid is a fatal Day (*p.* 148.)

GEN. DIREC. *Always fiſh fine and ſtrong, uſe a Swan Quill Float, and you muſt be watchful; move your Rod as little as poſſible, and be ſure keep out of Sight, or all your labour is loſt. Keep him from running to his Hold in the Weeds, yet give him play enough before you offer to land him; in which uſe a ſmall Hand Net. In very thick, clayiſh Water, you may let your Worm fall gently in Shallows near the Sides without a Float, and he will readily take it, imagining it to be crawling out of the Bank.*

CHUB, CHEVEN, *or* CHEVANDER.

HIS RIVERS. *Nyne*, *Welland*, *Ouſe*, *Trent*, and moſt throughout *England*; but near *London*, the chief are *Coln*, and the *New River*, *Middleſex*; *Lewiſham* River, *Kent*; *Moulſey*, *Eſher*, *Cobham and Byfleet* Rivers, *Surry*; *Lea* particularly: and *Roddon* by *Woodford*, and *Ilford*, *Eſſex*.

HAUNTS. Loves large Rivers, in quick deep Streams, chiefly under the Shades of Trees or Bridges, on gravelly, or, in muddy Rivers, on Sands or Clays; or where Cattle come to dung in Fords,

Fords, in hot Weather. They generally swim in Droves, and keep to one Residence, like the *Barbel*. *N.B.* A *Chub-Hole* is always *so*.

BAITS. *Worms* chiefly in *March* or *April*. In the hot Months, *Cherries*, any Kind of soft *Berries* or *Flies*; his Favourite is the *Owl-fly*, or great *Moth*, found in Summer Evenings in Gardens; a great Head, whitish Wings, and yellowish Body. No Bait exceeds the *Minnow* in Summer, in a deep and strong Stream, if a Breeze blows. A Bit of soft *Cheese*, *Gentles*, *Beetles*, without the Legs and Wings. *Snails* (very early in the Morning) the black one, or *Slug*, with his Belly slit, to shew the white. Above all, a *Grashopper* at the *Top* of a swift Stream, and the young *Humble Bee*, found in long Grass, at the *Bottom*: A *Lob-worm* in a sharp Stream, used early, has had vast Success. A *Roach* cut in Bits, or his own Kind, used as Baits; or a young *Eel*, as thick as a Straw. In *August*, and the cooler Months, yellow *Paste*, of strongest Cheese pounded, a little Butter, and as much Saffron as will dye it Lemon-colour; boiled *Malt*, *p.* 203, or *Wheat*, *p.* 206. In Winter you may use the Ledger-bait, *Paste* of *Cheese* and *Turpentine*, the *Earth-Grub* (*p.* 201) *Ox Brains*, or the *Pith* down his Back-bone; fat *Bacon*. He loves always a large Bait, and two or three Kinds on the Hook together.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. They spawn in *March*, others say *May*; is in Prime from *Mid-May* till *Candlemas*, but best in Winter. Bites in Summer from Sun-rise till nine in the Morning, and from three in the Afternoon till Sun-set, especially if there be a gentle Breeze stirring.

GEN. DIREC. *Float down a River in a Pont or Boat, about seven in a Summer's Evening, and angle under the Trees or Willows at Top-Water,*

with a Bee, Moth, *or* Fly; they will riſe as faſt as you can throw in. *Uſe ſtrong Tackle, keep out of Sight, for they are very fearful. Play him when ſtruck, and uſe a Landing-Net. In warm Weather fiſh at Mid-water and Top* (ſee Method, *p.* 47, with the Note) *in colder, angle lower; and in very cold, at Ground.* This Rule is infallible.

DACE.

HIS RIVERS. The ſame with the *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Gudgeon*, and is found in moſt of the Kingdom. In the *Thames*, *Lea*, in all the *Surry* Rivers, and the *Roddon*, about *Barking* in *Eſſex*, they are very large.

HAUNTS. A gravelly Bottom, in the deepeſt and ſhadieſt Parts of the River, under a hanging Bank, and the dark of a ſpreading Willow or Alder, and on the ſhalloweſt Scowers in hot Weather. The Eddy between two Mill-ſtreams, or the Piles of Weirs and Bridges, or under the Leaves of Water-dock, and generally lies near the Top of the Water.

BAITS. Small *Red-worms*, and in *April*, *Cadews*; all *Worms* bred on Plants or Trees, eſpecially the *Oak-worm*, at Top-water, like the *Fly*: boiled Wheat, *Sheep's* Blood dried, cut in the Bigneſs of Baits. Paſtes; *Earth Grub* and *Gentles* in Winter, and the *Ant*, *Houſe* and *Fleſh-flies* in Summer. *Ground-bait*, in Bottom-fiſhing, with *Bread* and *Bran* mixed.

SEASONS, *and Hours of Biting.* They ſpawn *February* and *March*, and are good in *April* and *May*, but beſt in *September*; bite all Day long in Summer, but beſt Morning and Evening, and in the latter, pretty late.

GEN.

GEN. DIREC. *Very full and particular may be seen in the Notes*, p. 179, *to* 201.

EEL.

HIS RIVERS. The *Thames* abounds with them, and the Rivers running into it about *London*; *Lea*, in *Eſſex*, produces as fine ones of the ſilver Kind as any whatever; *Ouſe*, *Bedfordſhire* many, and very large; all the Rivers of *Cambridgeſhire*; *Rumſey-Meer*, *Huntingdon*; *Severn*, *Worceſter*; *Stower*, *Dorſet*; *Ankham*, *Lincolnſhire*, are all very famous; and the *Irk*, *Lancaſhire*, has the fineſt, it is ſaid, in *England*. Mr. *Pope* celebrates the *Kennet*, *Berkſhire*,

The Kennet *ſwift for Silver* Eels *renown'd.*

HAUNTS. In foul and muddy Bottoms, and the ſtilleſt Waters: In Day they hide in Holes near the Banks, among Weeds, under Roots of Trees, Stones, Planks of Flood-gates, Mills, and the Bottoms of Sluices; but the ſmaller ones are found in all Sorts of Rivers and Soils.

BAITS. *Lob-worms*, a *Frog*, a *Minnow*, ſmall *Gudgeon*, *Chickens* Guts, one of *their own Kind*, cut in Pieces; but their choiceſt Baits are, a Bit of powdered Beef; and, above all, a very little *Lamprey*, called a *Pride*.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. Are always in Seaſon, but *beſt* in *Winter*, and *worſt* in *May*. They bite beſt in a Shower, after a Thunder-ſtorm, and in windy, gloomy Weather.

GEN. DIREC. *In dry hot Weather, when the Waters are low, practice* Sniggling (ſee the Note, p. 172.) *or* Bobbing (ſee Note, *p.* 173) *in Rivers*

that have Tides, during Ebb. Or lay Night-hooks *(p. 172.) baited with small* Roaches; *the Hook must lie in the Mouth of the Fish, as for* Pike. *The best Way of angling for them with the Rod, is with a* Ledger-bait, *(p. 133, &c.) or on the* Grabble, *which is sinking the Line by a small running Bullet at Bottom, that the Hook-link play in the Water (p. 153 in Note.) These three Ways may be practised in any likely Place while the Angler is amusing himself in other fishing; and often, besides* Eels, Pike *and* Pearch *are thus taken.*

FLOUNDER, FLUKE, *or* BUT.

HIS RIVERS. Are those which have Communication with the Tides; but he will wander very far up them. There are very fine ones taken in the *Thames*, near *London*, and in the Mouths of the *Roddon* and *Lea*, *Essex*; *Wandell*, *Moulsey*, *Esher*, *Weybridge*, and *Byfleet* Rivers, *Surry*; in which last they are very large.

HAUNTS. The Sides of Sand-banks, or on Gravel, especially if there be a deep Declivity: The Tail of Mill Streams, or at the End of a Stream, in a deep Place. They never lie on any Bottom where there is Mud.

BAITS. *Gentles*, *Wasps*, but best of all a small *Red-worm*, or a little bluish *Marsh-worm*. *Ground-bait* with a Handful of the same cut in Pieces.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. They spawn from the End of *June* to the Middle of *July*, when they are at worst, but are in Season all the rest of the Year. From *April* to *August* he bites all Day long, but best *early*.

GEN DIREC. *The usual Way of fishing is to lie upon the* Grabble (see the Way of this in the Gen.

Gen. Direc. for the *Eel*). *If you use a* Float, *let it lie flat on the Surface, and, when it moves along slowly, and presently stands upright, then strike; but take Leisure, for he is some time in sucking in the Bait. Let your Hook be exceeding small.*

GRAYLING, *or* UMBER.

HIS RIVERS are very few. The chief is the *Dove, Derbyshire*, though he is in the *Lug, Herefordshire, Derwent, Yorkshire, Hodder* and *Trent, Staffordshire, Avon. Wiltshire*, and perhaps no other in *England*.

HAUNTS. The same with the *Trout*, but that he loves to lie in the sharpest and swiftest Streams, and is generally found nearer the Mid-water than the Bottom.

BAITS. He takes *all the* Trout *does*, but seldom the *Minnow*. His Flies must be small; and, under Water, an *Ash-grub, Dock-worm, Wheat* or *Malt* boiled, or a small *Red-worm*, are the best of any.

SEASONS *and Hours of biting*. They spawn in *May*, and are in highest Perfection in *December*. At that Time, in a mild sun-shiny Day, they bite best for two Hours about Noon. In Summer, his Hours and Weather for biting, are the same with the *Trout*.

GEN. DIREC. *Your Tackle should be somewhat finer than for a* Trout. *Your Hook whipped to* Silk-worm *Gut well waxed with* Virgin's Wax. *Fish at least six or nine Inches from the Bottom, for he is apter to rise than descend. Keep concealed as much as may be, for he is the quickest sighted, and tastliest scared of any Fish; and be gentle with him when struck, or he is so tender mouthed, he will break his Hold; yet he is so simple he will return several*

times to your Bait, and sometimes leap out of the Water after it.

GUDGEON.

HIS RIVERS. The *Thames*, above Bridge. *Teddington* Banks are remarkable; at *Sunbury*, *Sheperton*, *Windsor*, and especially *Marlow*. In the *New River* are vast Plenty; and in *Byfleet*, *Surry*; *Uxbridge* River breeds them very large, and the *Trent*, particularly near its Head; but there are none finer than in the *Lea*, *Essex*.

HAUNTS. The cleareſt, ſandy or gravelly Bottoms, and moderately ſharp Streams, where they lie in Shoals on the Shallows in Summer, but get deeper about Autumn; under any Bridge or Plank in ſmall Rivers, for they are fond of Shade.

BAITS. *Gentle*, *Paſte*, *Cadis*, *Waſps*; but the beſt is a ſmall well-ſcowered *Red-worm*, or the *Blood-worm*, found in the Mud of Cow-ponds near *London*. This Fiſh never riſes at Flies, nor takes them under.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. They ſpawn in the End of *April*, and in *November*. He bites all Day, from *March* to *October*, an Hour after Sunriſe, and till before Sun-ſet.

GEN. DIREC. *Fiſh always at Ground; uſe a ſmall Float, but better, fiſhing by Hand, with the* Running-line, *You ſhould rake the Ground with a Pole between Whiles, or, in want of one, throw in Earth by Handfuls, or Crumbs of Bread chewed ſmall. Be not too quick to ſtrike, becauſe they will often nible the Bait before they ſwallow it, but will take it ſure. Let your Hook and Baits be ſmall, and fiſh fine. You need not be careful about their ſeeing you, for they are not in the leaſt ſhy,*

but

but so undaunted, that, for Conveniency, you may stand up to the Mid-leg in Water, and catch them close to your very Feet, and this (if you can bear it) I have found the best Way.

LOACH.

HIS RIVERS. He is not usually found in these, but in little, clear, swift *Brooks* or *Rills*, in the sharpest Streams.

HAUNTS. The Gravel, and under Stones, and always lies at Bottom.

BAITS. A small *Red-worm*, or the *Gilt-tail*. He spawns in *April*, but is always in Season, and may be fished for at any Hour. Your *Hook* must be the smallest Size, of what is called a *Louse-Hook*.

MINNOW, *or* PENK.

HIS RIVERS. All where the *Trout* breeds, and some others.

HAUNTS. Least in deep Places, but in shallow and swift.

BAITS. A smallest Worm, or Bit, enough just to cover the Point of the Hook. They spawn in *April*, and bite at Bottom or Mid-water all Day, if it is clear, but never in dark windy Weather, or in the Night, when the *Trout* is most ravenous for Prey. Use a Float in fishing for him.

MULLET.

HIS RIVERS. Those in the *South* of *England*, near the Sea; chiefly at *Arundel* and *Chichester*,

ter, in *Suſſex*; the *Corniſh* Rivers; *Axe*, *Devonſhire* and at *Poole*, *Dorſetſhire*. It is not known whether they are in Ponds.

HAUNTS. The ſame with the *Flounder*, they come and return with the Tide.

BAITS. *Red-worms* of all Sorts, *Waſps*, *Gentles*, and at Top, all the Flies that the *Trout* takes, but the artificial ones muſt be ſomewhat larger than for the *Trout*. Alſo a *Lob* or *Marſh worm* within two Foot of the Bottom.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. Are in Seaſon from *May* to *September*; they bite every Tide, ſometimes better at Ebb, at other Times during Flood, and that very freely.

GEN. DIREC. He is ſhy, wary and ſtrong, therefore *you muſt angle cautiouſly, and be provided with Tackle accordingly*.

PEARCH.

HIS RIVERS. *Thames*, at *Iſleworth*, and about the *Eights*, and from *Windſor* upwards; *Mole* in *Surry*, and *Byfleet* has them of eighteen Inches long; and the *Colne*, below *Colnbrook*, very famous; *Roddon* and *Lea*, *Eſſex*; *Charwell*, *Oxfordſhire*, *Avon*, *Warwickſhire*; *Ouſe*, *Bucks*, below *Nuport*, abounds in them; *Nyne*, *Northamptonſhire*; are in moſt Rivers. He is alſo a Pond Fiſh.

HAUNTS. A gravelly Scower, chiefly in any Eddy or Turning of the Water, where the Stream is gentle, and of a tolerable Depth, or in the Holes of Pits, and near any hollow Bank, Piles of Bridges, or the Roots and Stumps of Trees, but he commonly roves in the Day in ſearch of Spoil.

BAITS.

BAITS. They will take almoſt any thing except a *Fly*; *Roach* or *Dace* cut in Pieces; *Bobs*, *Gentles*, *Paſtes*, are all good; but better the *Minnow*, ſmall *Frog*, and *Lob-worm*, or *Red-worm*, well ſcoured. Uſe of *Worms* at Bottom, the *Red-worm* in *March*; the *Oak-worm*, a young *Frog*, or a *Red-ſnail* in *April*; *Dock-worms*, or what breeds on the *Oſier*, *Oak* or *Hawthorn* Leaves, in *May*; the *Red-worm*, with the Head nipt off, and a *Cadis* or a *Dor*, put on before it, in *June*; a large *Graſhopper*, or *Earth-grub*, in *July*; and *Red-worms*, or *Brandlings*, in *Auguſt*, and all the Months after. Your Worm rubb'd with Fat of a Water-rat is excellent. *Ground-bait* with *Lob-worms* cut in Pieces.

SEASONS, *and hours of biting*. They ſpawn but once a Year, about *February* or *March*. In Summer they bite all Day long, if it is cool, and Weather gloomy and windy; yet his principal Times are from ſeven till ten in the Forenoon, and in the Afternoon from two to ſix, and in the hot Days later. He bites very little in Winter, unleſs in a warm Day, and about the Middle of it.

GEN. DIREC. *Be ſure give them Time in biting (you can ſcarce give them too much, unleſs they be ſmall ones) eſpecially when you fiſh with a* Minnow, *or ſmall* Frog. *The* Minnow *muſt have the Hook put through his back Fin, or his under Lip; the* Frog, *through the upper Part of his Skin of his Leg, and you fiſh with thoſe at Mid-water, or a little lower: Your Float muſt be pretty large. Some, when they uſe* Worms, *let the Bait touch the Bottom, but about ſix Inches from it is more generally approved of. If you find a Hole of them, you may catch them all; but take care not to drop one off your Hook, for then all is over for that Time* there;

but you will meet with them again in an Hour or two. Whip your Hook to a small Wire when you fish with a Minnow, *for Fear of a* Pike; *and use the Instrument in disengaging your Hook, mentioned in Notes*, p. 163.

PIKE, LUCE, PICKERELL, *or* JACK.

HIS RIVERS. *Perrat* and *Ivel*, *Somerset*, have the largest, fattest, and most in the Kingdom. *Ouse* in Plenty. The long Drain from *Peterborough* to *Wisbich*, and through all the Fens, and most of the Rivers of *Suffolk*; *Nyne*, *Northamptonshire*; *Ilford*, *Lea*, and most of the *Essex* Rivers, and those of *Dorsetshire*, they avoid brackish Rivers, and that are near the Sea. Are also a Lake or Pond Fish.

HAUNTS. An unfrequented Place, that is quiet and shady, among *Rushes*, *Water docks*, *Weeds*, and *Bushes*, on a sandy, chalk or clay Bottom; all Pits; is very fond of such a Situation; or retired Corner in a River, when any Brook, Ditch, or Spring runs into it. They get upon the clear gravelly Shallows from *May* to *September*, and then retire deeper.

BAITS. All Sorts but a *Fly*. The princial are, large *Gudgeons*, small *Roach* or *Dace*, the two last are his favourite ones; large *Minnows*, *Loaches*, *Bull-heads*, and *Bleak*; small *Gregs*, or a Bit of an *Eel*, are a tempting Morsel, as is a Pigeon's Craw, scoured; your *Fish-baits* must be very fresh and sweet. In *July*, young *Frogs*; the yellowest are best: Some use fat *Bacon* in the Winter Months. Your Bait rubbed with *Mole's* Fat is excellent.

SEASONS,

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting.* They ſpawn about the End of *February*, or in *March*, and may be fiſhed for, ſix Weeks after, all the Year through. Their biting Time is early and late from *April* to *July*, three in the Afternoon from *July* to *September*: and, the Winter Months, he bites all Day long, but ſeldom in the Night at any Time. You have beſt Sport in clear Water, and a Gale of Wind, on a dark cloudy Day, and (in muddy Rivers only) after a Flood, when the Water is growing clear. In hot, bright, ſultry Weather, when he lies *ſunning* at the Top, he bites not at all; nor in dark, rainy Weather, nor in *White-water*, *viz.* diſcoloured in the Swellings of Land Floods.

GEN. DIREC.. *Give him Time to pouch the Bait, and ſtrike always directly upright. You may uſe either the* Ledger *(p. 133) or a* Walking-bait; *viz. a Rod carried in your Hand; or angle with a dead-bait (annointed as is directed p. 139.) Let your Rod be always of the largeſt, and uſe ſtrong Tackle, with Gimp or Braſs Wire next your Hook. Put the Hook in the Mouth of your* Bait-fiſh, *and never let it lie ſtill, but keep it moving up and down, nor ſink it above half a Yard under Water. Do not ſtrike when he runs away with it, but let him have Line, and go his own Time; when he returns, and goes off again, then ſtrike briskly, but not too hard, and you are ſure of him. He is taken alſo by the* Trowl, *(ſee Note p. 134) the* Snap *(p. 139 in Note) and* Snareing, See Gen. Direc. in *Tench*, Append.

POPE, *or* RUFE.

HIS RIVERS. *Yare*, in *Norfolk*, is the moſt famous; yet he is in many of the large Rivers. *Thames*

Thames (about *Shepperton*, *Weybridge*, *Chertſey* and *Stains*) *Ouze*; *Cam*; *Iſis*; *Sow*, *Staffordſhire*; the *Thame*, running into *Trent*; *Mole* and *Wey*, *Surry*.

HAUNTS. A deep gentle Stream covered with Trees, where there is Sand or Gravel; they always flock in Shoals together. They ſpawn in *April*, will bite almoſt at any thing, *Gentles*, *Cadis*, and even, greedily, at a *Minnow* as big as themſelves; but a *Brandling* or *Red-worm* has the Preference. Earth thrown in by Handfuls is an excellent *Ground-bait*; uſe then a Paternoſter-line, and you will catch them from Top to Bottom, and as long as there is one Fiſh left in the Hole.

ROACH, *or* RUD.

HIS RIVERS. The very ſame with the *Dace*; is in almoſt *all*; the *Thames*, and the *Lea*, are the principal; but they grow largeſt in Ponds. *Rud*, or broad *Roach*, and of a finer Kind, are in the Lakes near *Lincoln*, and thoſe about *Holderneſs*, *Yorkſhire*; and the Rivers, *Yare*, *Norfolk*; *Cherwell*, *Oxfordſhire*; *Roddan*, *Eſſex*; above *Iſford*; *Ouſe*, *Bedfordſhire*, has very many and large.

His HAUNTS. Gentle ſhallow Streams, where is Sand or Gravel, with here and there deeper Holes at the Ends of Scowers, *viz.* (ſharp ſhallow Parts that run over Gravel) where they uſually lie; eſpecially againſt the Mouth of a ſmall Brook or River emptying into a larger. The *Rud* feeds nearer the Top. In *June* and *July*, a very big Sort haunt about *London-Bridge*, and no other Months. The Bait is a *Perriwinkle* taken whole from the Shell; in want of it uſe a *white Snail*. The

End

End of *Auguſt* ſome count the prime Seaſon in fiſhing higher upwards.

BAITS. All that the *Dace* takes, and thoſe for the *Chub*, except that the *Flies* muſt be uſed under Water; he will riſe in hot Weather at a *May* or *Ant-fly*, uſed one particular Way (ſee *p.* 199.) Uſe *Paſte* or *Gentles* in Winter; *Worms* or *Cadis* in *April*; in the very hot Months, a *Shrimp*, the little *white Snail*, or *Flies* (as above mentioned) and a *Red-worm* in any windy Weather. Always uſe Ground-bait, as for the *Dace*.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. Spawns in Middle of *May*, and may be fiſhed for ſix Weeks after. Bites all Day long. The Rowe is dainty Meat.

GEN DIREC. *For* Thames, *Bottom and Stern-fiſhing (ſee the Notes, p.* 197—8.) Rud *may be fiſhed for as the* Dace; *at Top-water, with a* Fly; *or a* Red-worm *a little under. The* Rud *is very ſtrong, ſtruggles hard, and requires ſuitable Tackle, and Time in Landing.*

SALMON.

HIS RIVERS. The ſix Summer Months, all thoſe that communicate with the Sea. The beſt *Salmon* are in *Thames*, but they are few, he loving rather the colder Northern Rivers; of thoſe, *Tweed* and *Tyne* have the greateſt Plenty, and *Tamer*, in *Cornwall*, of the Weſtern Coaſt; even as to occaſion a Diſtich;

Cornwall, *from* England, Tamer's *Streams divide*,
Whence with fat Salmon, *all the Land's ſupply'd.*

Lone in *Lancaſhire* abounds with them. They are in almoſt all Rivers in the Kingdom, except thoſe on

on the Coasts of *Suffolk*, *Essex*, and *Sussex*. The *Wye* and *Usk*, *Monmouthshire*; and the *Ex*, *Devon*, contrary to all others, have the *Salmon* in Season the six Winter Months. *Salmon-Peal* are in the Rivers of *Dorset*, *Devon* and *Yorkshire*. These last never grow above sixteen Inches.

HAUNTS. The clearest Waters, nearest the Spring-heads in Summer; the deepest Part of a rapid Stream, in the Middle; and near the Ground: On pebble, chalk, or gravelly Bottoms. *Salmon-Peal* chuse deep Holes, near the Bank, under the Root of a Tree.

BAITS. He loves a large one. All those the *Trout* takes, especially a large *Lob-worm*, or two, exceeding well scowered in Moss sixteen, twenty Days, or longer, with the Unguents recommended *Pages* 125-6, and in the Notes. He is not so fond of a *Minnow*, nor of a *Fly*, as the *Trout*; of *Flies*, the live one succeeds best, several on one Hook. Your *artificial Sort* must be large, and of flaring gaudiest Colours, the Bodies made with gold and silver Threads, and with four, or it is better, of six Wings, made standing, one before another, (sold at the Shops) and both these and the Tail must be long. A raw *Cockle* or *Muscle*, taken out of the Shell, are recommended, or a *Prawn*. The Way in this is to drop your Line, with no Shot on it, in a Shallow, by the Edge of any deep Hole, and let the Stream carry it in. They are very nice and whimsical in the changing their Baits. For *Salmon-Peal*, the best Bait is a well scowered *Brandling*, bred in *Tanner's-bark*. They will rise at any *Trout-fly*.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. He bites from the Middle of *April* to *August*, about nine in the Forenoon, and three in the Afternoon, in a sunshiny

shiny Day that is rough and windy, especially if it blows against the Stream. *Salmon-Peal*, Morning and Evening, all the Summer long.

GEN. DIREC. *Fish five times as strong as for a* Trout. *If one leaps out of the Water, before there is a deep Hole. If you cannot reach it with your* Fly-rod, *use the* Ledger *as near as you can to the Hole, and a large Cork-float. Bait with a live* Minnow, Loach, Gudgeon, *or* Dace, *at Mid-water (and some prefer that Depth, or a little lower, with a Worm; though it is common to fish that way close to the Ground, either with a Float or Running-line.) He is also trowled for. Your Hook must be large, armed with Wire, or whip'd on to two* Hog's Briftles.

SMELT.

HIS RIVERS. The *Thames*, and other great Rivers. Visits them twice a Year, in *March* and *August*; in the first, is taken about *Chelsea* and *Hammersmith*; in the last, seldom above *London-Bridge*.

BAITS. *Gentles*, white *Paste*, or a Bit of one of his own Species. Use a Paternoster-line.

STICKLEBACK.

IS found in every River, Pond, and Ditch; taken with a bit of a *Red-worm*, and never used but as a Bait, with his Prickles cut off, for other Fish, as *Pike*, *Trout* and *Eel*.

TENCH.

HIS RIVERS. *Byfleet*, *Surry*; *Stower*, *Dorsetshire*; *Welland*, *Lincolnshire*, has *Tench* of five

five Pounds Weight. All the Rivers near *Harwich*; and the Drains in the Fens about *Ely*, breed very large, particularly *Wintlesea-mere*; also *Brecknock-mere* in *Wales*. He is chiefly a Pond Fish.

HAUNTS. Are the same with the *Carp*, only he loves the fouleſt and muddieſt Bottoms among Weeds.

BAITS. *Marſh*, *Lob*, or *Red-worms*, anointed with *Tar*, or the Unguent in Note (*p.* 161.) *Waſps*, *Gentles*, *Cacis*, *Paſtes* of brown *Bread* and *Honey*, with a little *Tar*. *Ground-bait* with *Blood* and *Grains* mixed.

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting*. They are beſt from the Beginning of *September* till the End of *May*. In *June* and *July* they ſpawn; and are out of Seaſon the hot Months; yet then they bite freeſt, even all Night long, but are good for nought. Early and late, as for the *Carp*, are the uſual Hours, in a ſtill, ſmooth Water, and beſt in a cloudy, drizling, or rainy Morning, when it is warm, and a ſouth or weſt Wind.

GEN. DIREC. *You muſt fiſh ſtrong and near the Bottom; or with a* Marſh *or* Flag-worm, *more near the Middle; allow him a great deal of Time in biting. He is no ſhy Fiſh. In hot Weather you may ſnare him at the Top of the Water, as the* Pike, *with a double haired Link, not overtwiſted, hung in a Nooſe, tied to a Line, on a long Rod: Let it fall ſoftly before him on the Water, without touching him, till you have brought it over his Gills; then pull gently, and you have him.*

TROUT.

HIS RIVERS. All thoſe of *Hampſhire* and *Derbyſhire*, chiefly. He is found in moſt that are clear

clear (all the Northern ones) of the Kingdom; none on the *Eſſex*, *Suffolk* and *Suſſex* Coaſts; excepting *Amerly*, in *Suſſex*, which is famous. Near *London*, the *Lea*, above *Waltham*; and the Branches of it running by *Walton* and *Aſton*, beyond *Hertford*; *Coln*, by *Watford*, and downwards. The *Thames*, above *Iſleworth*, and upward, and all the Rivers that run into it from the *Surry* Side. *Stower* River, *Canterbury*, *Cray* River, and the Brooks in *Kent*, and *Uxbridge* River abound with fine *Trout*; as do moſt in *Wales*.

HAUNTS. Small purling Streams, that are clear and ſwift, uſually on the Side, or in the Eddies of the Stream, and in the quieteſt Place; in a dead Hole, behind ſome Stone, Stump, or a Point of Land that ſtands ſhooting out, and makes a moving in the Water like an Eddy; eſpecially under the Shade of a Buſh, or hollow hanging Bank. At a Stream-tail in Spring, and latter End of Summer, in *May* he keeps the upper End; and on the Shallows in Summer, and at the Aprons and Tails of Mills.

BAITS. A *Lob-worm* and *Brandling* are the chief; but to bait your Hook with theſe ſee *p.* 81, and in Note: and *p.* 310; though any Sort of *Worm* is grateful to him; but a large *Worm* is beſt in a thick, and a ſmaller in a clear Water. *Cadis* is another excellent Bait at Bottom, and the moſt holding through the Year. Two or three put on the Hook together, and, ſometimes upon the Point above the *Worm*, have a very good Effect. *Minnow*, or any ſmall Fiſh, half a Foot or Foot under Water; *Bull-head*, with his Back Fin cut off, which is better, or *Loach*, which is beſt of all (how to order theſe, ſee *p.* 83, 317.) All *Flies*, natural or artificial, at Top; of theſe the *May-fly*, *Palmer-fly*,

mer-fly, *Stone-fly*, *Green-drake*, *Aſh*, *Fern* and *Ant-flies*; or a *Graſshopper* in dipping, as for *Chub* (see *p.* 48.)

SEASONS, *and Hours of biting.* They ſpawn about *October* or *November*; are out of Seaſon from about the Middle of *October* to the ſame Time in *March*, and in Seaſon all the Summer half Year. *April*, *May* and *June* are his Prime. Bites from Sun-riſe till within an Hour and Half of Noon, and from two till Sun-ſet, or later, and he may be fiſhed for all Night; but nine in the Morning, and three in the Afternoon are his moſt certain Hours, either at *Ground* or *Fly*. A Water clearing after a Flood, or dark, cloudy, and gloomy Weather, when it is windy, is moſt favourable. In *March*, *April*, *September*, and a Part of *October*, the warmeſt Sun-ſhiny Weather, and Middle of the Day is beſt. In little cryſtal Brooks, when a Shower has raiſed and diſturbed the Water, or a Mill is firſt ſet going, or the Tide comes up, is of great Advantage, following the Courſe of the Current: And little is to be expected in ſuch Places when the contrary, unleſs they have been ſwelled ſome Time before by Land-floods.

GEN. DIREC. *Fiſh as ſtrong and fine as poſſible, and uſe the utmoſt Caution to keep unſeen. In muddy or white Water, as ſome term it, you may be more bold, fiſh coarſer, and ſtand nearer*; *a* Worm *is then better than a* Fly; *unleſs when you fiſh with it in the Fly manner, or with a ſmall* Brandling; *which is the beſt Way of all in a clear Water* (*of which ſee full Inſtructions* p. 310.) *In angling with a Float or Ledger-bait, lie as near the Bottom as you can, without dragging. When with a* Fly, *keep it always playing upon the Water, drawing it up and down the Stream, as the Wind will permit. When*

your

your Flies are dead on the Hook, cut of their Wings, put one ſhot to ſink them about Mid-water, and you will find your Account. After a Shower they will riſe greedily at Gnats: *In the Evening, of a hot Day, dib with a* Graſhopper, *on a ſhort Line, as for* Chub, *(ſee* p. 48.*) Where you ſhall find many* Minnows *or* Chubs, *expect few or no* Trouts *in that Place. The* Chubs *will drive the* Trouts *out, and keep Poſſeſſion. You need make but three or four Throws in a Stand, for if a* Trout *takes not your Bait then, there is none there, or he will not come nigh it at all.* Ground-bait *the Night before with a Pint of* Lob-worms.

Short

Short RULES

CONCERNING

I. The *Tackle*. II. *Baits*. III. The ſeveral *Ways of Angling*. IV. *Weather* improper and proper for the *Sport*.

I. IN Choice of a Rod, made up now very cheap, and in Perfection, at the Shops in *London*, let it not in Length exceed five, or at moſt ſix Yards; all longer are unmanagable, and will not anſwer to the Motion of the Hand, in ſtriking or throwing out; thoſe of *Cane* are better than of *Hazle*, as being lighteſt. See they are taper, and decreaſe gradually, the Whale-bone Joint light, and End ſmall, for if that be ſtiff and unpliable, or top-heavy, it will not, as they term it, mount well; that is, you cannot ſtrike true, but it will endanger breaking your Tackle, or loſing the Fiſh. Chuſe your *Hazle ones* of old well-ſeaſoned Wood; new and green will warp, and an Hour's fiſhing in the Rain or Sun will ſpoil them. Rods are beſt preſerved in Winter, by keeping them dry, and laying them *by*, rubbed over (the *Hazel ones*) with Tallow, *thoſe* of Cane with Oil. HAIRS of all Sorts may be bought in Links of every Size, ready twiſted or ſingle. Single Hairs ſhould be glaſs coloured, round and even; for ſtrong fiſhing, *Indian-graſs*, or *Silk-worm-gut*, are beſt. Floats of Quill or Cork, may alſo be had of all Sizes; and Cork ones for the Eaſe and better Direction of the Eye, ſteadier ſwimming, and on many Accounts, have the Preference. Chuſe your Hooks never too large, a ſmaller Hook, of its particular Sort, being much the beſt for

for all Purpoſes; and be ſure that it be never too ſhort in the Shank. Thoſe that are at a Diſtance from the Town, or are deſirous to make and prepare their own Tackle, may ſee Directions for it, p. 222 and 268-9.

II. *Worms*, *Gentles*, and the uſual Sorts of *artificial Flies*, &c. are ſold ready prepared at the Shops: But as all are not near that Conveniency, *Lob*, *Dew*, or *Earth-worms* are found in Gardens, or Meadow Grounds, after Rain, by the Help of a Lanthorn, in the Night: The beſt of theſe are thoſe which have a red Head, a Streak down the Back, and broad Tail. *Brandlings*, a pale Worm; *Gilt-tails*, another of this Kind, with yellow Liſt on the Tail; and *Red-worms*, are all found in fat rotten Earth or Dunghills, chiefly of Cow or Hog's Dung, but the beſt are in Tanner's-bark; the *Marſh*, a bluiſh Worm, in marſhy Grounds; all theſe may be ſcoured in Fennel, or Moſs waſhed clean, wetted, ſqueezed dry, and often changed; but the beſt Way is, to take a Piece of very coarſe Cloth, that has never been in the Fulling-mill, waſhed clean and dried, then ſoaked in freſh Beef-liquor, in which there has been no Salt, for that would kill them; wring it, but not too dry: Lay it in a broad deep-glaz'd earthen Pan and your Worms in it, to creep through, and ſcour themſelves in. Rinſe it out in the ſame Sort of Liquor again, every two Days, and your Worms will keep a Month, ſet in a cool Place, and be in excellent Order; *Bole Armoniac* put to them will haſten their ſcouring, and makes them redder: Put what you want for preſent Uſe in wetted Moſs, well ſqueezed; *Gentles* may be made by the Direction, p. 203. *Clap-bait*, is a whitiſh Maggot, found at any Time under a *Cow Clat*. *Earth-Grub*, the Brood

Brood of the *Beetle*, in any freſh ploughed Lands: Way to preſerve them, ſee *p.* 202. *Flag-worm*, *Dock-worm*, is found by plucking up thoſe Plants, waſhing their Roots from the Earth, and in their Fibres are little Caſes of a red or yellow Colour, open theſe with a Pin, and you will find the Worm; but the better Sort lie in the round Stalk, after you have pulled the Flag away: They are kept in Bran as the *Gentle*. *Aſh-Grubs*, or *Bark-worm*, a ſoft white Inſect, are found lying bent Head to Tail, under the Bark of any decayed Aſh, Oak, Alder, Birch, or any Tree that has laid any Time fallen; to be kept alſo in Bran. *Palmer-worms*, and all others bred on Herbs or Trees, may be found on their reſpective Plants, and kept, by putting them, with the Leaves of each, into little Boxes, with Holes to let in Air. *Oak* and *Aſh-fly*, are found on the Bodies of thoſe Trees, the Heads downwards near the Root. *Hawthorn*, and other *Flies*, by beating the Boughs of Hawthorn, *&c.* *Ant-flies* are dug out of their Hills about *July*; a Way of keeping them, ſee *p.* 201. *Cadis* are got out of any Brook or Ditch by a River, as in Note *p.* 208, and are kept as in *p.* 207. *May*, and other *Flies*, by the Sides of every River. *Artificial Flies*, Variety of them may be bought at the Tackle Shops, and thoſe that have Leiſure, and are curious, have Directions (*p.* 91. *& ſeq.* —271 *& ſeq.* with the Note—286 *& ſeq.*) through every particular Month, for making them. *Paſtes* are made ſeveral Ways, (*p.* 51. 149—50) Col. *Venables* commends the following before all others;

Leg of a young Rabbit (or raw Veal) Virgin's Wax, Sheep's Suet, beat in a Mortar; tempered before the Fire with clarified Honey.

Sheep's Kidney Suet, or Sheep's Blood, as much Cheeſe, white Bread with clarified Honey.

Cherries,

Cherries, Sheep's Blood, White Bread, Saffron, fatteſt old Cheeſe, and ſtrongeſt Rennet, White Bread, Anniſeed-water, beat exceeding well together—Add ruſty Bacon, if for a Chub.

Fatteſt old Cheeſe, ſtrongeſt Rennet, Sheep's Kidney Suet, coloured with Turmeric, an excellent Paſte for Chub.

In Winter, for large Fiſh let your Bait be as big as a Nutmeg,—add the Oils (as in Note p. 125—6) *for Trial.* And *in all* a little fine *Wool* or *Flax*, to keep it on the Hook.

N. B. *The Spawn of any Fiſh (Salmon eſpecially) beat to a Paſte, or boiled till ſo hard to hang on the Hook: Or the Fleſh of any Fiſh beat to Paſte, or cut into ſmall Bits, is a choice Bait for almoſt all Fiſh.*

III. The *Ways of Angling* are ſeveral. GROUND ANGLING is for all Waters and Seaſons; and the Foundation of the Art: and is, 1. With the *Ledger, or fixed Bait,* when the Rod is ſtuck in, or reſted upon the Bank, for which ſee full Directions, *p.* 133 to 138, and 310. This Way is uſed for all Fiſh, eſpecially *Trout, Pike, Chub* and *Eel.* 2. By *Hand,* or with the *Running-line, viz.* with ſo many Shot on it as will ſink it to the Bottom, and ſuffer the Bait to be carried with the Stream; and this muſt always be proportioned to the Strength or Weakneſs of the Current. In this you uſe no Float, but the Bite is eaſily ſeen at the Top of the Rod, or felt from the Hand; keep the Line ſtrait, and ſtrike upright. It is an excellint Way for *Trout, Barbel, Gudgeon,* and other Fiſh 3. With the *Float* (312—19) which, in Oppoſition to the *Ledger,* is called the *Walking-bait.* In ſwift Streams, Floats of Cork are beſt; in gentler, thoſe of Quill. You are to plumb the Depth of your Water, and uſe Ground-bait. 4. *Night-hooks.* See Directions, *p.* 172 and

341. These four Methods are the whole of *Ground-Angling*.

MID-WATER-FISHING is with any live *Fish-bait*, *Worm*, or other Bait, at the Middle, somewhat lower, or within a Foot of the Surface; for *Trout*, *Pike*, *Pearch*, or *Chub*. For all of which but the last, they often in this Way use the *Trowling-line*, which is sold ready made at the Tackle-shops; in the Use of which they will direct you. (See *p.* 134, in Note.)

FLY-FISHING, is usually on the very Top of the Water, and sometimes, when your Observation will show you the Fish crave it, a very little under; your Rod must be long, and your Line also, if you have Wind to carry it from you, otherwise a Line of less Length is best. This must always be done in clear Water, in which you use neither Lead nor Float. Contrive, if you can, to have *the Sun in your Face, the Wind in your Back, and always throw up the Stream, and let only your Fly touch the Water.* (See *p.* 267.)

The best Times to use a Fly are, when the River has been a little discoloured by Rain, or in a cloudy, breezy Day. When the Wind is high chuse *the still Deeps*, when small or none, *the running Stream*, and use then the *natural*, in boisterous Weather the *artificial* Fly.—In clear Streams use a *small Fly*, in less clear, *one* larger; a light coloured Fly in a bright Day, a dark Fly for dark Waters, and an Orange Fly in muddy ones.—Keep as much as you can from the Fishes Sight as he rises, and strike the Instant you feel him touch, or, if a large one, not till you see him turn his Head.

N. B. *After Floods or Rains, angle at Ground. When the Streams are beginning to clear, or after a Shower that has not mudded them, but only beaten down*

Cherries, Sheep's Blood, White Bread, Saffron, fatteſt old Cheeſe, and ſtrongeſt Rennet, White Bread, Anniſeed-water, beat exceeding well together—Add ruſty Bacon, if for a Chub.

Fatteſt old Cheeſe, ſtrongeſt Rennet, Sheep's Kidney Suet, coloured with Turmeric, an excellent Paſte for Chub.

In Winter, for large Fiſh let your Bait be as big as a Nutmeg,—add the Oils (as in Note p. 125—6) *for Trial.* And *in all* a little fine *Wool* or *Flax*, to keep it on the Hook.

N. B. *The Spawn of any Fiſh (Salmon eſpecially) beat to a Paſte, or boiled till ſo hard to hang on the Hook: Or the Fleſh of any Fiſh beat to Paſte, or cut into ſmall Bits, is a choice Bait for almoſt all Fiſh.*

III. The *Ways of Angling* are ſeveral. GROUND ANGLING is for all Waters and Seaſons; and the Foundation of the Art: and is, 1. With the *Ledger*, or *fixed Bait*, when the Rod is ſtuck in, or reſted upon the Bank, for which ſee full Directions, *p.* 133 to 138, and 310. This Way is uſed for all Fiſh, eſpecially *Trout*, *Pike*, *Chub* and *Eel*. 2. By *Hand*, or with the *Running-line*, *viz.* with ſo many Shot on it as will ſink it to the Bottom, and ſuffer the Bait to be carried with the Stream; and this muſt always be proportioned to the Strength or Weakneſs of the Current. In this you uſe no Float, but the Bite is eaſily ſeen at the Top of the Rod, or felt from the Hand; keep the Line ſtrait, and ſtrike upright. It is an excellint Way for *Trout*, *Barbel*, *Gudgeon*, and other Fiſh 3. With the *Float* (312—19) which, in Oppoſition to the *Ledger*, is called the *Walking-bait*. In ſwift Streams, Floats of Cork are beſt; in gentler, thoſe of Quill. You are to plumb the Depth of your Water, and uſe Ground-bait. 4. *Night-hooks*. See Directions, *p.* 172 and

341. These four Methods are the whole of *Ground-Angling*.

MID-WATER-FISHING is with any live *Fish-bait*, *Worm*, or other Bait, at the Middle, somewhat lower, or within a Foot of the Surface; for *Trout*, *Pike*, *Pearch*, or *Chub*. For all of which but the last, they often in this Way use the *Trowling-line*, which is sold ready made at the Tackle-shops; in the Use of which they will direct you. (See *p.* 134, in Note.)

FLY-FISHING, is usually on the very Top of the Water, and sometimes, when your Observation will show you the Fish crave it, a very little under; your Rod must be long, and your Line also, if you have Wind to carry it from you, otherwise a Line of less Length is best. This must always be done in clear Water, in which you use neither Lead nor Float. Contrive, if you can, to have *the Sun in your Face*, *the Wind in your Back*, *and always throw up the Stream*, *and let only your Fly touch the Water*. (See *p.* 267.)

The best Times to use a Fly are, when the River has been a little discoloured by Rain, or in a cloudy, breezy Day. When the Wind is high chuse *the still Deeps*, when small or none, *the running Stream*, and use then the *natural*, in boisterous Weather the *artificial* Fly.—In clear Streams use a *small Fly*, in less clear, *one* larger; a light coloured Fly in a bright Day, a dark Fly for dark Waters, and an Orange Fly in muddy ones.—Keep as much as you can from the Fishes Sight as he rises, and strike the Instant you feel him touch, or, if a large one, not till you see him turn his Head.

N. B. *After Floods or Rains*, *angle at Ground. When the Streams are beginning to clear*, *or after a Shower that has not mudded them*, *but only beaten down*

wn the Flies and Gnats, or in the Shower, if you inclined to ſtand it, angle with a Fly.

IV. The WEATHER, the laſt Thing, is 1. *Improper*. In a ſtrong Eaſt or cold Northerly Wind. ter a long Drought. In the Middle of Days that exceſſive hot, eſpecially in muddy or clear ſhallow Rivers. When there has been white Froſt in Morning. In Days of high Wind. Where y have been *long* waſhing Sheep. Juſt after Fiſh ve ſpawned. Upon riſing of any ſudden Clouds t prove to proceed Rain. The Days following k, cloudy, or windy Nights. When Rivers, ecially ſmall ones, are pent up by Flood-gates or ills, and run low. 2. The moſt *proper Times*, in calm clear Weather. In a briſk ſouth or weſt eeze; if you can find Shelter, no matter how high be. When, in the hotteſt Months, it is cool and oudy. After Floods, when the Water fines and of a *Whey-colour*. After a haſty violent Shower a little muddied and ſwelled the Tide, eſpecially Ground-fiſhing. A little before any Fiſhes wning, when they are ſeen rubbing themſelves on gravelly Shallows. When a River is very much elled and runs violent, then in any ſtill Pit, by its es, the Mouth of any ſlow Creek running into and the Ends of Bridges, where the Water runs m and quiet, if not too deep, there is admirable Sport. When Flaſhes are let down, or Mills going; if you follow the Courſe of the Water.

†*† *The few brief Obſervations, under theſe* FOUR HEADS *contain a Summary* of the Angler's Knowledge, *and include the Subſtance of many modern Volumes that have been written on the Subject; which affect to turn all into* Myſtery, Study, and Art, *that ſhould be ſuppoſed to treat of nothing but of ſimple and mere* RECREATION.

own the Flies and Gnats, or in the Shower, if you are inclined to stand it, angle with a Fly.

IV. The WEATHER, the last Thing, is 1. *Improper*. In a strong East or cold Northerly Wind. After a long Drought. In the Middle of Days that are excessive hot, especially in muddy or clear shallow Rivers. When there has been white Frost in the Morning. In Days of high Wind. Where they have been *long* washing Sheep. Just after Fish have spawned. Upon rising of any sudden Clouds that prove to proceed Rain. The Days following dark, cloudy, or windy Nights. When Rivers, especially small ones, are pent up by Flood-gates or Mills, and run low. 2. The most *proper Times* are, in calm clear Weather. In a brisk south or west Breeze; if you can find Shelter, no matter how high it be. When, in the hottest Months, it is cool and cloudy. After Floods, when the Water tines and is of a *Whey-colour*. After a hasty violent Shower has a little muddied and swelled the Tide, especially for Ground-fishing. A little before any Fishes spawning, when they are seen rubbing themselves on the gravelly Shallows. When a River is very much swelled and runs violent, then in any still Pit, by its Sides, the Mouth of any slow Creek running into it, and the Ends of Bridges, where the Water runs calm and quiet, if not too deep, there is admirable Sport. When Flashes are let down, or Mills set going; if you follow the Course of the Water.

†*† *The few brief Observations, under these* FOUR HEADS *contain a Summary* of the Angler's Knowledge, *and include the Substance of many modern Volumes that have been written on the Subject; which affect to turn all into* Mystery, Study, and Art, *that should be supposed to treat of nothing but of simple and mere* RECREATION.

INDEX.

ACTION, *preferred to Contemplation.* Page 20.
Adonis, *or* Sea-Darling, *a Fish*, 25.
Air, *its Use and Commendation*, 6 *to* 11.
Ancients, *their Care to have their Fish fresh*, 52.
Angling, *its Eulogium*, 13 *to* 36. *Lawfulness* 30. *Allowed the Clergy*, ib. *Methods of*, 91 *to* 98. 309 *to* 319. 363-4.
Angle-Rods, 93. 222-24. 358-9. *How to colour*, 224. *Preserve*, 358.
Angling-Sport, *Descriptions of*, 43-4. 48-9. 59-60. 88-9. 110-11. 278 *to* 282.
Angler, *his Happiness*, 102. *Character*, 5.
Angler's Songs, 74. 187. *Catch*, 193. *Evening Dialogues*, 68 *to* 78. 185 *to* 195.
Angler's Wish, *Verses*, 103. Tackle, *old ryme about* 205.
Ant-Fly, *how to procure and keep*, 201.
April, *Flies for*, 91. 290.
Artificial Flies. *See* Flies.
Ash-Grub, (*same with* Bark-Worm) 313. 360. *Best Time to use it*, 286. *How to bait with*, 314.
August, *Flies proper to*, 92, 302.

B.

BAcon, *for Bait*, 51, 177, *(in Notes)*
Baits, 49. 78-9. 199 *to* 213. 359-60.
Barbel, *where found*, 177, 333 *Subtlety* 179. *His Baits*, ib. 336. *Spawn poisonous*, 178.
Bark-Worm. *See* Ash-Grub,
Bee, *for Bait*, 51, 204.
Beggars *merry Dispute and Song*, 105.

Bleak, 184, 334.
Bobbing *for* Eels, *way of*, 173, *(in Note)*
Bones *of* Chevin, *baked diſſolve*, 51.
Brandling, Gilt-Tail *or* Red-Worm, 79, 80, 336. *To bait with*, 311.
Bream, *Baits for*, 152-3. 335-6. *Way to fiſh for*, 154 *to* 158.
Brogling (*for* Eels) *See* Snigling.
Bull-head *or* Miller's-Thumb, *to catch*, 212, 336. *to uſe as Bait*, 317.
Bull-Trout, 56.

C.

CAdews, *their Kinds*, 207-8. *How got*, 208, *(in Note) and* 205. *To keep*, ib.
Carp, *his Fertility*, 143. *Deſtroyed by Frogs*, 144. *Longivity*, 145. *Way of ſpawning*, 146. *How to fiſh for*, 147-8-9, *and the Note. Baits* ib. *and* 337. *to dreſs*, 150.
Cantharus, *Fiſh*, *Verſes on*, 25.
Caterpillar, 84 *to* 87.
Char-Fiſh, 176.
Chalkhill Joſeph, *Verſes by*, 71, 187.
Cheeſe, *Bait*, 180, 334, 339, 361-2.
Cherries *and* Berries, 51, 339
Chub *or* Cheven, *to catch*, 48. *His Baits*, 51, 339. *Ways to dreſs*, 46-7.
Clap-bait, *or* Bob, 49, 359.
Common-Prayer, *Verſes on*, 101, (*in Note*)
Conger, *Sea Eel*, 175.
Coridon's *Song*, 71.
Cotton, *Eſq; ſtanzas by*, 322.
Cuttle-Fiſh, 24, 217, *and Note.*

D.

DACE, *ſee* Roach.
Dapping, Dopping, *or* Dibbing, *viz. angling with a live* Fly, Graſhopper, *&c.* 48-9, 98. 361.

INDEX.

ACTION, *preferred to Contemplation.* Page 20.
Adonis, *or* Sea-Darling, *a Fish*, 25.
Air, *its Use and Commendation*, 6 *to* 11.
Ancients, *their Care to have their Fish fresh*, 52.
Angling, *its Eulogium*, 13 *to* 36. *Lawfulness* 30. *Allowed the Clergy*, ib. *Methods of*, 91 *to* 98. 309 *to* 319. 363-4.
Angle-Rods, 93. 222-24. 358-9. *How to colour*, 224. *Preserve*, 358.
Angling-Sport, *Descriptions of*, 43-4. 48-9. 59-60. 88 9. 110-11. 278 *to* 282.
Angler, *his Happiness*, 102. *Character*, 5.
Angler's Songs, 74. 187. *Catch*, 193. *Evening Dialogues*, 68 *to* 78. 185 *to* 195.
Angler's Wish, *Verses*, 103. Tackle, *old ryme about* 205.
Ant-Fly, *how to procure and keep*, 201.
April, *Flies for*, 91. 290.
Artificial Flies. *See* Flies.
Ash-Grub, (*same with* Bark-Worm) 313. 360. *Best Time to use it*, 286. *How to bait with*, 314.
August, *Flies proper to*, 92, 302.

B.

BAcon, *for Bait*, 51, 177, *(in Notes)*
Baits, 49. 78-9. 199 *to* 213. 359-60.
Barbel, *where found*, 177, 333 *Subtlety* 179. *His Baits*, ib. 336. *Spawn poisonous*, 178.
Bark-Worm. *See* Ash-Grub,
Bee, *for Bait*, 51, 204.
Beggars *merry Dispute and Song*, 105.

Bleak, 184, 334.
Bobbing *for* Eels, *way of*, 173, *(in Note)*
Bones *of* Chevin, *baked diſſolve*, 51.
Brandling, Gilt-Tail *or* Red-Worm, 79, 80, 336. *To bait with*, 311.
Bream, *Baits for*, 152-3. 335-6. *Way to fiſh for*, 154 *to* 158.
Brogling (*for* Eels) *See* Snigling.
Bull-head *or* Miller's-Thumb, *to catch*, 212, 336. *to uſe as Bait*, 317.
Bull-Trout, 56.

C.

CAdews, *their Kinds*, 207-8. *How got*, 208, *(in Note) and* 205. *To keep*, ib.
Carp, *his Fertility*, 143. *Deſtroyed by Frogs*, 144. *Longivity*, 145. *Way of ſpawning*, 146. *How to fiſh for*, 147-8-9, *and the Note. Baits* ib. *and* 337. *to dreſs*, 150.
Cantharus, *Fiſh*, *Verſes on*, 25.
Caterpillar, 84 *to* 87.
Char-Fiſh, 176.
Chalkhill Joſeph, *Verſes by*, 71, 187.
Cheeſe, *Bait*, 180, 334, 339, 361-2.
Cherries *and* Berries, 51, 339
Chub *or* Cheven, *to catch*, 48. *His Baits*, 51, 339. *Ways to dreſs*, 46-7.
Clap-bait, *or* Bob, 49, 359.
Common-Prayer, *Verſes on*, 101, (*in Note*)
Conger, *Sea Eel*, 175.
Coridon's *Song*, 71.
Cotton, *Eſq*; *ſtanzas by*, 322.
Cuttle-Fiſh, 24, 217, *and Note.*

D.

DACE, *ſee* Roach.
Dapping, Dopping, *or* Dibbing, *viz. angling with a live* Fly, Graſhopper, *&c.* 48-9, 98. 361.

Davidson Frank, *song by*, 106.
Davers Joseph, *verses by*, 34.
December, *Flies for*, 303.
Derbyshire Rivers *described*, 252 *to* 254.
Dock, (*same with* Flag-Worm) 153, 313, 360.
Donne, *Dean of St.* Paul's, *Verses by*, 166.
Dove River, *its Rise and Course*, 252-3.
Draiton Mich. *his Verses on the Salmon*, 121.
Dubartas, *Verses by*, 25-6, 87.
Dubravius, Bishop, *strange Story by*, 131.

E.

EArth, *its Excellencies*, 11, 12.
Earth-Grub *or* Bob, *spawn of* Beetle, 202, 359.
Eel, *Opinions of their Generation*, 168-9. *Several Kinds*, ib. *Bed themselves in Winter*, 170-1. *Unbed at Thunder*, 114. *Baits for*, 171, 341. *Ways to catch*, 72, 73, *and the Notes. To dress, a most excellent way*, 174.
Elvers, *Kind of* Eel-cake, 169.

F.

FAlcon, *his Flight, &c. described*, 6.
February, *Flies for*, 287.
Fence-months, *what*, 41.
Fish-diet, *commended*, 15.
Fish, *strange Kinds of*, 216. *Description of one*, 217.
Fishermen, *their unlawful Practices condemned*, 41, 304. *Their Employment never reprehended by Christ*, 28.
Fishes Enemies, 41.
Fish-Ponds, *how to order*, 218, (*and in Notes*) *to* 221.
Fordige Trout, 54-5.
Frogs, *to bait with*, 137. *Which venomous*, 136. *Strange Instinct of some*, 131-32.
Fletcher Phineas, *Author of* Piscatory Eclogues, *Verses by*, 192, *and Note.*

Flies, *their sorts and to find*, 91, *and Note* 97. Artificial *or* Dub-Flies 91-2, 286 *to* 305. *How to make*, 93-4-5, 271 *to* 273, *with the Note. To know which will be the best taken*, 288. *How to put on the Hook*, 295.
Fly-fishing, *way of*, 92, 266, *to* 271, 362.
Flounder, 176, 342.

G.

GEneration *various antient Opinions of*, 84, 127, 168-9.
Gentles, *to breed and keep all the Year*, 202-3.
Grayling, *how valued*, 116. *Physical Use*, 117. *St.* Ambrose's *Esteem of him*, ib. *Prime Season*, 281, 285. *His Baits* 117, 300, 313, 343.
Green-drake-Fly, 293 *to* 297.
Grey *ditto*, 296-7.
Grashopper, *Bait*, 48-9.
Gudgeon, 182, 344.
Guinead, *Kind of* Alpine Trout, 176.
Gypsies, *humourous Tale of, and Song*, 104, 106.

H.

HAmpshire *yields best* Trout Rivers, 113.
Hair *for Line, which best*, 222, 358. *To colour and twist*, 223.
Hanson-Foot Hill *described*, 255 *to* 258.
Hawking, *its Eulogium*, 6 *to* 10.
Hawks, *Catalogue of*, 10, *in Note.*
Hawthorn-Fly, 98, 360.
Hen, *Observation of*, 26.
Hearing, *in Fishes*, 113-14.
Herbert Mr. *Verses by*, 23, 42, 99.
Hermit-Fish, 24.
Hook, *how to chuse*, 358. *To bait, see* Lob-Worm.
Host, *Character of a bad one*, 42.
Hunting, *its Eulogium*, 11, 12, 13.

Davidson Frank, *song by*, 106.
Davers Joseph, *verses by*, 34.
December, *Flies for*, 303.
Derbyshire Rivers *described*, 252 *to* 254.
Dock, (*same with* Flag-Worm) 153, 313, 360.
Donne, *Dean of St.* Paul's, *Verses by*, 166.
Dove River, *its Rise and Course*, 252-3.
Draiton Mich. *his Verses on the Salmon*, 121.
Dubartas, *Verses by*, 25-6, 87.
Dubravius, Bishop, *strange Story by*, 131.

E.

EArth, *its Excellencies*, 11, 12.
Earth-Grub *or* Bob, *spawn of* Beetle, 202, 359.
Eell, *Opinions of their Generation*, 168-9. *Several Kinds*, ib. *Bed themselves in Winter*, 170-1. *Unbed at Thunder*, 114. *Baits for*, 171, 341. *Ways to catch*, 72, 73, *and the Notes. To dress, a most excellent way*, 174.
Elvers, *Kind of* Eel-cake, 169.

F.

FAlcon, *his Flight, &c. described*, 6.
February, *Flies for*, 287.
Fence-months, *what*, 41.
Fish-diet, *commended*, 15.
Fish, *strange Kinds of*, 216. *Description of one*, 217.
Fishermen, *their unlawful Practices condemned*, 41, 304. *Their Employment never reprehended by Christ*, 28.
Fishes Enemies, 41.
Fish-Ponds, *how to order*, 218, (*and in Notes*) *to* 221.
Fordige Trout, 54-5.
Frogs, *to bait with*, 137. *Which venomous*, 136. *Strange Instinct of some*, 131-32.
Fletcher Phineas, *Author of* Piscatory Eclogues, *Verses by*, 192, *and Note.*

Flies, *their sorts and to find*, 91, *and Note* 97. Artificial *or* Dub-Flies 91-2, 286 *to* 305. *How to make*, 93-4-5, 271 *to* 273, *with the Note. To know which will be the best taken*, 288. *How to put on the Hook*, 295.
Fly-fishing, *way of*, 92, 266, *to* 271, 362.
Flounder, 176, 342.

G.

GEneration *various antient Opinions of*, 84, 127, 168-9.
Gentles, *to breed and keep all the Year*, 202-3.
Grayling, *how valued*, 116. *Physical Use*, 117. *St.* Ambrose's *Esteem of him*, ib. *Prime Season*, 281, 285. *His Baits* 117, 300, 313, 343.
Green-drake-Fly, 293 *to* 297.
Grey *ditto*, 296-7.
Grashopper, *Bait*, 48-9.
Gudgeon, 182, 344.
Guinead, *Kind of* Alpine Trout, 176.
Gypsies, *humourous Tale of, and Song*, 104, 106.

H.

HAmpshire *yields best* Trout Rivers, 113.
Hair *for Line, which best*, 222, 358. *To colour and twist*, 223.
Hanson-Toot Hill *described*, 255 *to* 258.
Hawking, *its Eulogium*, 6 *to* 10.
Hawks, *Catalogue of*, 10, *in Note.*
Hawthorn-Fly, 98, 360.
Hen, *Observation of*, 26.
Hearing, *in Fishes*, 113-14.
Herbert Mr. *Verses by*, 23, 42, 99.
Hermit-Fish, 24.
Hook, *how to chuse*, 358. *To bait, see* Lob-Worm.
Host, *Character of a bad one*, 42.
Hunting, *its Eulogium*, 11, 12, 13.

J.

JAnuary, *Flies for*, 286.
Jests, *ill ones condemned*, 42.
June, *Flies for*, 92, 300-1.
July, *ditto*, 92, 301.
Ivy, *Gum to extract an Unguent*, 124, *and in Note.*

K.

King's-Fisher, *her Nest inimitible*, 207.

L.

Lamprey, *Eel, lived* 60 *Years*, 170. *For Bait*, 172.
Lathkin River, Derbysh. *clearest, and breeds best* Trouts *in* England, 254.
Lark, *his Commendations*, 8.
Laws, *concerning* Angling, 327.
Leather-mouth'd Fish, *what*, 50.
Ledger-Bait, 133. *To bait*, 135. *To use*, 237, 310, 360.
Loach, *to catch*, 211, 345. *Use as Bait*, 317. *Scour*, 80, 359. *How to bait with* one Worm, 91. *With* two, ibid. *(in Note) and* 310.
Lucian, *Epigram on Scoffers*, 4.

M.

MAlt-Bait, 203.
March, *Flies for*, 91, 289.
Martial, *Epigram by, translated*, 115.
Marlow Kit, *Song by*, 62.
May, *Flies for*, 91-2, 291 *to* 300.
May-Fly, 57, 93, *where found*, 98, 360. *To make*, 296.
Milk-Maids, Dialogues *with*, 61 *to* 67. 181. *Their* Songs, 62, 65.
Minnow *or* Penk, 210. *delicious, made into Tansies*, ib. *How to bait with*, 82 *and Note. Make* artificial, 83, *and Note.*

Montaigne's

Montaigne's *Saying of his Cat*, 4.
Mullet, 345. *Verſes on*, 26.
Muſick, *Verſes in Praiſe of*, 194.

N.

NIght-Fiſhing, *for* Trout, 111-12.
Night-Hooks, 172, 342.
Nightengale, *her Melody*, 8.
November, *Flies for*. *See thoſe for* Feb.
Nowel, *Dean of St.* Paul's, *his Character*, 31.

O.

OAK (*or* Aſh) Fly, *to find*, 98. *Make*, 97.
Worm *or* Grub, *ſecret in uſing it*, 97, *in Note*. *Where find*, 359.
October, *Flies for*. *See thoſe for* March.
Otter, 2. *Hunting him*, 3 *to* 39. *Made tame to catch Fiſh*, ib. *Skin, its uſe in Gloves*, 37.
Ointments, *to tempt* Fiſh, 145, *and the Notes*. 139, 149, 161 *and the Notes* 205, 314.

P.

PAlmer-Fly, *To make*, 93.
—— Worm, 84. *His Deſcription*, 86.
Paſtes, 51, 148-9, 180, 360-1.
Pater-noſter-line, 184.
Pearch, *his wholeſomeneſs*, 162. *Baits for*, 164, 346.
Piſcator's *Song*, 187.
Pike, *Longevity and Voraciouſneſs*, 127, *and ſeq. Medical Virtue*, 130. *Killed by Frogs*, 131. *To catch*, 133, *&c.* 348. *Dreſs* 130-40, *and Note*.
Pope *or* Ruff, 182, 349.
Poverty, *its Advantages*, 90, *and in Verſes*, 191-2.
Preacher, *a Story of*, 89.

R.

RAleigh, *Sir* Walter, *Sang by*, 65.
Riches, *their Diſcommodities*, 4, 191, 226-7-8.

J.

JAnuary, *Flies for*, 286.
Jests, *ill ones condemned*, 42.
June, *Flies for*, 92, 300-1.
July, *ditto*, 92, 301.
Ivy, *Gum to extract an Unguent*, 124, *and in Note.*

K.

King's-Fisher, *her Nest inimitible*, 207.

L.

Lamprey, *Eel, lived* 60 *Years*, 170. *For Bait*, 172.
Lathkin River, Derbysh. *clearest, and breeds best* Trouts *in* England, 254.
Lark, *his Commendations*, 8.
Laws, *concerning* Angling, 327.
Leather-mouth'd Fish, *what*, 50.
Ledger-Bait, 133. *To bait*, 135. *To use*, 237, 310, 360.
Loach, *to catch*, 211, 345. *Use as Bait*, 317. *Scour*, 80, 359. *How to bait with* one Worm, 91. *With* two, ibid. *(in Note) and* 310.
Lucian, *Epigram on Scoffers*, 4.

M.

MAlt-Bait, 203.
March, *Flies for*, 91, 289.
Martial, *Epigram by, translated*, 115.
Marlow Kit, *Song by*, 62.
May, *Flies for*, 91-2, 291 *to* 300.
May-Fly, 57, 93, *where found*, 98, 360. *To make*, 296.
Milk-Maids, Dialogues *with*, 61 *to* 67. 181. *Their* Songs, 62, 65.
Minnow *or* Penk, 210. *delicious, made into Tansies*, ib. *How to bait with*, 82 *and Note. Make* artificial, 83, *and Note.*

Montaigne's

Montaigne's *Saying of his Cat*, 4.
Mullet, 345. *Verſes on*, 26.
Muſick, *Verſes in Praiſe of*, 194.

N.

NIght-Fiſhing, *for* Trout, 111-12.
Night-Hooks, 172, 342.
Nightengale, *her Melody*, 8.
November, *Flies for*. *See thoſe for* Feb.
Nowel, *Dean of St.* Paul's, *his Character*, 31.

O.

OAK (*or* Aſh) Fly, *to find*, 98. *Make*, 97.
Worm *or* Grub, *ſecret in uſing it*, 97, *in Note*. *Where find*, 359.
October, *Flies for*. *See thoſe for* March.
Otter, 2. *Hunting him*, 3 *to* 39. *Made tame to catch Fiſh*, ib. *Skin, its uſe in Gloves*, 37.
Ointments, *to tempt* Fiſh, 145, *and the Notes*. 139, 149, 161 *and the Notes* 205, 314.

P.

PAlmer-Fly, *To make*, 93.
—— Worm, 84. *His Deſcription*, 86.
Paſtes, 51, 148-9, 180, 360-1.
Pater-noſter-line, 184.
Pearch, *his wholeſomeneſs*, 162. *Baits for*, 164, 346.
Piſcator's *Song*, 187.
Pike, *Longevity and Voraciouſneſs*, 127, *and ſeq. Medical Virtue*, 130. *Killed by Frogs*, 131. *To catch*, 133, *&c.* 348. *Dreſs* 130-40, *and Note*.
Pope *or* Ruff, 182, 349.
Poverty, *its Advantages*, 90, *and in Verſes*, 191-2.
Preacher, *a Story of*, 89.

R.

RAleigh, *Sir* Walter, *Song by*, 65.
Riches, *their Diſcommodities*, 4, 191, 226-7-8.

Rivers, *ſtrange Account of ſome*, 22-3. *Help to Contemplation, Theological Remark by* Moline, 21. *Differ like Paſtures*, 115. *Chief ones in* England, 214, 216.
Roach, *Baits for*, (*ſame as* Dace) 199, *and ſeq.* 451. *Spawn commended*, 196. *Biggeſt in Ponds*, ib.
Rud *or* Broad Roach, 197 *in Note*, 350.
Running-Line, 183, 309-10, 361.
Rural Deſcriptions, 60-1, 102, 231.

S.

SAlmon, *way of ſpawning, and Getting to and from Sea*, 118-19. *Same in Verſe*, 121. *Haſty Growth*, ib. *How to fiſh for*, 123, *&c.*
Salmon-Peal, 352.
Sargus *Fiſh*, *Verſes on*, 25.
September, *Flies for*, 302.
Sheep's-Blood, *for Bait*, 204.
Sniggling *or* Broggling *for* Eels, 73, *and the Note.*
Snakes, *Land and Water Kinds*, 132.
Snap-Fiſhing, *for* Pike, 138-9. *and Note.*
Snails, *for Bait*, 49.
Spawn *of* Fiſh, *for Bait*, 361.
Spawning Time, *catching Fiſh then unnatural*, 40.
Stile *of* Scripture, *Remark on*, 29.
Stickleback, 212, 253.
Swallows, *caught with* Angle, 185.

T.

TEnch, *to catch*, 161. 354. *Medical Virtues*, 159, *and the Note.*
Thames Angling, *manner of*, 197-8, *in Notes.*
Thankfulneſs, *Excitements to*, 225 *to* 229.
Trent River, *its Riſe and Courſe*, 253 *and ſeq.*
Trimmer-Fiſhing, *for* Pike, 137, *and Note.*

INDEX.

Trout, *Ways to angle for*, 78 *to* 84, 91, 267 *to* 271, 309 *to* 319, 355-6. *In season with the Buck*, 52. *unseasonable*, 57. *To Dress*, 307.
Trowling, *full Directions for*, 134, *in Note.*

W.

WAter, *its Utility*, 13. *Principal of Bodies Experiment of*, ib. *Medium of Sounds*, 113.
Wheat-Bait, 206.
Whipping *for* Bleak, 185.
Worms, *several Kinds for Baits. See* Brandling, Lob-Worms, *&c.*
Wotton *Sir* Henry, *his Character of Angling*, 33. *Verses by (wrongly supposed his)* 334, *and Note.*

FINIS.

Rivers, *ſtrange Account of ſome*, 22-3. *Help to Contemplation, Theological Remark by* Moline, 21. *Differ like Paſtures*, 115. *Chief ones in* England, 214, 216.
Roach, *Baits for*, (*ſame as* Dace) 199, *and ſeq.* 451. *Spawn commended*, 196. *Biggeſt in Ponds*, ib.
Rud *or* Broad Roach, 197 *in Note*, 350.
Running Line, 183, 309-10, 361.
Rural Deſcriptions, 60-1, 102, 231.

S.

Salmon, *way of ſpawning, and Getting to and from Sea*, 118-19. *Same in Verſe*, 121. *Haſty Growth*, ib. *How to fiſh for*, 123, *&c.*
Salmon-Peal, 352.
Sargus *Fiſh, Verſes on*, 25.
September, *Flies for*, 302.
Sheep's-Blood, *for Bait*, 204.
Sniggling *or* Broggling *for* Eels, 73, *and the Note.*
Snakes, *Land and Water Kinds*, 132.
Snap-Fiſhing, *for* Pike, 138-9. *and Note.*
Snails, *for Bait*, 49.
Spawn *of* Fiſh, *for Bait*, 361.
Spawning Time, *catching Fiſh then unnatural*, 40.
Stile *of* Scripture, *Remark on*, 29.
Stickleback, 212, 253.
Swallows, *caught with* Angle, 185.

T.

Tench, *to catch*, 161. 354. *Medical Virtues*, 159, *and the Note.*
Thames Angling, *manner of*, 197-8, *in Notes.*
Thankfulneſs, *Excitements to*, 225 *to* 229.
Trent River, *its Riſe and Courſe*, 253 *and ſeq.*
Trimmer-Fiſhing, *for* Pike, 137, *and Note.*

Trout, *Ways to angle for*, 78 to 84, 91, 267 to 271, 309 to 319, 355-6. *In season with the Buck*, 52. *unseasonable*, 57. *To Dress*, 307.
Trowling, *full Directions for*, 134, *in Note.*

W.

WAter, *its Utility*, 13. *Principal of Bodies Experiment of*, ib. *Medium of Sounds*, 113.
Wheat-Bait, 206.
Whipping *for* Bleak, 185.
Worms, *several Kinds for Baits. See* Brandling, Lob-Worms, *&c.*
Wotton *Sir* Henry, *his Character of Angling*, 33. *Verses by (wrongly supposed his)* 334, *and Note.*

FINIS.